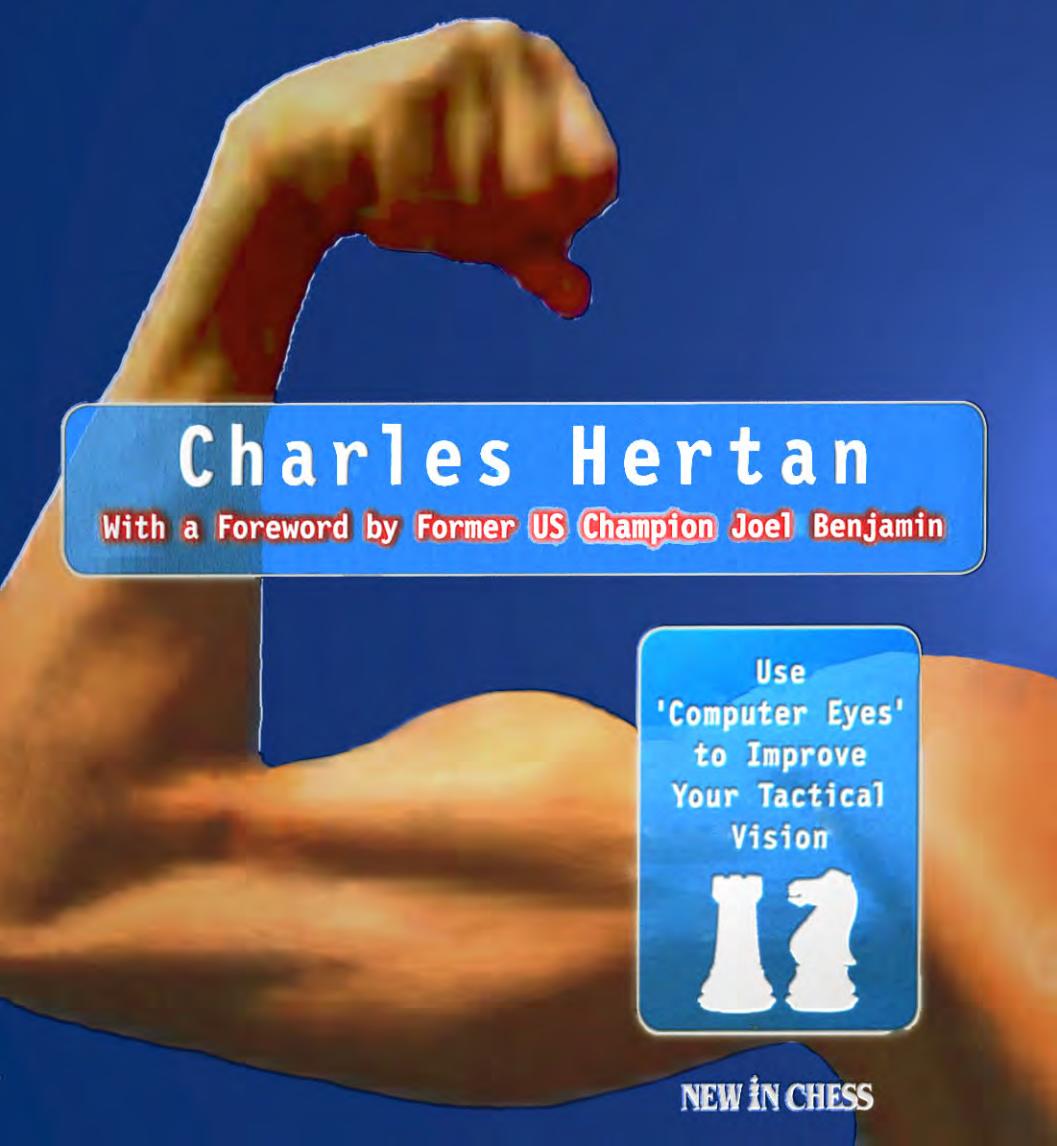


The Key to Better Calculation

# Forcing Chess Moves



Charles Hertan

With a Foreword by Former US Champion Joel Benjamin

Use  
'Computer Eyes'  
to Improve  
Your Tactical  
Vision



NEW IN CHESS

## **Forcing Chess Moves**

**Charles Hertan**

# **Forcing Chess Moves**

**The Key to Better Calculation**

**New In Chess 2008**

© 2008 New In Chess

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands

[www.newinchess.com](http://www.newinchess.com)

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

Cover design: Steven Boland

Supervisor: Peter Boel

Proofreading: René Olthof

Production: Anton Schermer

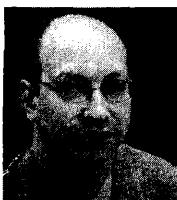
ISBN-13: 978-90-5691-243-7

# **Contents**

Foreword	7
Introduction	11
How to Use this Book	16
Chapter 1 - Stock Forcing Moves	17
- Exercises	59
Chapter 2 - Stock Mating Attacks	65
- Exercises	101
Chapter 3 - Brute Force Combinations	103
- Exercises	127
Chapter 4 - Surprise Forcing Moves	135
- Exercises	155
Chapter 5 - Equal or Stronger Threats	165
- Exercises	181
Chapter 6 - Quiet Forcing Moves	189
- Exercises	205
Chapter 7 - Forcing Retreats	215
- Exercises	233
Chapter 8 - Zwischenzugs	241
- Exercises	261
Chapter 9 - Defensive Forcing Moves	269
- Exercises	287

Chapter 10 - Endgame Forcing Moves - Exercises	295 319
Chapter 11 - Intuition and Creativity	327
Chapter 12 - Various Exercises	349
Afterthought	367
Explanation of Symbols	369
Glossary of Terms	370
Index of Names	376

# Foreword



by three-time US Champion Joel Benjamin

The study of tactics holds a necessary place in the regimen of players of all levels. One can find explanation of fundamental tactical elements - pins, skewers, forks, etc. - in a host of books, but the process of finding the killer moves is still rather mysterious.

Hertan's work calls to mind the underdog success story of Van Perlo's Endgame Tactics. The little-known Dutch correspondence grandmaster compiled positions for thirty years until he produced a masterpiece which took the English Chess Federation's Book of the Year honors in 2006.

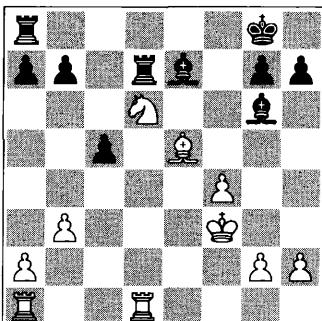
Hertan, a FIDE Master living near Boston, has spent a comparatively small but still impressive fourteen years researching, organizing, and codifying 650 tactical positions of all varieties. Like Van Perlo, Hertan has unearthed a multitude of positions appearing in print for the first time. I have a feeling that Hertan's opus, like Van Perlo's, will be warmly received.

In my lectures I have occasionally explored the demands of solving complex problems at the chessboard. Hertan has done so here on a grander scale with the aid of the useful concept of '**computer eyes**'. From my experience working at IBM on the Deep Blue team, I know that computers can find strong moves that humans overlook because they appear too outrageous to consider. It is a sign of the growth of computers that the term '**computer move**', which once was assigned to an ugly and pitiful move, is now used to connote a strong but surprising move computers are better equipped to identify.

But my own human travails suffice to bring Hertan's idea close to heart. In many of my games I have discovered astonishing moves and combinations that seemed (to me, if not the spectators) to fall out of the sky.

Yet there is a thought process behind every great chess move, and by organizing and explaining the nature of these magic moves, Hertan has brought us all closer to being able to find them.

## Forcing Chess Moves



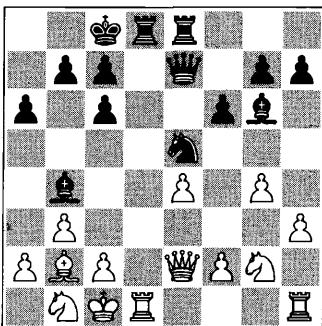
Benjamin-Silman

Lone Pine 1979



My opponent, one of the great American chess teachers and writers, no doubt looked forward to enjoying the bishop pair against his fifteen-year-old opponent. The tactical idea, utilizing a discovered attack and a zwischenzug, is fairly routine compared to the execution. I wanted to play 24.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$ , but the bishop would simply capture my knight and defend the rook on d7. The idea only works with the stunning 24.  $\mathbb{Q}c8!!$  After 24...  $\mathbb{B}xd1$  25.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  26.  $\mathbb{B}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  27.  $g4!!$  White went on to win an instructive (but beyond the scope of this book) ending. Silman had not registered that the knight could dare to enter a square so apparently off limits.

The surprise square figured in another shocking move for me in the 1992 U.S. Championship. I have all my pieces converging on the e4-pawn, but with my knight in the way White seems safe to continue his maneuvers:



Alexander Ivanov-Benjamin

Durango 1992

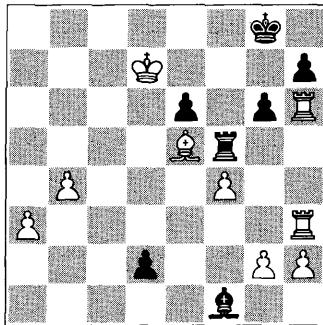


The startling 17...  $\mathbb{Q}f3!!$  provided a big advantage. The main line runs 18.  $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  19.  $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  20.  $\mathbb{B}xd6$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$  21.  $f4$  (21.  $\mathbb{W}xd6$   $cxd6$  22.  $\mathbb{B}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  23.  $\mathbb{B}xg2$   $\mathbb{R}e1+$  24.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{B}xb1$ ) and now I intended 21...  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  22.  $\mathbb{W}xg2$   $\mathbb{W}xf4+$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{R}e3$  with a

big initiative for Black, but the computer suggestion 21... $\mathbb{Q}xc2!$ ? 22. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$   $\mathbb{E}e2+$  23. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{W}d5$  is also strong. 18. $\mathbb{E}xd8+$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$  19. $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  20. $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  21. $f4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  22. $\mathbb{W}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4+$  is even worse, so Ivanov tried **18.a3**  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  **19.Qc3**  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  **20.Qxe4**  $\mathbb{W}xe4$  **21.Wxe4**  $\mathbb{E}xe4$  **22.Ed3 Qg5** and Black won on move 33.

The defender can hardly be expected to catch a move like 17... $\mathbb{Q}f3$  in time. The attacker, with a vested interest in discovering such magic, may look deeper. Any ‘safe’ move by the knight allows the consolidating move 18.f3. I only noticed the move because I had been calculating sacrifices on f3 if White played f2-f3 at some point. Notice that with the pawn on f3, the knight sacrifice appears more plausible because it captures something, reducing the ‘quietness’ of the move.

**Benjamin-Friedman**  
St. Martin 1993

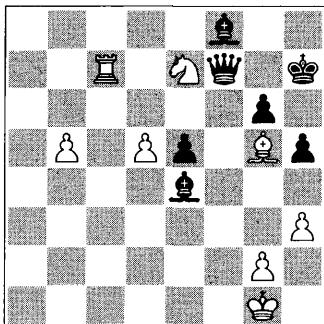


It seems that White can hardly win with the black d-pawn poised to queen. **48.Eh7!** is a good start because 48...d1 $\mathbb{W}$ ? 49. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  forces mate. After **48...Eh5??** (48... $\mathbb{E}f7+$  was necessary for the draw) **49.E3xh5 gxh5 50.Eh6!!** is a killer quiet move. Black can queen with check, normally a real combination spoiler, but here that only encourages 51. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ , tightening the net on Black’s king.

The game concluded **50...Qf7 51.Ef6+ Qg8 52.Qe7 Qh7 53.Ef7+ Qg6 54.f5+ exf5 55.Ef6+ Qg5 56.Ed6 1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

The final position I would like to share comes from the last round of the 1984 New York Open, a game I needed to win to obtain a good prize.



Abramovic-Benjamin

New York 1984



Though White doesn't have enough material for the queen, the awkward position of the black queen and the dangerous passed pawns complicate the winning process considerably. With very accurate play Black may consolidate, but I could not work it out over the board and felt frustrated. After a 45-minute think I had an inspiration.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg2!!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  e4 3.d6  $\mathbb{W}f3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{W}e2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  e3 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7$  (7.d7  $\mathbb{W}e1+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h2$  e2 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  h4!) 7... $\mathbb{W}d1+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}d5+$  9. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}xb5+$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}xc6$  11.d7  $\mathbb{W}c1+$  0-1.

We do not often have the luxury of using a 'brute force' approach favored by computers, but here I had been reduced to considering almost every possible move. Once I allowed my brain to contemplate 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ , the calculation was quite easy. With the bishop gone from e4, the follow-up 2...e4! is a deadly 'quiet connector'. After that, the black queen completely dominates.

I hope I have whetted appetites for the smorgasbord of positions to follow. The beauty of Hertan's achievement lies in the quality of both the positions selected, and the analysis. While the examples of each '**computer eyes**' theme will interest even the strongest master, they are explained and analyzed at a level which unlocks their mysteries for even the average club player. Beyond this, the text is liberally spiced with Hertan's pithy, and often humorous, commentary. Entertainment, and very likely enlightenment, awaits the reader.

# Introduction

The vast majority of tactics and combination books have three glaring limitations:

1. They give great coverage of key themes like forks, pins, and typical sacrifices, but fail to address the crucial question, 'HOW CAN I FIND THESE THEMES MORE CONSISTENTLY IN MY OWN GAMES?'
2. They tend to REHASH the same 'classic' tactical examples over and over, for the obvious reason that it is far easier to draw from existing works, than to comb raw game scores for fresh illustrations.
3. Most combination books devote almost all of their attention to mating attacks, neglecting the simple 2-4 move MATERIAL-WINNING FORCING MOVES which occur far more frequently in practical play.

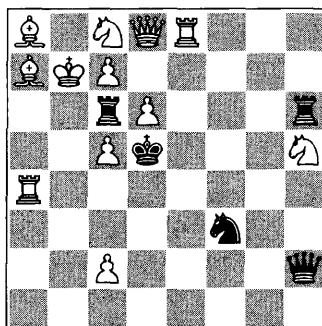
This book takes a radically different approach, starting with the assumption that the reader is already familiar with basic tactical stratagems like pins and skewers (or can study them elsewhere) and focusing instead on the question '**What prevents me from finding the winning forcing moves more often?**'

While hard work and talent certainly play important roles, my 28 years of teaching have shown me the central role of HUMAN BIAS in the failure to adequately consider key options. If we could shed our natural human thought tendencies and see the position through 'COMPUTER EYES', these biases might fall away, enabling us to consider other options which may hold the truth to a given position.

A terrific illustration of my thesis is the 'Mate in Two' composition, a genre which is specifically designed to confound human biases, as you'll discover if you become addicted to solving them as I have:

**Chernykh & Kopaev**

2001

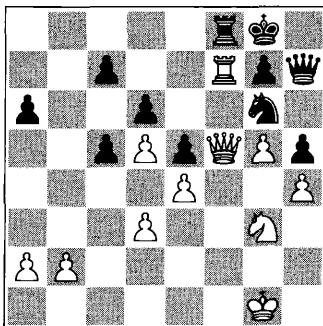


Mate in two moves

After the key move 1.  $\mathbb{Q}d7!$  threatening 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#$  (not 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6?$  threatening 2.  $c4\#$ , which is 'cooked' by 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ ), Black has nine defenses, each of which is met by a

## Forcing Chess Moves

different mating move! While strong computers would solve this problem with ease, let's face it, it's quite a struggle for us humans to visualize lines such as **1... $\mathbb{Q}hxd6$**  **2. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$**  when the rook is pinned; **1... $\mathbb{W}xd6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$**  and now the queen is pinned; **1... $\mathbb{Q}d4$  2. $c4\#$**  when the knight now seals the king's d4 egress; **1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$**  when e5 is 'self-blocked'; or the 5 different mates resulting from each legal move of the c6 rook; **1... $\mathbb{Q}b6+$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xb6\#$** ; **1... $\mathbb{Q}a6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xa6\#$** ; **1... $\mathbb{Q}xc7+$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xc7\#$** ; **1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$** ; and finally, **1... $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b8\#$**  (the rook is now pinned and can't block the bishop check).



Erenburg-Banusz

Budapest 2004



Moving to the realm of practice, how many readers can honestly say that they would even consider the following mind-blowing 'quiet' forcing move

**1. $\mathbb{W}e6!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$**

The main line is **2... $\mathbb{Q}f4$  3. $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$  mating**, and **2... $\mathbb{W}h8$  3. $\mathbb{W}xg6$  threatening  $4.\mathbb{Q}h6+$  is also utterly hopeless)**

**3. $\mathbb{W}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e7$  1-0.** A mating queen check follows.

## Defining 'Forcing Moves'

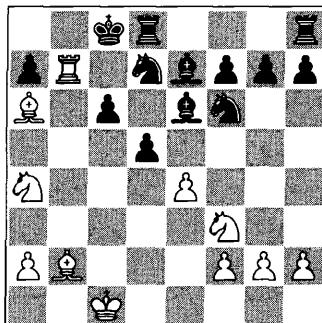
Before we go further, it is very important that you understand precisely what I mean by the term 'forcing move'. Loosely defined terms lead to misconceptions and errors in thinking! So here it is:

A FORCING MOVE is a move which limits the opponent's options. Nothing more or less. Many players think only of checks, captures, or flashy sacrifices when they hear this term. While checks and captures do TEND to be forcing, frequently they are far from the MOST FORCING choices.

Take, for instance, this position taken from a classic game between Mieses and Chigorin.

### Mieses-Chigorin (variation)

Hanover 1902



There are many checks and captures, but no move more FORCING than **1. ♕e5!** threatening double discovered mate via **2. ♜b8#** or **2. ♜c7+ ♔b8 3. ♜c8#**. Absolutely forced is **1... ♜xe5** when **2. ♜xa7+ ♔b8 3. ♜b7+ ♔c8 4. ♜b6#** follows.

The first step toward developing better calculation skills is to train yourself to **always analyze the most forcing moves first**. This is not because they are always best! The most forcing move may lose outright, and usually does! There are three compelling reasons why analyzing forcing moves first is necessary:

1. Forcing moves have the potential to transform the game, by leading to gain of material, checkmate, or other CONCRETE GAINS. When they do work, they tend to work better and quicker than non-forcing options.
2. Analyzing the most forcing moves first saves precious time. If they work, there is no need to look any further! Countless winning positions have been squandered by players who wasted huge amounts of time examining obscure ideas, when a clearly decisive forcing move was available.
3. Forcing moves limit the opponent's options, and thereby reduce the risk of calculation error. Fewer replies to calculate means less chance of slipping up, so all things being equal, the most forcing option is simplest and best.

A deep study of forcing moves is probably the single most important task toward achieving chess mastery, since doing so will do four wonderful things to improve your calculation skills:

1. Studying tactical positions PROMOTES ANALYTICAL PRECISION. ‘Close enough’ won’t do. This is exactly what you must strive for, to find more winning forcing moves in your own practice. Precise analysis wins games.

## Forcing Chess Moves

2. Tactical study helps you DEVELOP BOARD SIGHT, the ability to envision more clearly where all the pieces are, and what they are doing, at each step of every variation. This is not an issue for computers, who have the huge practical advantage of perfect board sight, no matter how far ahead they are ‘thinking’.
3. Studying composed problems and master tactics helps you overcome human bias and ‘staleness’ in your thinking. In problem solving, stereotyped, ‘automatic’ moves will get you nowhere fast!
4. Learning to relax and enjoy the slow process of discovering the answer (rather than beating yourself up in frustration!) will help you develop the important capacity to enjoy the challenge of calculating difficult variations. Yes, this is a capacity you can develop! As a young player with a ‘positional bent’, I had to learn to do so myself, and it is a must if you are to develop your tactical potential.

The first goal of any player aspiring to find more winning forcing moves in his/her games, should be to CALCULATE TWO MOVES AHEAD WITH ABSOLUTE PRECISION. Two obstacles are false pride and shame! Somehow, players seem to believe that ‘everyone else’ can see two moves ahead with ease, and they’re embarrassed to admit how difficult it may be for them! Most club players have a similar fallacy about opening preparation: they imagine that studying openings is the key to improvement, and that ‘everyone else’ knows their openings cold; while in reality 95% of club games are decided by who does a better job of calculating variations and avoiding blunders.

Seeing two moves ahead, consistently, with accuracy and perfect board sight, is a very difficult task for a human, and probably a sufficient achievement to allow you to perform at the candidate master level tactically. My peak FIDE rating was over 2400, yet I am not ashamed to admit that some particularly devilish mate-in-two problems have stumped me for as long as an hour!

## Defining ‘Computer Eyes’

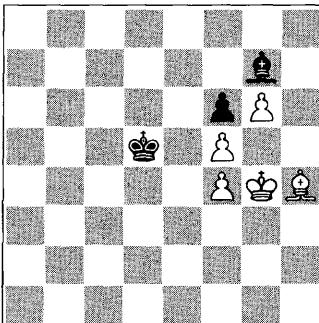
When I use the term **computer eyes** in this book, I have two skills in mind, which computers excel at, and which we must learn from in order to maximize our chance of finding the correct FORCING MOVES.

The first skill is BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION, the ability to accurately analyze a series of forcing moves. The first two chapters are focused on helping you develop this skill, and it continues to be an important theme throughout the book.

The second skill is OBJECTIVITY, the ability to find critical forcing moves which we tend to overlook due to HUMAN BIAS. Developing this skill will be the primary focus of the remaining chapters. Bias varies from person to person; unlike computers, each of us has different blind spots, or types of moves that tend to elude us.

The following encounter helped me bring this idea more into focus.

**Hertan-Kelleher**  
Cambridge 1994



Black, one of New England's most feared attacking masters, lost quickly after **1...Bg4?? 2.Qg5!** and the pawns crash through on **2...fxg5 3.Qxg5** or **2...Qd5 3.Qh5** and **4.Qh6**. More refined is the WAITING MOVE **1...Qd4?!**, but it transpires that White can still win by one tempo: **2.Qh5 Qe4 3.Qg5 Qxf5 4.Qh6 Qh8 5.Qf8! Qxf4 6.Qh6 f5 7.Qg7 Qxg7+ 8.Qxg7 Qe3 9.Qh7 f4 10.g7 f3 11.g8Q f2 12.Qc4**. So is Black lost? Well, no. It turns out that there is a miracle draw with **1...Qd6!! 2.Qh5 Qe7 3.Qg5 fxg5 4.fxg5 Qf8! 5.f6 Qg8!!** The shocking point: on **6.fxg7**, **6...Qxg7** wins the **Qg6** with a book draw. **6.Qg4 Qf8 7.Qf5 Qb4** and White can't break the blockade, since **8.g7 Qt7 9.g6+ Qg8 10.Qe6 Qa3** leads nowhere.

What struck me about this game was not Black's failure to find these variations, which were after all so deep that few GM's would foresee them, but rather, Kelleher's candid admission afterwards: 'I would never consider the move **1...Qd6**; it's too passive.' While a computer would have used brute force calculation to find the draw, a strong master had failed to even consider the strongest FORCING MOVE due to human bias! If this was true for Kelleher, how much more true must it be for the average club player!

In the pages of this book, you will find hundreds of opportunities to understand, and move beyond, typical human bias. Once you have digested these positions carefully, your newfound COMPUTER EYES will help you discover many winning FORCING MOVES which might have escaped your consideration in the past.

# How to Use this Book

To get the most from this book, I would recommend the following approach: The first time through, play through every variation of each example until you feel that you understand it perfectly. While the positions are selected to be challenging and stimulating even to masters, the variations are analyzed and explained at a level that club players should be able to follow. By completely understanding each solution, you will develop your '**computer eyes**', by seeing how the type of 'human bias' covered in each chapter occurs in practice, and learning to develop an eye for the types of forcing moves you tend to overlook.

If you are absolutely stumped by a position even after playing through all the lines, put it aside for awhile and try to come back to it with a fresh head (my preferred method for solving difficult compositions). Save your 'solving' skills for the illustrative exercises at the end of each chapter.

In order to simplify the presentation of the text, I have chosen to use the convention '**1-0**' or '**0-1**', to signify that White or Black obtains a winning advantage at the end of each fragment. To maximize comprehension, the main line given in the solution represents the clearest or most thematically important demonstration of the winning forcing move, not necessarily the game continuation.

A white square accompanying a diagram indicates that White is to move; and a dark square means that Black is to move.

To distinguish the examples in the 'Study Material' part of every chapter from the 'Exercises' part, I have provided the numbers of the former with the prefix 'FCM' (i.e. 'Forcing Chess Moves') and those of the latter with the prefix 'Ex'.

# **Chapter 1 - Stock Forcing Moves**

## **Study Material**

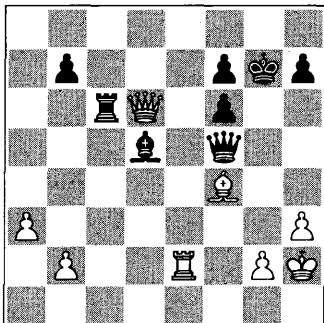
Beginners typically start their tactical education with basic stratagems like fork, pin, and skewer. With further study, they encounter standard combinations like the classical bishop sacrifice, double bishop sacrifice, and Philidor's ('Smothered') Mate, which can and should be studied in any good basic tactics book (I recommend the classic *Art of the Checkmate* by Renaud and Kahn). Later, as players gain some experience and absorb a large number of master games, a variety of 'stock' themes, or typical winning sacrifices, become familiar. In this first chapter, we look at typical stock tactics with the rook, knight, bishop and queen. Chapter Two examines winning stock attacks against vulnerable squares around the enemy king. By helping you to better understand these crucial weapons in the master arsenal, these two chapters will introduce you to the power of FORCING MOVES. By focusing on the role of BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION and UNEXPECTED MOVES in implementing these sacrifices, we also begin the process of honing your **computer eyes**. Strong masters develop a 'radar' for these recurring types of combinations through study and experience, which helps them quickly find the right continuation in the heat of battle. As you absorb the stock forcing moves used by the pros, and learn to apply them in your own games, you will gradually sharpen your own instincts.

We are talking about stock mates and sacrifices involving the rook, knight, bishop and queen. But what about the king and pawn, you may ask? Does the author neglect the contributions of these noble pieces? Well, the king is a very fine attacker, especially in the endgame; but he cannot effectively sacrifice himself... so sorry, I cannot recall any important stock positions starring the monarch. As for the pawn, he generally plays a supporting role in the stock motifs of other pieces, except for the special case of PROMOTION, which is so important that we will examine it deeply in the context of later chapters...

### **A) Stock Mating Patterns Involving the Rook**

#### **Back Rank Themes**

This is the first stock mating pattern that most players discover, yet it remains highly important at all levels, recurring in many creative and disguised forms, in analysis and actual play.



FCM 1.1  
**Belov-Osachuk**  
Soviet Union 1965



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$**

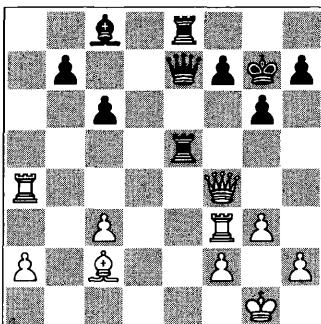
1...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ .

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ .**

COMPUTER EYES can help you find this pretty combination in a heartbeat. The queen sacrifice is shocking, but it is also the MOST FORCING MOVE on the board (allowing just two legal responses), which you will already recognize from the Introduction, as the move which must be looked at first!



Here is a fancier version of the same idea:



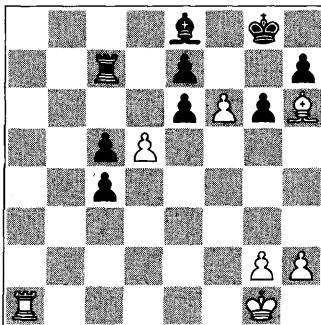
FCM 1.2  
**Netto-Abente**  
Paraguay 1983



Two major pieces are a small price to pay, to have the bishop land on h3 with check:  
**1...  $\mathbb{Q}e1+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g1+!!$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg1$   $\mathbb{Q}e1+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}f1+!$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}h3+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$ .**  
Again, the most forcing options held the key, and there was no need to look any further!

Most often the bishop on h6 does not appear by means of a flashy sacrifice; scores of back rank ideas are based on the presence of a bishop or pawn on f6 or h6, blocking the king's g7 escape hatch:

FCM 1.3  
**Radevich-Donskikh**  
Soviet Union 1972

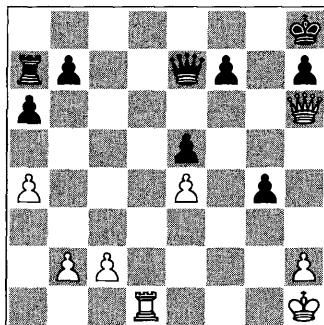


The stock shot **1.f7+!**, mating on f8 after either **1...Qxf7 2.Qa8+** or **1...Qxf7 2.Qf1+ Qg8 3.Qf8#**, is not a trivial tactic to foresee, without developing one's COMPUTER EYES. But perhaps you already discovered this beautiful move on your own, if you are a quick learner and already in the habit of analyzing the MOST FORCING MOVE first!



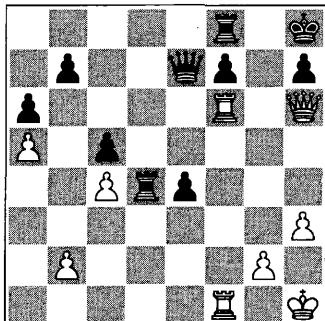
A queen on h6 is an especially dangerous guardian of the g7 escape square, since the defender must also worry about incursions on f8, f6 or h7:

FCM 1.4  
**Oll-Cvitani**  
Eupen (rapid) 1995



**1.Bd7!** Not the MOST FORCING option (that honor would belong to **1.Qf8+**, **1.Qg7+**, or **1.Qd8+**), but the only one that wins! Remember our introductory discussion: the most forcing move usually loses, but is still the one which must be looked at first. If you still doubt this, reread the last few pages! The black queen falls, since **1...Be8** (to prevent **2.Qf8#**) is met by **2.Qf6+ Qg8 3.Qd8 1-0**.

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 1.5

**Karasev-Klaman**

Leningrad 1967



White exploits Black's back rank woes creatively to set up a mating attack:

**1.  $\mathbb{E}e6!$   $\mathbb{W}d8$**

Again, the queen must guard against 2.  $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$ .

**2.  $\mathbb{E}g6!$**

Did you overlook this forcing move because it looks impossible? Chapter 4, SURPRISE FORCING MOVES, will help you overcome this bias!

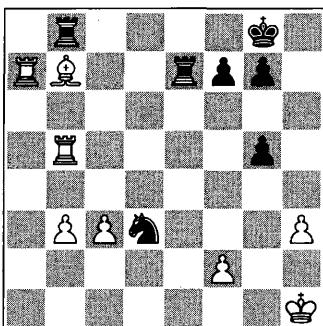
**2...  $\mathbb{E}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xf7$**

The attack shifts from g7 to the sitting duck on h7.

**3...  $\mathbb{E}d1+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}b8+$  5.  $g3$  1-0.** The white king walks toward the rook.



A bishop (or other piece) blocking the king's escape hatch at h7 can have the same effect of creating a back rank liability for the defender:



FCM 1.6

**Topalov-Morozevich**

Cannes 2002



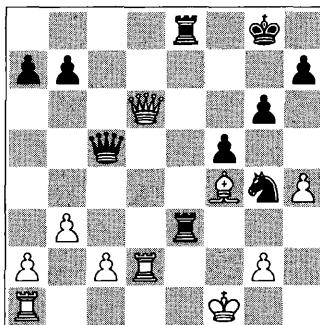
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!!$**  A fantastic feat of COMPUTER EYES! Yes, attacking all three black pieces is very forcing, but since you are not a computer or world champion, you probably need to work on your SELECTION skills to even consider such a SURPRISE FORCING MOVE!

**1...  $\mathbb{E}xb5$**  There is no escape, e.g. 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{E}ee8$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xb8$   $\mathbb{E}xb8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ .

**2.  $\mathbb{E}a8+!$  1-0.**

Here is a different type of stock back rank theme, in which the king is first ‘kidnapped’ into mating position:

FCM 1.7  
**Askelof-Svensson**  
correspondence game, 1983



**1... $\mathbb{H}e1+$ ! 2. $\mathbb{H}xe1$   $\mathbb{W}g1+$ !**

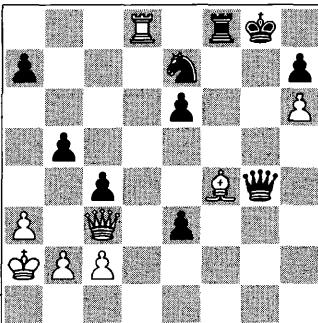
A winning ZWISCHENZUG or ‘in-between forcing move’, a tactic we will explore much more deeply in Chapter 8.

**3. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$   $\mathbb{H}xe1\#$ .**

Take note: all of Black’s moves were surprising and beautiful, but also 100% forcing, and thus, among the first options needing to be considered.



FCM 1.8  
**Morozevich-Bologan**  
Sochi 2004

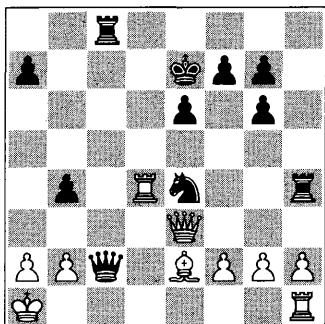


Having fewer escape options, a king in the corner is even more subject to ‘kidnapping’:

**1. $\mathbb{W}h8+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  2. $\mathbb{B}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$  1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

A SENSITIVE BACK RANK calls for heightened creative alertness to the endless array of 'surprise tactics':



FCM 1.9

**Ashley-Kortchnoi**

San Francisco 1995



If eyes could smell, COMPUTER EYES would smell blood here! Black is very active and White's back rank is vulnerable. Soon even the  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  will join the fray!

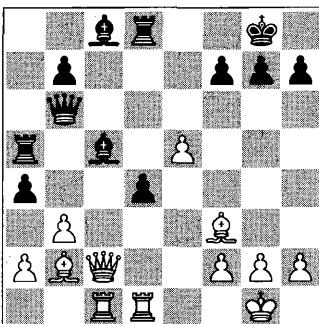
**1... $\mathbb{Q}d2!$**

Exploiting the 'interference theme' 2. $\mathbb{M}xd2 \mathbb{W}c1+$ !

**2.b3**

The white queen is overloaded on 2. $\mathbb{W}xd2 \mathbb{M}xd4!$  and he will have to give his rook on h1 after 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{W}c1+!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b1 \mathbb{M}xd4!$ , but now mate comes on the a-file!

**2... $\mathbb{Q}xb3+!$  3. $\mathbb{A}xb3 \mathbb{M}c5!$  0-1. 4. $\mathbb{M}xb4 \mathbb{M}a5+$  etc.**



FCM 1.10

**Kharlov-Franco Ocampos**

Zaragoza 1994



A forking move is justified by deadly back-rank pins:

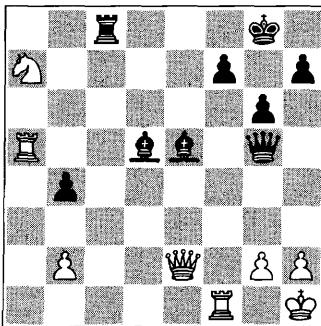
**1.b4!  $\mathbb{Q}xb4$**

On 1... $\mathbb{W}xb4$ , the skewer 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$  exploits the d-file pin.

**2. $\mathbb{W}xc8!$  1-0.** Crushing is 2... $\mathbb{M}xc8$  3. $\mathbb{M}xc8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$  with too much wood for the queen.

In master play, a strong secondary threat, such as a knight fork or mating idea, usually works together with back rank motifs:

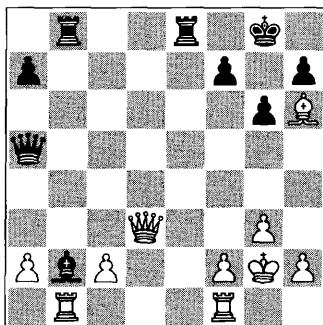
FCM 1.11  
Larsen-Ljubojevic  
Milan 1975



**1... $\mathbb{Q}h4!$**  A prime forcing option which must be examined even though it ‘drops material’. Before rejecting such a move you must always try to look one move deeper, for the MOST FORCING FOLLOW-UP – often your opponent won’t! **2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$**  The gift must be accepted; if 2.h3  $\mathbb{Q}xh3+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h2+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$  (4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ ) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ . But now White has too many problems on g2 and the back row. **2... $\mathbb{Q}f2!$  0-1.** On 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2+$ ! 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}c1+$  mates. COMPUTER EYES must begin with looking out for this crucial stock pattern – the ‘diversion sacrifice’ which draws off a key back-rank defender.

◆ ◆

FCM 1.12  
Rada-Kostal  
Prague 1942



White sets up a ‘CROSS-PIN’ of the black queen, to attack both g7 and the back rank:

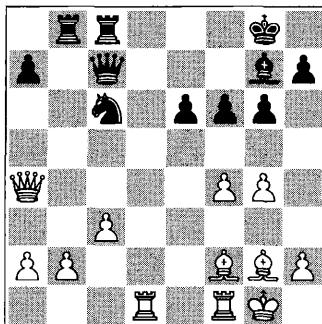
**1. $\mathbb{R}xb2!$   $\mathbb{R}xb2$  2. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$**

Black foresaw White’s sacrifice and prepared this seemingly tight defense. White contemplated the vulnerable back rank and looked one FORCING MOVE deeper:

**3. $\mathbb{N}e1!$  1-0.** The queen is diverted from one of the mating squares g7 or e8.

## Forcing Chess Moves

DIVERSION SACRIFICES may also occur when a piece must guard another unit, as well as the back rank:



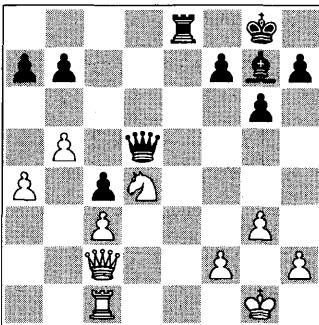
FCM 1.13

**Radulski-Ataman**

Batumi 2002



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6 \mathbb{W}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{H}d8+$ ! 1-0.** On 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  or 2... $\mathbb{H}xd8$ , 3. $\mathbb{W}xc6$  decides. In this type of stock sacrifice, the defender is diverted not from the back rank, but from the defense of the queen. Take note: the most forcing moves worked again! (Did you remember to consider them first?)



FCM 1.14

**Mieses-Reshevsky**

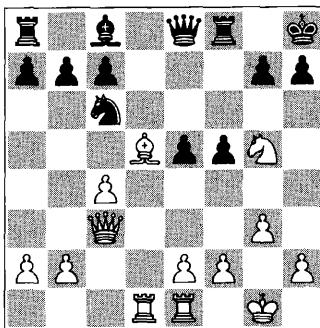
Margate 1935



After correctly trying the very forcing start **1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  2.  $cxd4$** , alert COMPUTER EYES are drawn to the stock diversion tactic **2...  $\mathbb{W}xd4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xc4 \mathbb{H}e1+$** , but White can safely escape with **4.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$** . Reshevsky did not give up on the idea, but found a stronger forcing second move: **2...  $\mathbb{H}e4$ !** Winning the d-pawn, or the queen after **3.  $\mathbb{W}xc4?$   $\mathbb{H}e1+$ ! 0-1**. We will train your COMPUTER EYES to be alert for such 'QUIET FORCING MOVES' in Chapter 6.

Even a slight development edge may invite a successful back rank action:

FCM 1.15  
Larsen-Nievergelt  
Amsterdam 1954

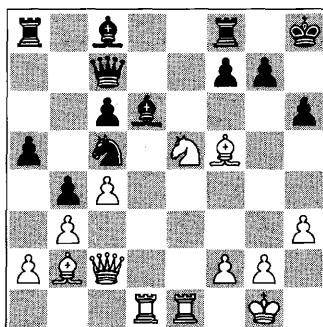


COMPUTER EYES might first examine 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+?$   $\mathbb{K}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$  4.  $\mathbb{H}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$ . Larsen's idea should be the next forcing try to exploit the back rank: **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6!$   $\mathbb{B}xc6$**  Taking with the queen is no better; 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e7!$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{H}d8$   $\mathbb{H}xd8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+!$   $\mathbb{K}xf7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  with winning play. But now the back rank weakness costs Black a big pawn after the stock 'fork trick' **2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$**  (3...  $\mathbb{H}xf7??$  4.  $\mathbb{H}d8+$  mates) **4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  1-0.** More on knight forks later...



In the following example, the string of FORCING MOVES is quite dazzling and creative, requiring BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION of several difficult variations. COMPUTER EYES of a grandmaster were helped by quick recognition of several stock ideas; the back rank weakness, the idea of a forking check on f7, and the pin of the g7 pawn by the  $\mathbb{B}b2$ :

FCM 1.16  
Gheorghiu-Kinnmark  
The Hague 1961



**1.  $\mathbb{H}xd6!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$**

Black's king is completely naked after 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  2.  $\mathbb{H}xh6+!$   $gxh6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ .

## Forcing Chess Moves

**2.♘xf7+! ♜xf7 3.♗e8+ ♜f8**

Hopeless is 3...♜f8 4.♝xf8+ ♜xf8 5.♛d2! ♔g8 6.♛d4.

**4.♛d2!!**

Another great diversion tactic, with a second threat against h6.

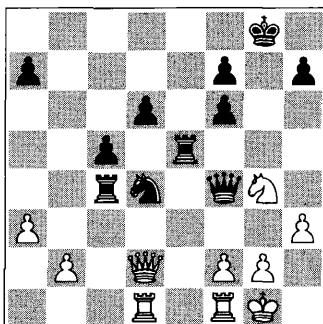
**4...♜xd2**

4...♝xf5 5.♛xd6 ♜axe8 6.♛xh6+ also mates.

**5.♝xf8#.** A fine feat of calculation and BOARD SIGHT.

## Corridor Mate

Typically a rook+knight duet, this common mating pattern is rather like a ‘back rank mate turned sideways’.



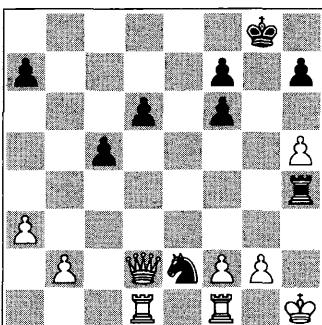
FCM 1.17

**Gygli-Henneberger**

Zürich 1941

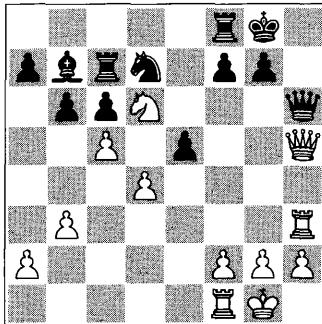


Computer eyes string together four 100% forcing moves and hit the jackpot:  
**1...♞e2+ 2.♔h1 ♜xg4! 3.hxg4 ♜h5+ 4.gxh5 ♜h4#.**



the ‘corridor mate’

FCM 1.18  
**Toth-Szigeti**  
 Budapest 1946



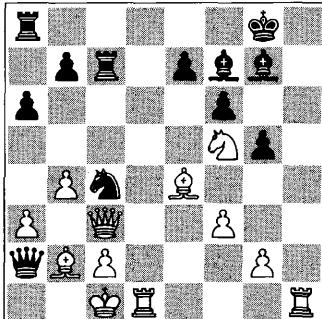
Computer eyes found a sneaky IN-BETWEEN CHECK (Chapter 8) to implement the classic corridor mate position (knight on e7, rook on the h-file):

**1.♘f5! ♜xh5 2.♗e7+! ♔h7 3.♖xh5#.**



Here is a more complicated and brilliant version: Grandmasterly COMPUTER EYES found a beautiful QUIET FORCING MOVE (Chapter 6) making use of the corridor mate idea:

FCM 1.19  
**Akopian-Kramnik**  
 Wijk aan Zee 2004



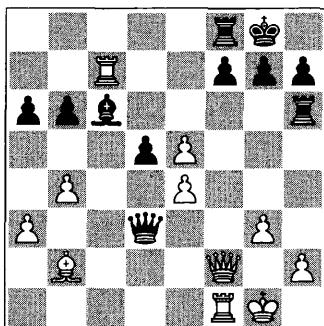
**1.♗h7! ♔xh7**

The king is lured onto the h-file corridor and will not come out alive. In the game Black resigned after 1...♜xb2+ (or 1...♚f8 2.♝dh1) 2.♜xb2 ♗xb2 3.♝xg7+ ♔f8 4.♝h1!.

**2.♗xe7+ ♔h6 3.♝h1+ ♔h5 4.g4 ♔h8 5.♜xh5+ ♔g7 6.♜xf6#.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

We turn now to stock mating ideas involving a PAIR OF ROOKS attacking on the SEVENTH AND/OR EIGHTH RANKS:



FCM 1.20

**Thomas-Marshall**

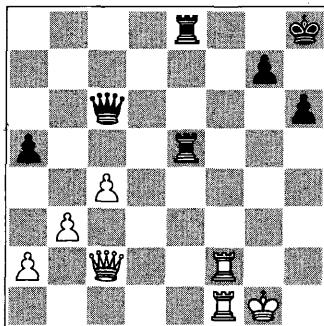
Hamburg 1930



The legendary American attacker had prepared the defense 1.  $\mathbb{R}xf7?$   $\mathbb{W}xf1+!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf1$   $\mathbb{R}xf7$ , but down rained the stock double-rook blow 1.  $\mathbb{W}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{R}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{R}c8+$   $\mathbb{R}f8$  **3.  $\mathbb{R}a/fxf8\#!$**  An amazing slip, but average players can take heart: even the best tacticians may forget to examine the MOST FORCING MOVE first! Like glasses, COMPUTER EYES only work when you remember to put them on!



In the most common double-rook stock mate, the rooks deliver mate on g7 and h7 (g2/h2) while an enemy piece on f8 (f1) blocks the king's escape. You may notice by now, that stock forcing moves don't always present themselves on a 'silver platter'; they are often the result of deep and accurate BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION. The board sight and analytical skill needed to navigate such variations will take time to develop, but the principle is not complicated: Black could start with 1...  $\mathbb{W}c5!$  here, but he correctly began by analyzing the most FORCING MOVES first:



FCM 1.21

**Bannik-Cherepkov**

Soviet Union 1961



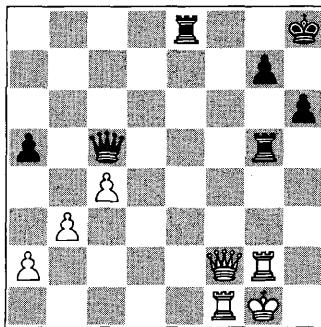
**1...  $\mathbb{R}g5+$  2.  $\mathbb{R}g2$**

The king can't survive the journey on 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{H}h5+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{H}e3+$  4.  $\mathbb{R}f3 \mathbb{H}g5+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{H}ee5$ .

### 2... $\mathbb{W}c5+$ 3. $\mathbb{W}f2$

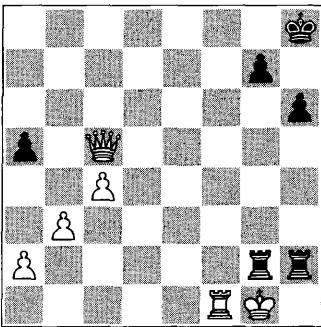
The hardest part for Black was accurately calculating all the side variations. On 3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{H}h5+$  4.  $\mathbb{R}h2 \mathbb{H}ee5!$ , the threat 5...  $\mathbb{R}xh2+$  and ...  $\mathbb{R}h5$  decides, but finding the quiet forcing move ...  $\mathbb{H}ee5!$  four moves deep into the variation, could test the COMPUTER EYES of even a very strong master.

Now the stage is set for the beautiful enactment of our stock double-rook mate:



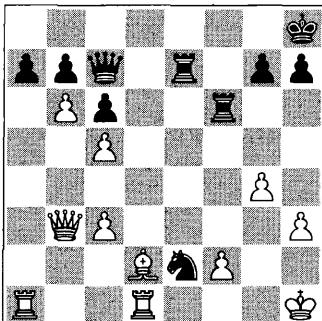
position after 3.  $\mathbb{W}f2$

3...  $\mathbb{H}e2!!$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xc5$  (or 4.  $\mathbb{R}xg5 \mathbb{W}xg5+$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{R}gxg2+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{H}h2+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{H}eg2\#$ .



stock double rook mate

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 1.22  
**NN-Keene**  
simul 1995



In the preceding (usual) case, White's rook on f1 enabled the stock mate by blocking the king's escape. In some instances, an extra attacker may do the job just as well:

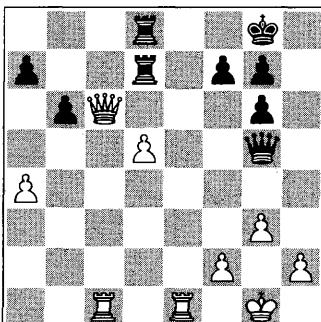
**1...♘h2+!!**

Perhaps such moves seem like 'grandmaster magic' but - need I remind you? – it is the most FORCING MOVE on the board. Perhaps your COMPUTER EYES are even able to follow the chain of forcing moves and find the tricky but logical 'quiet forcing move' on move 4?

**2.♕xh2 ♜xf2+ 3.♔h1 ♜g3+ 4.♔g1 ♜ee2! 0-1.** There is no defense against the slightly modified double rook mate 5...♜g2#.



Two rooks on the eighth rank may deliver mate when the king lacks flight squares to escape their checks:



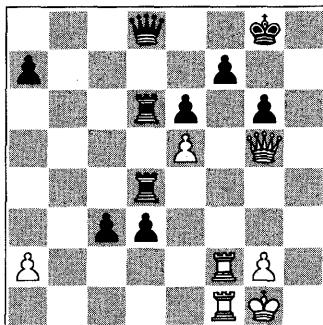
FCM 1.23  
**Alekhine-Colle**  
Paris 1925



**1.♗xd7! ♜xd7 2.♖e8+ ♔h7 3.♖cc8 ♜d8 (3...♔h6 4.♖h8#) 4.♖exd8 1-0.**

Here is a related case, where the black queen again impedes her own king's escape to g5:

FCM 1.24  
**Kamsky-Leveille**  
 Buffalo 1989

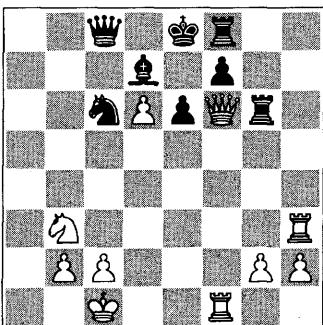


1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#.$



Even a king in the middle occasionally falls prey to the dreaded double rook mate:

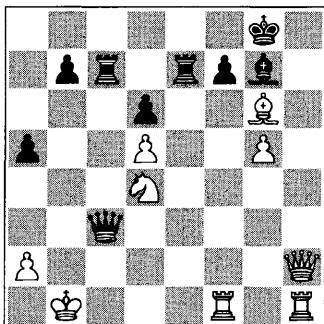
FCM 1.25  
**Atakisi-Ruck**  
 Istanbul 2003



1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$  1-0.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Master calculation and board sight are most needed when the stock pattern is embedded deep in a long chain of FORCING MOVES:



FCM 1.26  
**Lanka-Szelag**

Rostock 2002



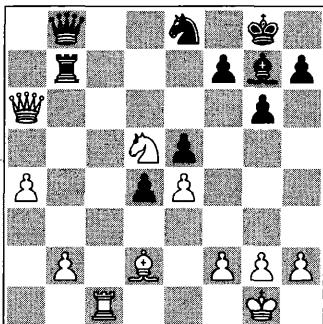
1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ !  $\mathbb{B}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  5.  $\mathbb{B}f1+$  loses a piece) 4.  $\mathbb{W}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$

Black can play for a prayer on 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$ , threatening a perpetual, but the real point is 5.  $\mathbb{W}xf8+$ !  $\mathbb{B}xf8$  6.  $\mathbb{B}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7.  $\mathbb{B}h7+$  1-0.

### B) Stock Forcing Moves by the Knight

Now that we've had some fun with rooks, helping your COMPUTER EYES recognize their tricks, we turn our attentions to that mischievous and unique piece, the mighty 'Springer'!

An extremely common and important motif is the stock sacrifice leading to KNIGHT FORKS on e7 or f6:



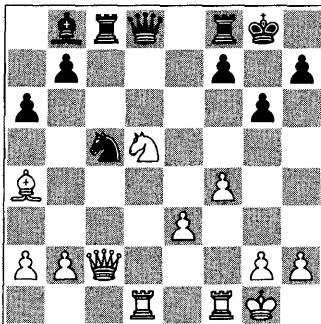
FCM 1.27  
**Unzicker-Sanchez**  
Saltsjöbaden 1952



1.  $\mathbb{N}c8!$   $\mathbb{W}xc8$  The lady is lured onto the forking square. 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$  The queen falls because the  $\mathbb{B}b7$  is pinned. 1-0.

The fork theme figures here on both typical squares, f6 and e7:

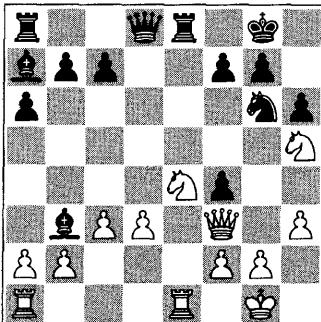
FCM 1.28  
**Szabo-Istvan Polgar**  
 Budapest 1968



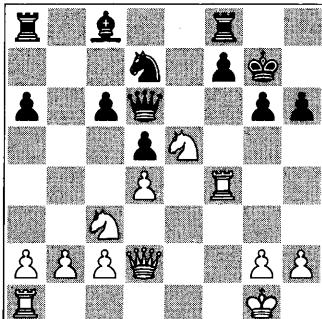
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}d7!$**  COMPUTER EYES also examine this 'impossible' move because it is very forcing. **1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$**  (**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$** ) **2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8!$  1-0.** Again the fork trick **2...  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$  wins:** **3...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$   $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7.$**



FCM 1.29  
**Gunnarsson-Slobodjan**  
 Ohrid 2001



Here is another common form of the fork trick. Black dozed off, assuming that White must recapture the bishop, but instead came **1.  $\mathbb{Q}ef6+! \mathbb{Q}xf6$**  (or **1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  4.  $a xb3$ ) **2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+ 1-0.$****

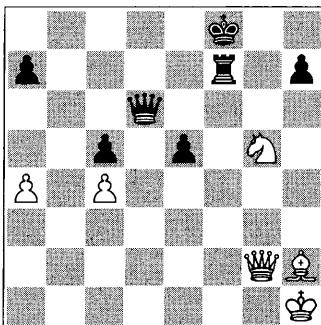


FCM 1.30  
Gallagher-Curran  
Lyon 1993



COMPUTER EYES should stay very attentive to this beautiful stock FORK TRICK on f7, which occurs often in practice:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xh6+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h8+!$  1-0.** White emerges two pawns up after 3... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ .



FCM 1.31  
Petrosian-Simagine  
Moscow 1956



Former World Champ Petrosian was known for his careful positional style; but it's a rather poorly kept secret that when tactical situations arose, his COMPUTER EYES were second to none:

**1.  $\mathbb{W}a8+!$**

There's a 'stock perpetual' after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7??$   $\mathbb{W}d1+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}h5+$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h2$   $\mathbb{W}f3+=$ .

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$**

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xa7+$  captures the rook with check.

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5+!$**

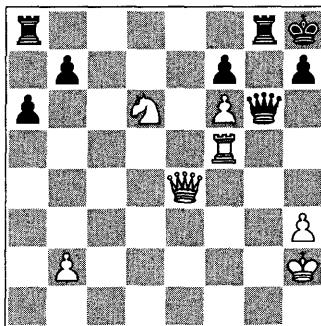
A stock fork trick on f7 squashes Black's prayers.

**2...  $\mathbb{W}xe5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h8+!$  1-0 .**

**Smothered Mates**

In this famous stock pattern, a lone knight delivers mate against a king barricaded behind his own pieces (usually in the corner):

FCM 1.32  
**Suta-Sutey**  
Bucharest 1953



**1.  $\mathbb{N}g5!$**

Combining attack and defense! The black queen is glued to f7 (1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ ) and White's next exploits this again:

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d4!$

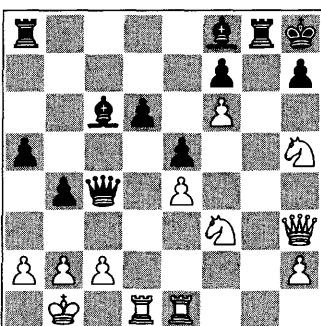
Not the *fingerfehler* 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e5??$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$  check.

2...  $\mathbb{N}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{N}xg6!$  1-0.



Sometimes the smothered mate theme is very well concealed in a thicket of variations, awaiting discovery by discerning COMPUTER EYES:

FCM 1.33  
**Saunina-Chekhanova**  
Sochi 1980



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}g7!!$**

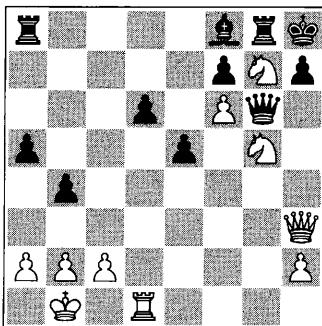
## Forcing Chess Moves

Menacing 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$ , with the pretty BRUTE FORCE variations 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$  h6 3.  $\mathbb{W}f5!$  hxg5 4.  $\mathbb{W}h3+$ , and 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2. fxg7+  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 4. b3! and 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$

Black has based her defense of h7 on this central breakthrough, but fails to perceive White's true motive:

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$   $\mathbb{W}xe4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{W}g6$

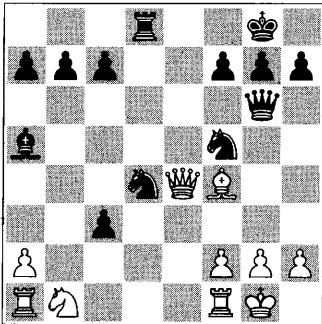


position after 3...  $\mathbb{W}g6$

4.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+!!$   $\mathbb{W}xh7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7#!$

◆ ◆

It is more difficult to smother the king on g1, but with some 'extra help' it can sometimes be done:



FCM 1.34

**Marache-Morphy**

New Orleans blind simul 1857

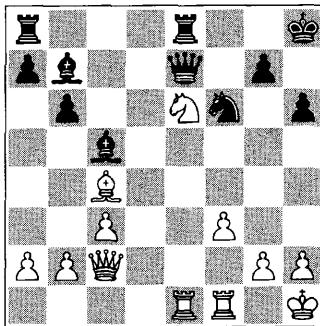
■

1...  $\mathbb{Q}g3!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg6$  (if 2.  $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ ) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}de2\#.$

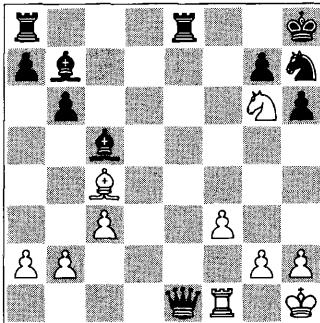
There will be many more examples of such IN-BETWEEN FORCING MOVES in Chapter 8.

Perhaps the most common and important stock smothered mate in master play consists of the 'SELF-BLOCKING SACRIFICE', by which an enemy piece is forced onto a square which was the king's sole escape hatch, paving the way for a smothering knight:

FCM 1.35  
**Niesslbeck-Kuh**  
 Munich 1946

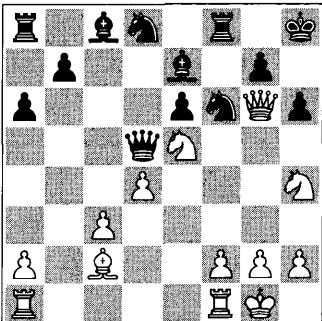


**1.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe1$**  At first glance it seems that White has overlooked his back-rank liability, but seasoned COMPUTER EYES recognize that the black king is first to bite the dust! **2.  $\mathbb{Q}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ .**



smothered mate

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 1.36

**Kirilenko-Maevskaia**

Soviet Union 1974

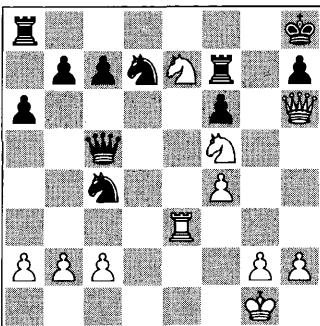


The series of IN-BETWEEN FORCING MOVES makes this example even more beautiful, but COMPUTER EYES should note that each white move is the MOST FORCING available – and thus needs to be analyzed first!

**1.♘h7+!! ♜xh7 2.♗hg6+ ♜g8 3.♗xe7+ ♜h8 4.♗5g6#.**



One more stunning example of the SELF-BLOCKING/SMOTHERED MATE stock theme:



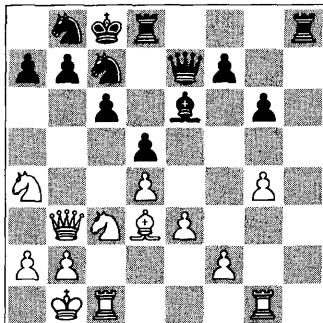
FCM 1.37

**Mingrelia-NN**



**1.♗g6+ ♜g8 2.♗g7+!! ♜xg7 3.♗h6#.**

FCM 1.38  
**Gershon-Mihailidis**  
 Kavala 2004



No self-blocking sacrifice was needed here; just COMPUTER EYES to first notice that Black's pieces have done the job themselves, and creativity to uncover the powerful SURPRISE FORCING MOVE:

**1.  $\mathbb{W}b6!$   $a6$**

1... $a\text{xb6}$  2. $\mathbb{Q}\text{xb6\#}$  is smothered mate, but now White feasts on the weak dark squares around the black king:

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$**

Not 2... $\mathbb{Q}b5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}\text{xb5}$   $a\text{xb5}$  4. $\mathbb{Q}\text{xb5}$ .

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}3a4$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$**

Suicidal, but 3... $\mathbb{W}c7$  4. $\mathbb{W}a7!$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$  leaves White with a very wide choice of winning moves.

**4.  $\mathbb{W}a5$  1-0.** 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$  follows.

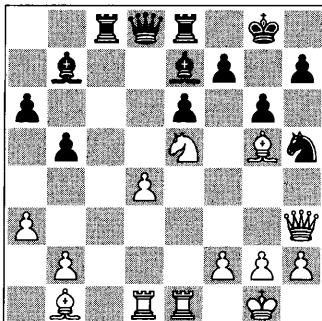
### C) Stock Forcing Moves by the Bishop

The most common stock mating patterns showcasing the bishop's unique talents, occur on the important attacking diagonals a2-g8, b1-h7 and a1-h8.

#### The a2-g8 Diagonal

A queen + bishop battery on the a2-g8 diagonal spells trouble for the enemy king, especially when the queen leads. (see diagram next page)

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 1.39  
**Korelov-Petersons**  
Latvia 1964



**1. ♜xf7! ♛xf7 2. ♜xe6+ ♛f8**

Better, but also insufficient, is 2... ♜g7 3. ♜xe7.

**3. ♜xg6!**

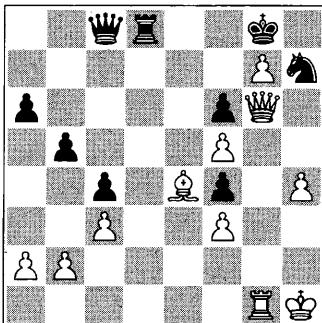
3. ♜a2 ♜c4! is far less convincing.

**3...hxg6 4. ♜h6+ ♛g7 5. ♜xg6**

The threat of 6. ♜xg7# wins decisive material, e.g. 5... ♜f6 6. ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 7. ♜xf6+ ♜f7 8. ♜xg7+ ♛g8 9. ♜xf7+ ♛xf7 10. ♜e5 and White is four pawns up.



Sometimes the force of a bishop strike on the a2-g8 diagonal is so overwhelming, that it begs to be achieved à la Malcolm X, 'BY ANY MEANS NECESSARY!', as in this famous example:



FCM 1.40  
**Fischer-Benko**  
New York 1965



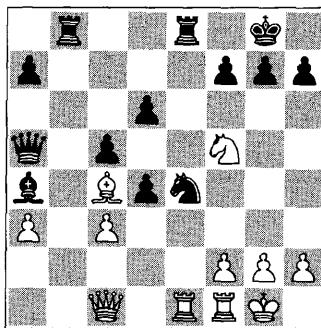
**1. ♜e8+!!**

Fantastic COMPUTER EYES. White does not overlook the second-most-forcing move, just because it seems insane! The real trick, of course, is to find such moves well in advance!

**1... ♜xe8 2. ♜d5+ ♜e6 3. ♜xe6+ 1-0.**

The tandem of queen + bishop can make short work of an under-defended king. Here are the two most common STOCK MATING POSITIONS involving a bishop on the a2-g8 diagonal:

FCM 1.41  
**Kotov-Lisitsin (variation)**  
 Leningrad 1939

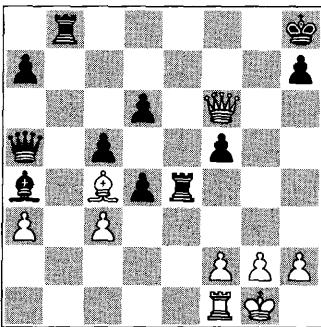


With COMPUTER EYES you should quickly jump on a very forcing way to threaten mate:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g5$  g6 3.  $\mathbb{W}f6!$  gxf5**

Clearly forced to stop mate on g7.

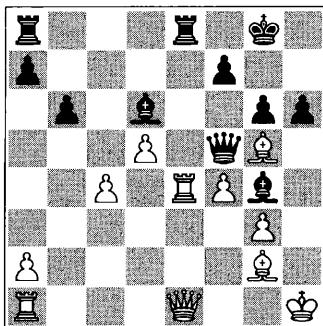
**4.  $\mathbb{W}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ .**



a2-g8 diagonal stock mate #1

## Forcing Chess Moves

The second beautiful queen + bishop partnership involves a queen on h6 (h3 here):



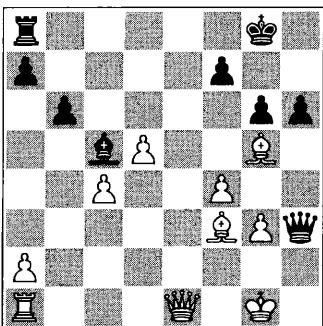
FCM 1.42  
**Heinrich-Ewaldt**  
Hamburg 1999



**1...Qxe4! 2.Qxe4**

White is relying on an 'EQUAL OR STRONGER THREAT' (Chapter 5) to save the  $\mathbb{Q}g5$ . But Black's COMPUTER EYES have seen an even better 'EST':

**2...Qf3+! 3.Qxf3 Qh3+ 4.Qg1 Qc5+ 0-1.**

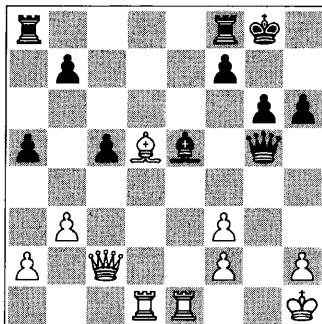


a7-g1 diagonal stock mate #2

Okay 'Mister Literal' – it's not quite mate yet, but will be soon after 5.Qf2 Qxg3+!  
6.Qh1 Qxf2 7.Qg2 hxg5 and ...Qh4+.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Pressure on the a2-g8 diagonal often leads to a fatal PINNING of the f7 pawn and a breakthrough on g6:



FCM 1.44

**Schlosser-Arshak Petrosian**

Baden-Baden 1996



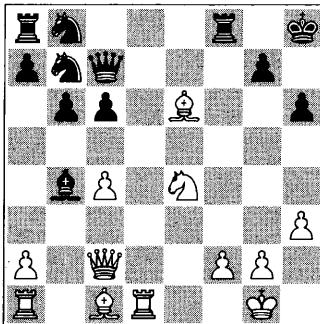
Wrong would be 1.  $\mathbb{B}g1?$   $\mathbb{W}h5$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  with counterplay against h2, but White finds the right way to exploit the g6 weakness:

1.  $\mathbb{B}xe5!$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8?$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}g1+)$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f5!$   
With the transparent threat 4.  $\mathbb{B}g1$ .

3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}g1$  1-0. On 4...  $\mathbb{W}d4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$  decides.



With the BLACK KING on h8 (or h7) CUT OFF BY A SLICING BISHOP on the a2-g8 diagonal, stock combinations prying open the h-file for mating attacks take center stage:



FCM 1.45

**Nunn-Fatin**

Lucerne 1982



1.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{h}xg5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g6$   $\mathbb{B}f6$

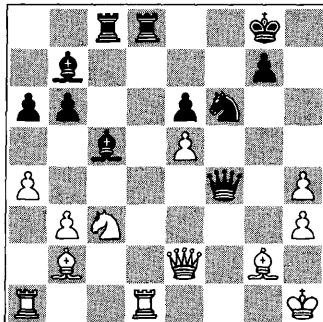
Otherwise 3.  $\mathbb{W}h5+$  is mate.

3.  $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{h}h6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$

Or 4...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  5.  $\mathbb{B}g8+$  and  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ .

5.  $\mathbb{W}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  6.  $\mathbb{B}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}e8+$  High time to call it quits: 1-0.

FCM 1.43  
**Polugaevsky-Ftacnik**  
Lucerne 1982



Here is a very high-class example of a brilliancy utilizing stock themes. Black notices that 1... $\mathbb{Q}g3$  would threaten the thematic mate on h3 (the  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  is pinned and doesn't protect it), but for 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3+$  + 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ . So first Black must find a way to divert the white queen:

**1... $\mathbb{Q}h5!!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$**

Otherwise ... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ .

**2... $\mathbb{Q}g3!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$**

A desperate try to stave off the twin mate threats ... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  and ... $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ . COMPUTER EYES love double mate threats! They are usually extremely forcing.

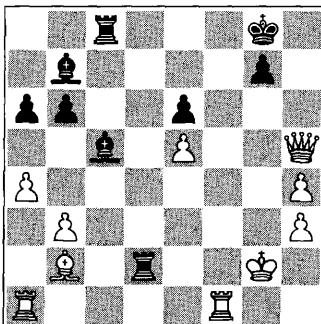
**3... $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$**

Black wants mate! 3... $\mathbb{Q}xd5??$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  allows White to survive the assault against g2-h3.

**4. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$**

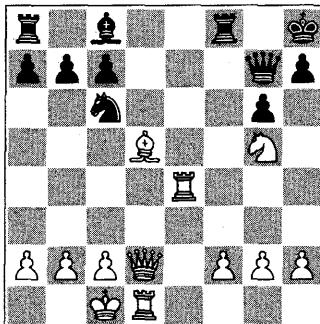
4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}d1!!$  mates on g2 or h3 (5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2\#$ ). White now threatens perpetual check with  $\mathbb{Q}f7-h5+$ !

**4... $\mathbb{Q}xg2+!!$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}d2+$  0-1.**



The beautiful dénouement is 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}g2+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}f8+$  and mate.

FCM 1.46  
**Fahrner-Danner**  
Austria 2004/05



**1.♘xh7! ♜f5**

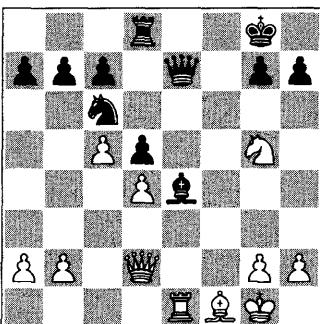
The opened h-file corridor spells doom after 1...♝xh7 2.♜h4+ or 1...♛xh7 2.♝c3+ ♛g7 3.♜h4#.

**2.♘g5** and 3.♜h4+ wins. **1-0**. A real opening debacle!



The queen may be the preferred 'dance partner' of a bishop on the long white diagonal, but the knight knows a few good 'steps' as well, like a nice invasion on f7:

FCM 1.47  
**Tikhanov-Smelev**  
Soviet Union 1970



**1.♜xe4! dxе4 2.♘c4+ ♜f8**

Otherwise ♘f7+ is deadly.

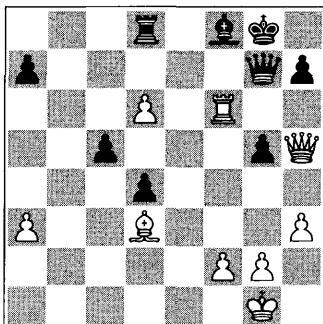
**3.♛f4+ ♜e8**

The killer fork 3...♛f6 4.♘xh7+ denies Black any respite.

**4.♘f7+ ♜d7 5.♛f5+ 1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

In the last two examples of a2-g8 diagonal dominance, COMPUTER EYES spy elegant material gain:



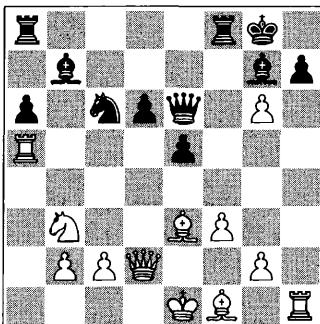
FCM 1.48  
**Bacrot-Vogt**  
Arosa 1996



**1.Qg6!**

This decisive SURPRISE FORCING MOVE is much stronger and more efficient than 1.Qc4+ ♔h8 2.Qf7 ♕g6.

1...hxg6 2.Qc4+ ♔f7 3.Qxg6+!+ 1-0.



FCM 1.49  
**Adorjan-Fuller**  
London 1975



A hostile takeover of the key diagonal renders the mild-looking threats on h7 suddenly deadly:

**1.Qxd6!!**

A fantastic display of COMPUTER EYES! White should also win after 1.gxh7+ ♔h8 2.Qa4 (not 2.Qd5 ♔d4!), but the more forcing text move decides at once.

**1...Qxd6 2.Qc4+ ♔f7**

On 2...♔h8 3.Qxh7+ is mate, but now White regains the lady with decisive interest:

**3.Qxf7+ ♔f8 4.Qc5 1-0.**

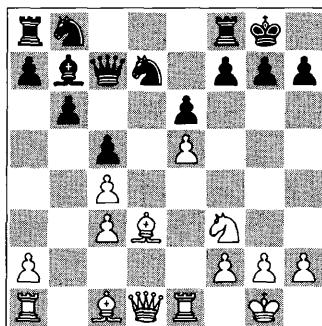
## Stock Bishop Themes Along the b1-h7 Diagonal

The other 'long white diagonal' b1-h7 also figures frequently in stock attacks against the castled king.

### The Classical Bishop Sacrifice

In this stock attacking formula, the sacrifice  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$  is typically followed by the attacking moves  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  and  $\mathbb{W}h5$ , targeting the squares h7 and f7:

FCM 1.50  
**Maeda-Houstoun**  
 Haifa 1976



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$**

The success of the stock attack rests on refuting both this move, and 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (on 2... $\mathbb{Q}h6?$  the king is impaled by the  $\mathbb{Q}c1$ ). On 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h5$   $\mathbb{R}d8$  (the key is that h7 can't be defended; note that if the rook was already on d8 in the diagram, Black could now play ... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  holding everything!) 4.  $\mathbb{W}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  wins, though even better is the thematic line 5.  $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  6.  $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8.  $\mathbb{W}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9.  $\mathbb{W}f7#!$

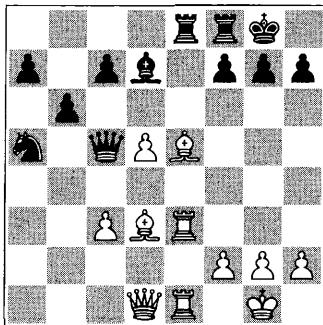
**3.  $\mathbb{W}d3+!$**

The typical 3.  $\mathbb{W}g4$  f5 4.  $\mathbb{W}g3/h3$  is also good, but this shot forces mate.

**3...f5 4.  $\mathbb{exf6+}$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  (4... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  5.  $\mathbb{R}xe6\#$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  6.  $\mathbf{h3\#}$ .**

### The Double Bishop Sacrifice

Here the bishop sac on h7 is followed up by a second one on g7, baring the king to a frontal assault by the major pieces.



FCM 1.51

Judit Polgar-Karpov

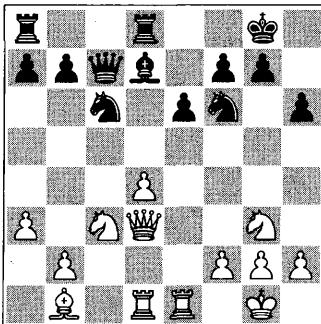
Hoogeveen 2003



**1.♝xh7+! ♜xh7 2.♝h5+ ♜g8 3.♝xg7! 1-0.** Black quickly perishes after 3...♜xg7 4.♜g3+ ♔f6 5.♜g5#; 3...f5 4.♜g6!, or 3...f6 4.♝xf6! with mate in 5 at most: 4...♜xf6 5.♜g3+ etc.



A queen + bishop BATTERY on the b1-h7 diagonal poses many problems for the enemy king:



FCM 1.52

Herbert-Felmi

West Germany 1975



**1.♝h5! ♜xh5**

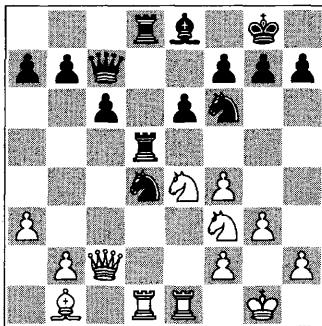
The queen's incursion is unstoppable.

**2.♝h7+ ♜f8 3.♝d5!**

A typical sacrifice sealing off the king's escape at e7. The threat of ♜h8# wins the black queen. **1-0.**

Here the idea of containing the black king is achieved by means of a PIN ALONG THE SEVENTH RANK:

FCM 1.53  
**Bogoljubow-Johanson**  
Oslo 1920



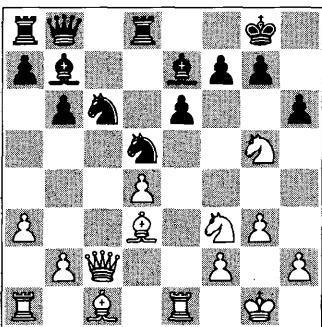
1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$   $gxf6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6!$   $fxe6$  (otherwise 6.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{W}xc7$  1-0.

This is vintage COMPUTER EYES, visualizing a series of forcing captures, and then looking one move deeper to find a powerful sting at the end of the scorpion's tail.



The less menacing ‘inverted’ battery led by the bishop should not be underestimated:

FCM 1.54  
**Momeni-Nilsson**  
Osterskan 1994

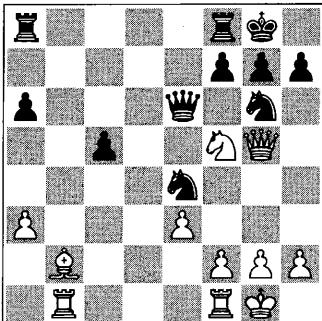


1.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe6$  (threatening 5.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g6!$  and mate on f7. 1-0.

### Stock Bishop Themes Along the a1-h8 Diagonal

Domination of the powerful a1-h8 diagonal often leaves the enemy king precious few options, spawning a mother lode of stock sacrifices. (see next page)

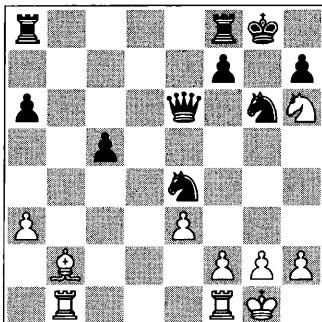
## Forcing Chess Moves



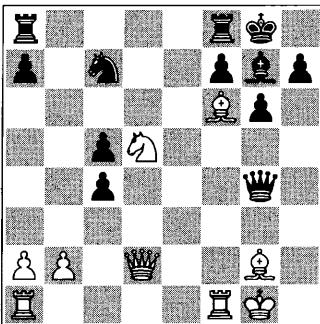
FCM 1.55  
**Rabinovich-Goglidze**  
Leningrad/Moscow 1939



**1.  $\mathbb{W}h6!$  1-0** Mate follows on 1...  $\mathbb{W}xf5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$  or 1...  $gxh6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6\#$ .



a1-h8 stock mate #3



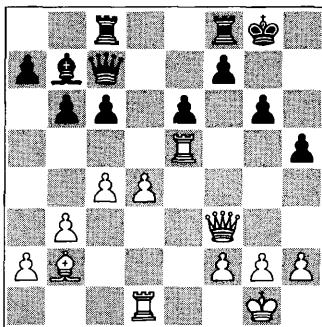
FCM 1.56  
**König-Prins**  
Hastings 1937/38



**1.  $\mathbb{W}h6!$  1-0.** Black may choose his poison among the stock mates 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$ ; 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$ , or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$ . The only line that avoids mate, 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  f5, is of course hopeless as well.

An a1-h8 queen + bishop battery is once again the ultimate diagonal weapon, threatening lethal incursions on g7 or h8:

FCM 1.57  
**Larsen-Andersson**  
 Sweden 1971



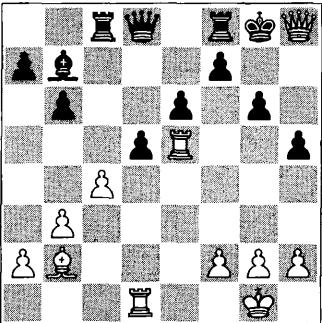
**1.d5!! cxd5**

Falling for it, but Black is already busted.

**2.Qf6! Qd8**

Black banked on disarming the diagonal battery this way, but COMPUTER EYES spotted a fantastic 'MOST FORCING OPTION':

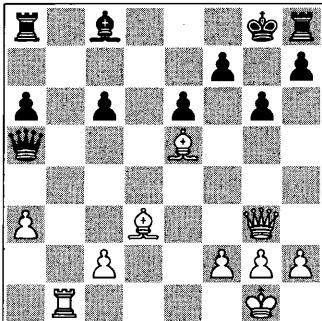
**3.Qh8+!!**



position after 3.Qh8+!!

With double check and mate after 3...Qxh8 4.Qxh5+ Kg8 5.Qh8#.

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 1.58

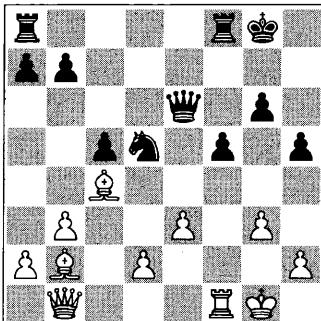
Anand-Morovic Fernandez

Sao Paulo 2004



One doubts that the sharpshooting World Champ wasted much time considering 1.♕xh8 while the bigger game of the a1-h8 battery lay indefensible:

1.♕g5! h6 2.♖f6 ♜h7 3.♗xg6! fxg6 4.♕xg6+ ♔f8 5.♗d6+ 1-0. 5...♜e7 6.♕f6+ mops up. Take note of the stock final position: a classic example of queen + bishop cooperation.



FCM 1.59

Hertan-Boris Kogan

Atlanta 1981



1.♕d3! ♜ad8 2.♕c3! ♜xc3

The a1-h8 battery is too strong after 2...♜d7 3.e4!! ♕xe4 (3...fxe4 4.♕h8#) 4.♗xd5+ ♜xd5 5.♕h8+ ♔f7 6.♕g7+ ♔e8 7.♕e1+, or 2...♔f7 3.♕g7+ ♔e8 4.♗b5+ ♜d7 5.♗xd7+ ♜xd7 6.♕xg6+.

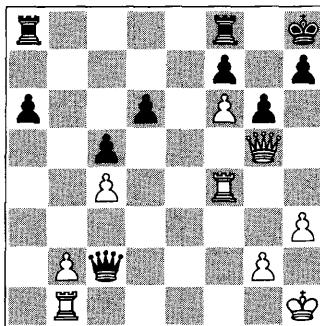
3.♗xe6+ ♔h7 4.♗xc3 The bishops easily prevail. 1-0.

## D) Stock Queen Sacrifices

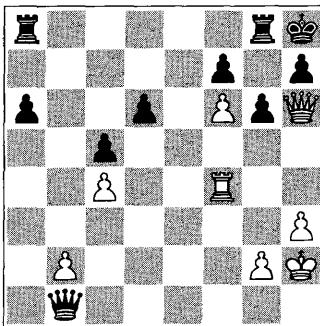
The queen is a bit like the ‘supermom’ of the chessboard: she does so many things so well, all the time, that we tend to neglect her a bit until she does something really ex-

traordinary. Since the rook and bishop have only one unique power, we associate certain “special” stock combinations with them, even though the multidimensional queen could serve just as well. Think about it: we rarely talk about the “power of the queen on the a1-h8 diagonal”! This we take for granted, because the ultra-mobile queen can be powerfully posted from... well, almost anywhere. The queen plays a crucial supporting role in many stock combinations involving all the other pieces, but she is so good, that rarely do we give her extra credit... So when we speak of stock combinations involving the queen, we are usually talking about spectacular recurrent SACRIFICES in which the lady gives herself up selflessly, in order to DRAW THE ENEMY KING INTO A MATING NET:

FCM 1.60  
**Bronstein-Keres (modified)**  
 Budapest 1950



**1.♕h6!** Threatening 2.♗g7#. 1...♗xb1+ 2.♔h2 ♗g8

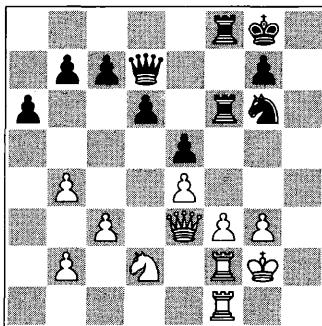


**3.♗xh7+!! ♔xh7 4.♖h4#.**

Alert COMPUTER EYES will notice a crucial detail: the less forcing move 3.♖h4?? actually loses to 3...g5! holding h7. So the stock sacrifice was not only beautiful, but necessary.

## Forcing Chess Moves

In this stock brilliancy, the queen gives herself up to confine the enemy king perilously to the h-file. A final QUIET FORCING MOVE (Chapter 6), freeing up the rook for the final execution, adds extra aesthetic appeal.



FCM 1.61

**Neiksans-Stefansson**

Liepaja 2004



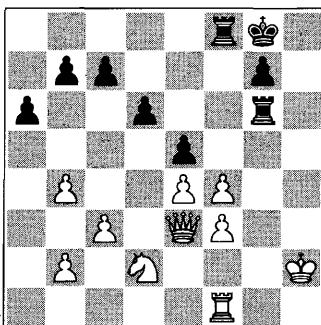
**1...Qf4+! 2.gxf4**

Otherwise 2...Qh3+ or 2...Qh3+ win.

**2...Rg6+ 3.Qh1 Qh3+ 4.Rh2**

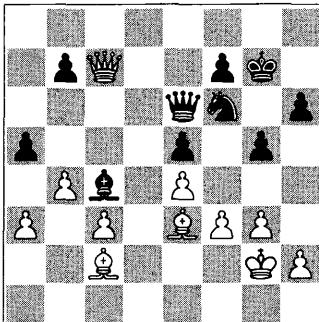
Seems to hold everything, but COMPUTER EYES look further, spotting two 100% FORCING MOVES:

**4...Qxh2+!! 5.Qxh2**



**5...Qf7!** and mate on the h-file. **0-1.**

FCM 1.62  
**Andersson-Hartston**  
 Hastings 1972/73

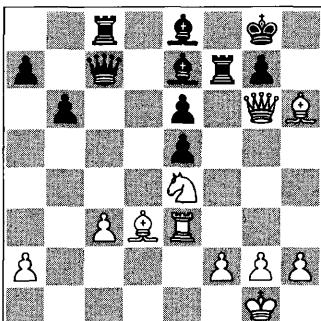


Yet another example of a world-class GM forgetting to use his COMPUTER EYES, and falling prey to the most forcing move on the board! 1... $\mathbb{Q}h3+!!$  Mating after 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$  or 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}f1+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}xf3\#$ . 0-1.



DOUBLE CHECKS hold special interest, since they uniquely LIMIT THE OPPONENT'S OPTIONS by forcing the king to move. While ordinary checks may be met by capture or interpolation, it's impossible to capture or block two checking pieces at once!

FCM 1.63  
**Engels-'Allies'**  
 Brazil 1949



1. $\mathbb{W}h7+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  (1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ ) 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  (2... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g3+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ ) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+!!$

The basis of the brilliancy is the stock mate 3... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ , which forces the black king to take a lover's leap:

3... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g3+ \mathbb{Q}xf6$

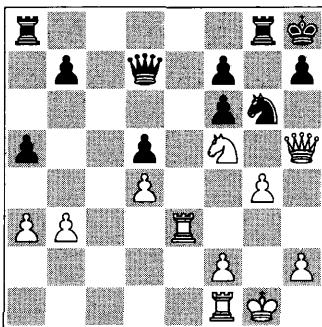
Again 4... $\mathbb{Q}h8(f8)$  allows the stock rook + knight mate 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ .

5. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ . Are your COMPUTER EYES sharp enough yet to try the most forcing move 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+!!$  first before giving up on the sacrifice? If you answered no, don't worry; many more SURPRISE FORCING MOVES are coming in Chapter 4.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Since stock king hunts are characterized by heavy sacrifices, they require, of course, superb BOARD SIGHT and very PRECISE CALCULATION to avoid the embarrassment of being a queen down with no mate in sight.

The next example is exceptional for the original mating net woven at moves 5-6:



FCM 1.64

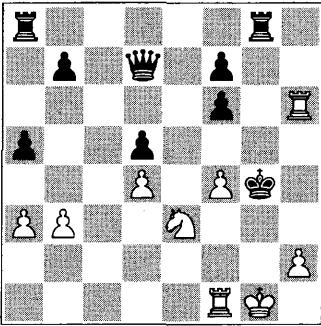
Toran Albero-  
O'Kelly de Galway

Palma de Mallorca 1967



Larsen famously quipped that 'with a knight on f8, one can never be mated!' Indeed 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  holds the fort here, but White has a far more potent forcing option:

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+!! \mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  5.  $f4+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$ .

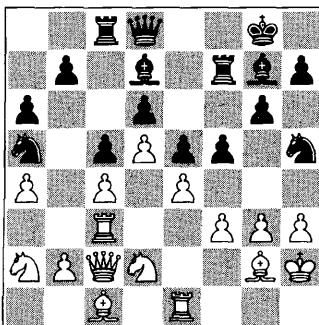


final position

What is really laudable about this spectacular stock queen sacrifice was White's fantastic BOARD SIGHT. The calculation part was actually not as hard – White just chose the most forcing move (the one that needed to be analyzed first) at every turn!

As we saw already in the second example, when the king is drawn deep into no man's land, exquisite QUIET FORCING MOVES may emphasize his helplessness:

FCM 1.65  
Hsu Li Yang-Nunn  
Manila 1992



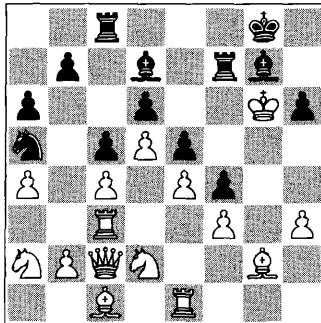
**1... $\mathbb{Q}xg3!!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{W}h4+!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$**

He may as well take the plunge, rather than dropping the  $\mathbb{K}e1$ , as actually happened in the game.

**3..f4!**

A quiet killer threatening 4... $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

**4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6+! 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$**



position after 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$

**5.. $\mathbb{K}f5!!$**

Great tactics demand superb CREATIVITY! Black threatens 6... $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$  and if 6.exf5  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ .

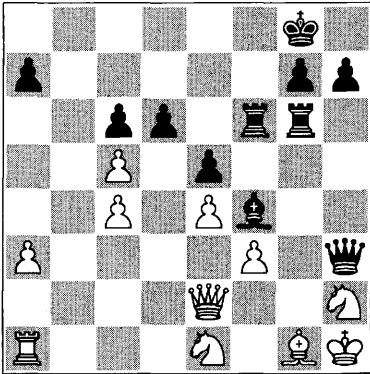
**6.h4  $\mathbb{K}c8$  7.exf5**

Now forced, to prevent 7... $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

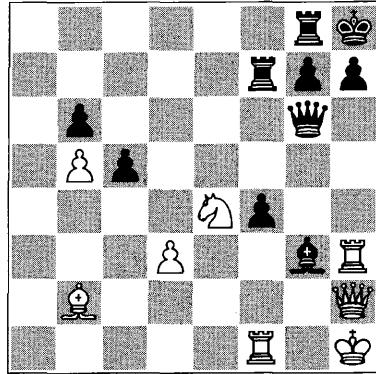
**7... $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ .**



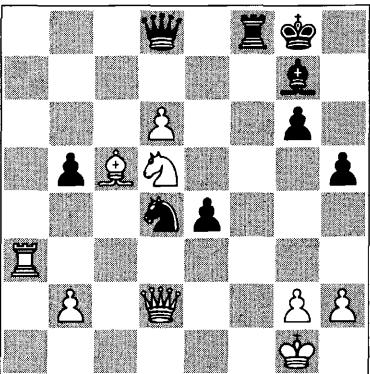
# Chapter 1 - Exercises



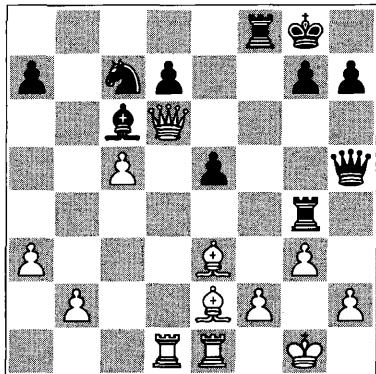
Ex 1.1 ■ Break through  
White's defenses



Ex 1.2 □ Is White's attack  
rebuffed?

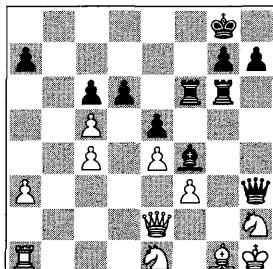


Ex 1.3 ■ Play for mate



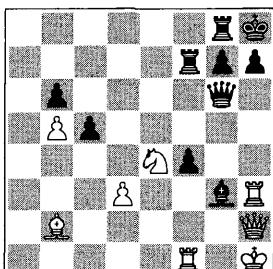
Ex 1.4 ■ Find the mate  
attack

## Forcing Chess Moves



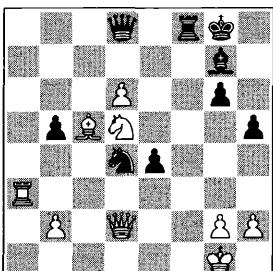
### Ex 1.1 **Birolek-Oral** Olomouc 1997

Black's attack appears decisive, but things could get murky on 1...dxc5 2.Qg2 and 3.Bb1. The solution comes in the form of the stock mating pattern Wh3 and bishop on the a7-g1 diagonal: 1...Qxg1+! 2.Qxg1 Qg6+ 3.Qg4 On 3.Qh1 Qxh2 4.Qxh2 Qf1+. 3...Qxg4+! 4.fxg4 Qe3+ 0-1.



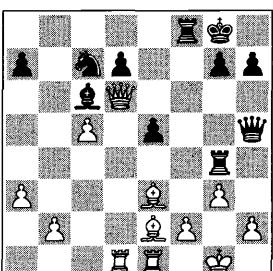
### Ex 1.2 **Spraggett-Speelman** Hastings 1989/90

The Canadian ex-candidate made the win difficult for himself with 1.Qxg3?! fxg3 2.Qxh7+ Qxh7 3.Qxh7+ Qxh7 4.Qxf7 and later on even allowed Speelman to draw, missing the beautiful stock smoothed mate 1.Qg5!! Qxh2 1...h6 2.Qxh6+ Qxh6 3.Qxh6#. 2.Qxh7+ Qxh7 3.Qxf7#.



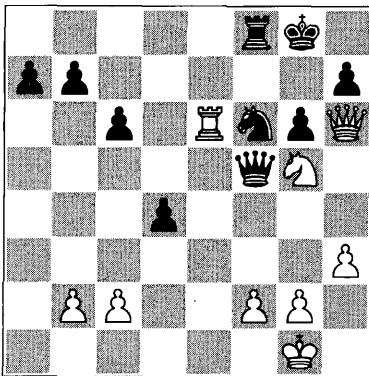
### Ex 1.3 **Sadler-Arakhamia** Hastings 1993/94

In a complex middlegame, a sudden bombshell reveals a hidden back-rank weakness: 1...Qg5!! 0-1. White can't prevent the stock mate 2.Qxg5 Qe2+ 3.Qh1 Qf1+ 4.Qg1 Qxg1# without dropping a piece on the 5th rank.

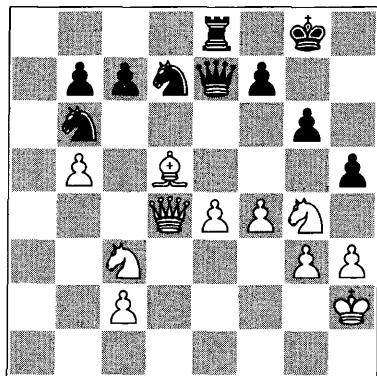


### Ex 1.4 **Ostenstad-Tisdall** Norway 1994

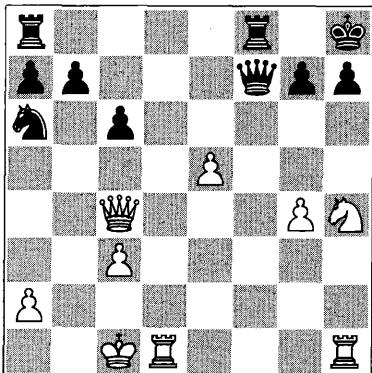
Black has two units hanging, but has accurately deduced that the battle will be decided on the h1-a8 diagonal: 1...Qh3! 2.f3 Or 2.Qf1 Qxg3+! 3.fxg3 (3.hxg3 Qh1#) 3...Qxf1+ 4.Qxf1 Qg2#. 2...Qxf3! The diagonal is worth far more than the exchange. 3...Q3xg3+! looms. 3.Qxf3 Qxf3 4.Qd2 Qxg3+! 5.hxg3 Qh1+ 6.Qf2 Qg2#.



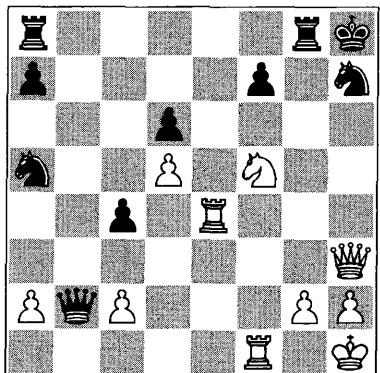
Ex 1.5  Break up  
the fortress



Ex 1.6  Find the most  
forcing attack

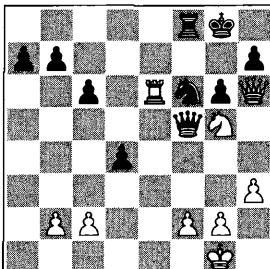


Ex 1.7  Catch Black's king



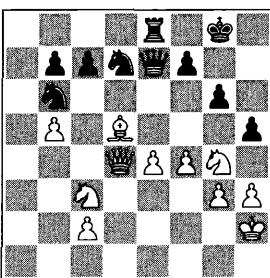
Ex 1.8  Find the winning  
combination

## Forcing Chess Moves



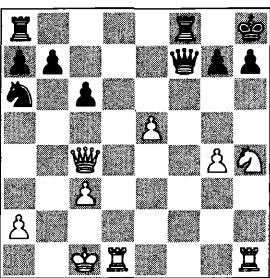
### Ex 1.5 Smagin-Hebert Montreal 2000

A stock shot on h7 demolishes Black's kingside:  
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7!$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$**  No better is 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  5. f3. **2.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$**  with a solid advantage in the endgame 1-0.



### Ex 1.6 Tartakower-Yates Carlsbad 1929

The wily hypermodern great suffered a rare tactical slip with 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+?!$  and took a draw after 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{W}c5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ . White would still be much better after 5...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}d2$ , but was probably upset at himself for missing the instantly winning f7 hammer bolt **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+! \mathbb{Q}xf7$**  1...  $\mathbb{W}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ . **2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ .** **3.f5+  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  4.exf5#.**

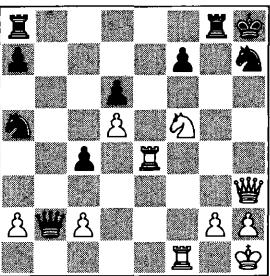


### Ex 1.7 Von Gottschall-NN

**1.  $\mathbb{B}df1!! \mathbb{W}xc4$**

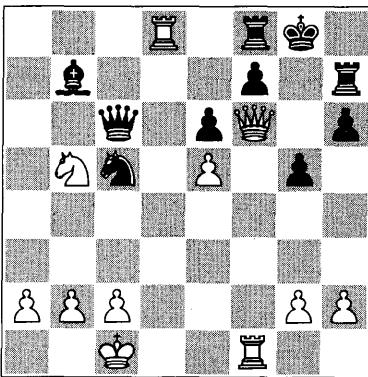
- 1...  $\mathbb{W}e8$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xf8+$  and 3.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ .

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  5.  $\mathbb{B}h1#$**  1-0. A spectacular version of the stock CORRIDOR MATE.

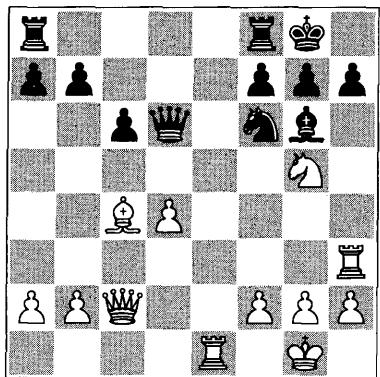


### Ex 1.8 Sutovsky-Smirin Tel Aviv 2002

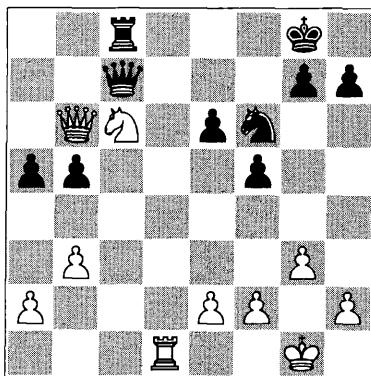
Instead of the 'sluggish' 1.c3 or 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ , COMPUTER EYES engineer a long string of 100% forcing moves ending in mate: **1.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+!! \mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}h4+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  4.  $\mathbb{B}h4+$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  5.  $\mathbb{B}e3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$  6.  $\mathbb{B}f3\#$ .** A beautiful KING HUNT by the fearless young tactician.



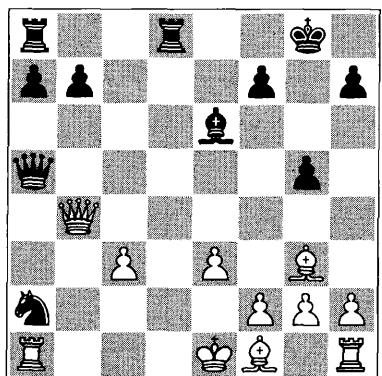
Ex 1.9  Is there  
a forced win?



Ex 1.10  Win material  
by force

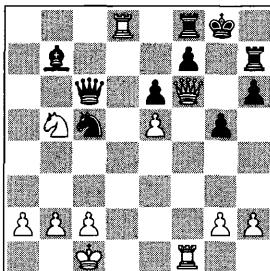


Ex 1.11  Win material  
by force



Ex 1.12  Is Black tricked?

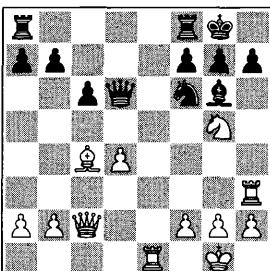
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 1.9 Agapov-Nepomniashy

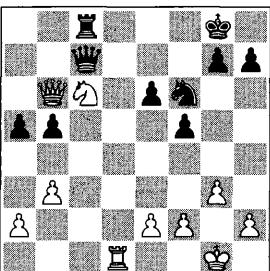
Soviet Union 1983

White has envisioned the beautiful execution of a STOCK DOUBLE-ROOK MATE: 1.  $\mathbb{W}g6+$ !  $\mathbb{R}g7$  If 1...fxg6 2.  $\mathbb{R}dx\mathbf{f}8+$   $\mathbb{R}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{R}1f7\#$ , but now both black rooks are pinned, and can only admire the thematic blow 2.  $\mathbb{R}xf7!$   $\mathbb{R}xg6$  3.  $\mathbb{R}8xf8\#$ .



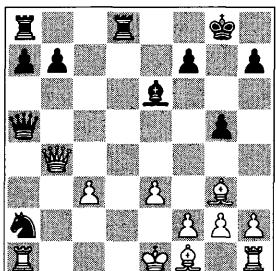
### Ex 1.10 Levenfish-Riumin Moscow 1935

A wonderfully alert stock forking blow produces a winning endgame: 1.  $\mathbb{W}xg6!!$   $\mathbb{R}xg6$  2.  $\mathbb{R}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{R}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{R}h8+!$   $\mathbb{R}xh8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$  With a good extra pawn. 1-0.



### Ex 1.11 Khalifman-Lau Dordrecht 1988

A stock back-rank DEFLECTION blow justifies White's initiative: 1.  $\mathbb{R}d8+!$   $\mathbb{K}f7!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c5!$  Threatening 3.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$ , winning the  $\mathbb{R}c8$ . Remarkably, there is no way out. 2...  $\mathbb{R}xd8$  Also losing are 2...  $\mathbb{W}xd8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$ ; 2...  $\mathbb{W}xc6$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xc8$ , and 2...  $\mathbb{R}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xc8$  and 4.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e5+$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}d4$  with a winning material edge. 1-0.



### Ex 1.12 Suba-Portisch Thessaloniki 1984

White's pin-based defense 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  2.  $\mathbb{R}xa5$  was cleverly smashed by the stock d1 blow 1...  $\mathbb{R}d1+!!$ , hijacking the king into position for the devastating check 2.  $\mathbb{R}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$  0-1.

# Chapter 2 - Stock Mating Attacks

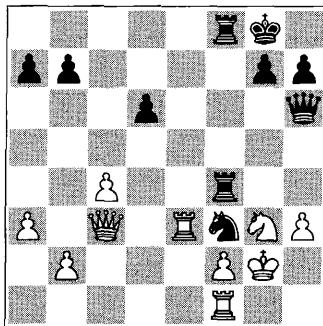
## Study Material

Any study of master combinations will show an almost infinite variety of breakthroughs involving these sensitive squares around the enemy king. **Computer eyes** are greatly enhanced by a ready knowledge of recurring FORCING MOVES against these targets.

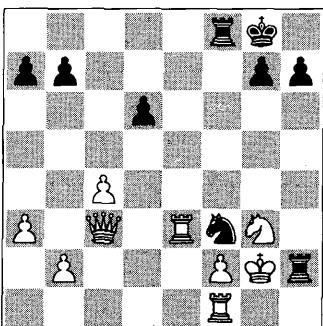
### A) Stock Attacks against the Square h7

We begin with the very important stock mating net of knight on f6 combined with a rook or queen delivering mate on h7 (f3/h2 in this example):

FCM 2.1  
**Holland-Shaw**  
London 1995



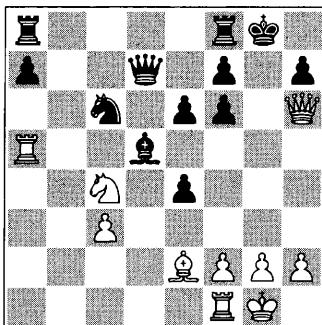
1... $\mathbb{Q}xh3+$ ! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$ .



$\mathbb{Q}+\mathbb{N}$  stock mate

## Forcing Chess Moves

Here is a nice example of the stock  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  + queen duo breaking into h7:



FCM 2.2

**Moor-Pelletier**

Switzerland 1999

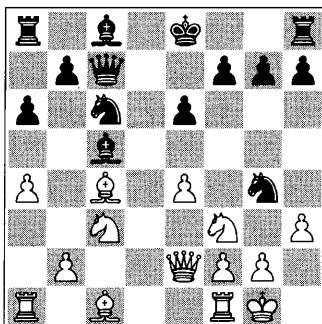


With the  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  hanging, White does not resort to 'knee-jerk' defensive play but finds a crushing EQUAL OR STRONGER THREAT (Chapter 5):

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}e3!$   $\mathbb{Q}xa5$**

Allowing the knight hop to f6, but there is no time for 1...f5? due to the fine BRUTE FORCE sequence 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$  exd5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  when g7 is indefensible.

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$**  The queen falls due to 3... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ . **1-0.**



FCM 2.3

**Lynch-Maderna**

Buenos Aires 1945



We should not neglect another important stock queen + knight attack against h7 (h2). A  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  combined with a queen on the b8-h2 diagonal is particularly dangerous, precisely because White does not have time for the natural defense 1.h3??, as played here and repeated many times since!

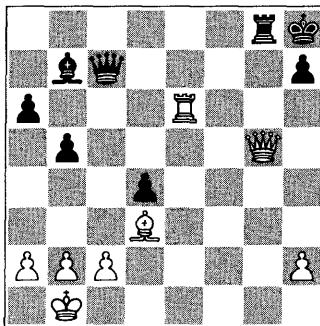
**1...  $\mathbb{Q}d4!$**

A devastating DEFLECTION SACRIFICE.

**2.  $h \times g 4$**  (not 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$  or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$ ) **2...  $\mathbb{Q}xe2+$  0-1.**

A pawn on h7 often presents an inviting target. Being on the EDGE OF THE BOARD, it is the hardest pawn for wayward defenders to reach, and has only one neighboring button to help shelter it:

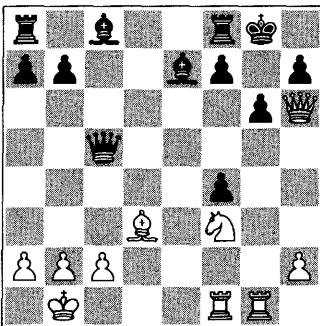
FCM 2.4  
Tarasov-Asadov  
Soviet Union 1978



Black expected a queen trade after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}g7$ , but he neglected the bombshell EQUAL OR STRONGER THREAT 2.  $\mathbb{N}e7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{N}xh7\#$ .

◆ ◆

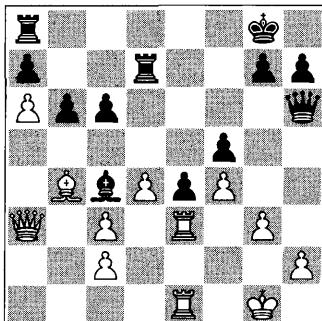
FCM 2.5  
Khalifman-Bareev  
Wijk aan Zee 2002



1.  $\mathbb{N}g5!$  The  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  and  $\mathbb{N}g5$  present a formidable battery against h7 after 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  2.  $\mathbb{N}xg5$ , because characteristically, the  $\mathbb{R}f8$  is tied to f7 by the threat 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ ; while on 1...  $\mathbb{Q}$  any, 2.  $\mathbb{N}h5!$  concentrates too many forces against h7 (2...  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$ ) 1-0.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Especially dangerous are situations wherein a rook on the 7th rank joins with other forces to attack h2.



FCM 2.6

**Bluvshstein-Efimenko**

Montreal 2004

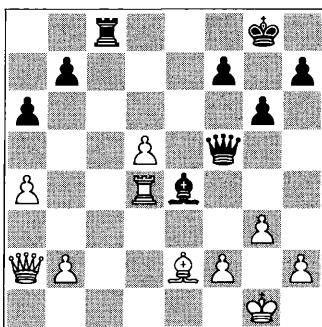


**1...c5!!** A shocking SURPRISE FORCING MOVE forcing a rook invasion. **2.dxc5 ♕h3!**

This QUIET FORCING MOVE nails the pawn to h2. Wrong is the hasty **2...♝d2? 3.h4!**.

**3.♛c1 ♜ad8 4.g4** Forced. **4...♜h4!** Staying focused on the h2 target. **5.♜g3** On 5.h3 ♜d2, the queen infiltrates on f2. **5...♜d2 6.♜g2 e3!** The taboo e-pawn (**7.♜xe3 ♜d1+**) supports d2 invaders and frees the h1-a8 diagonal for Black's bishop! **7.gxf5 ♜xg2+ 8.♝xg2 ♜d5+ 0-1.**

A superb example of BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION and UNBIASED THINKING, i.e., COMPUTER EYES!



FCM 2.7

**Valerian Gaprindashvili-Sakaev**

Linares 2001

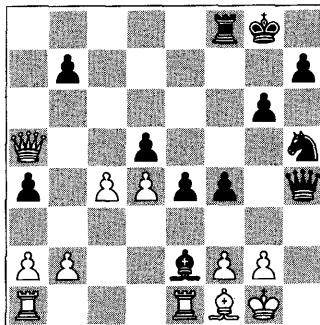


Weaknesses on g2 and the back rank, and the sidelined white queen, suggest possible mischief, but the actual dénouement is the creation of an indefensible h2 pawn:

**1...♜c1+ 2.♜d1** (**2.♝d1 ♛f3!**) **2...♕h3! 3.f3 ♜xf3! 4.♜xf3 ♜c2! 0-1.** The fall of h2 leads to mate.

A PAWN IN THE ENEMY KING'S CAMP on g6 (g3) combined with an attacking queen, may cause a fatal weakness on h7 (h2), cutting lines of defense and escape:

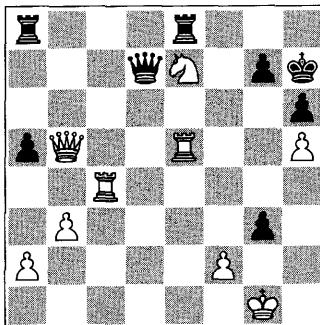
FCM 2.8  
**Nijboer-Bosboom**  
 Leeuwarden 2004



1... $\mathbb{Q}g3!$  2. $\mathbb{F}xg3$   $\mathbb{F}xg3$  3. $\mathbb{W}xd5+$   $\mathbb{H}f7$  when even jettisoning the queen with 4. $\mathbb{W}xf7+$  cannot avert mate: 4... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{W}h2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}h1\#$ .

◆ ◆

FCM 2.9  
**Rustemov-Shabanov**  
 Elista 1996



COMPUTER EYES see beyond the normal recapture on e7:

**1... $\mathbb{W}h3!$  2. $\mathbb{F}xg3$**

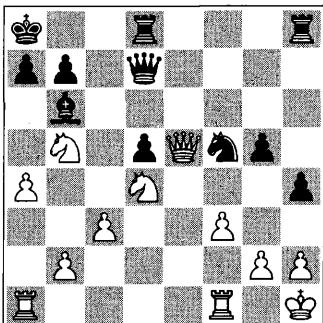
Such a dastardly g-pawn must be eliminated at once, as otherwise after 2... $\mathbb{W}h2+$  both 3... $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$  and 3... $g2+$  queening, await.

**2... $\mathbb{W}xg3+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$**

There is no solace for the forsaken rex in 3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{R}ad8$  4. $\mathbb{R}c1$  (4. $\mathbb{R}d5$   $\mathbb{R}xe7!$ ) 4... $\mathbb{R}d2$ . 3... $\mathbb{R}xe7!$  4. $\mathbb{R}xe7$   $\mathbb{R}f8+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{R}f2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{R}d3+$  0-1.

## Forcing Chess Moves

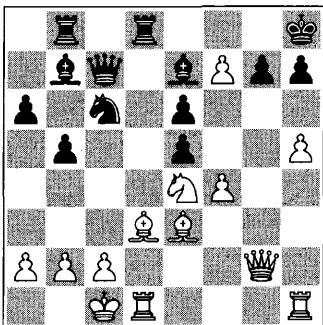
So great is the power of a pawn on g6/g3 combined with an open h-file, that stock sacrifices are often employed to achieve it:



FCM 2.10  
**Brynell-Luther**  
Plovdiv 2003



1... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ ! Winning the exchange by virtue of the crucial stock tactic **2.hxg3?** **hxg3+ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ !** Lightning strikes! Not the less forcing 3... $\mathbb{W}h7??$  4. $\mathbb{W}xg3$ , losing for Black! **4. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$   $\mathbb{W}h7+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}h2#$ .**



FCM 2.11  
**Smeets-Werle**  
Groningen 2002



Here the stock idea of creating a ‘mating pawn’ on g6 enables a fatal assault on h7:

**1. $\mathbb{W}g6!!$**

The corridor mate after 1...hxg6 2.hxg6+ is backed up by the threat 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ .

**1... $\mathbb{Q}b4$**  (no help is 1... $\mathbb{E}xd3$  2. $\mathbb{H}dg1!$ ) **2. $\mathbb{H}dg1!$**

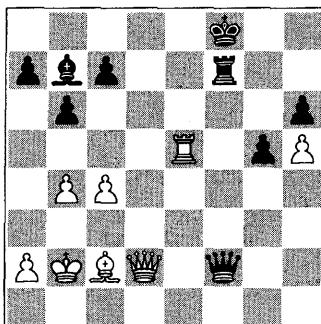
Now the game finished attractively:

**2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $hxg6$  5. $hxg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  6. $\mathbb{E}xh1#$**

Something similar would have happened after 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd3+ 3.\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (White wins a rook after 3... $\mathbb{E}g8$  4. $fxg8\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{E}xg8$  5. $cxd3$ ) 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $hxg6$  5. $hxg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  6. $\mathbb{E}xh1#$ .

Here a beautiful stock mate on h7 relies on a SELF-BLOCKING ENEMY PAWN on g5 containing the black king. Excellent COMPUTER EYES are in play, as all five white moves are the MOST FORCING:

FCM 2.12  
Weissgerber-Rellstab  
Bad Pyrmont 1933

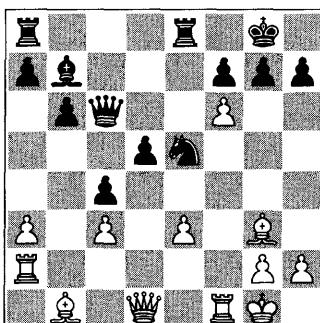


**1.  $\mathbb{W}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xg5+!$   $hxg5$  3.  $h6+!$  The key! 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{B}h7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$ .**



In Chapter 1 we examined some stock bishop sacrifices against h7 to disrupt the king's fortress. In many cases, the aim is simpler; to WIN A PAWN by drawing the king into a FORKING CHECK by white's queen. In this example White gets an added benefit; a stock mating attack against g7:

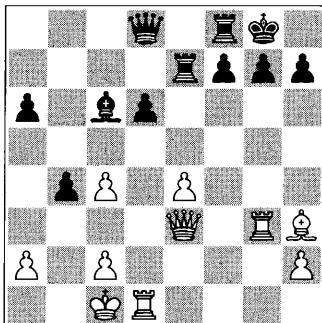
FCM 2.13  
Herzog-Siegmund  
Velden 1996



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+!$**  It is crucial for COMPUTER EYES to note the importance of move order; the LESS FORCING 1.  $\mathbb{W}h5?$  allows 1...  $\mathbb{Q}g6!$  1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  Typically, declining the sacrifice by 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h5+$  or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$   $\mathbb{B}xe5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g4+$  is no help. **2.  $\mathbb{W}h5+  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{B}xe5$$**  White threatened 4.  $\mathbb{W}xf7$ , and neither 3...  $\mathbb{W}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf6$  nor 3...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h6$  were playable. **4.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$   $g6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}g5$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  6.  $\mathbb{B}f3$   $d4$  7.  $\mathbb{B}h3$   $\mathbb{W}e4$**  Black's last prayer is 8.  $\mathbb{W}h6?$   $\mathbb{W}b1+$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}xa2+$ , but again comes a MORE FORCING stock blow: **8.  $\mathbb{W}h8+!  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  9.  $\mathbb{W}h6+  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  10.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ .$$**

### B) Stock Attacks Against the g7 Square

Here is perhaps the most common and important of the many direct ‘bunker busting’ stock sacrifices on g7. The key idea of these shots is to expose the king to direct attack on the g-file by the major pieces:



FCM 2.14

**Naer-Ionov**

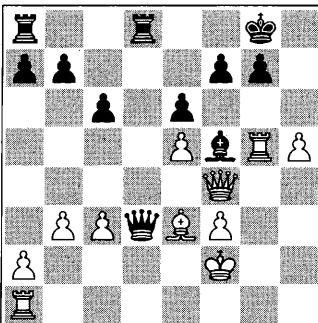
St Petersburg 2004



**1.  $\mathbb{E}xg7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{E}g1\#$ .**

◆ ◆

In master play most instances are more complicated, requiring strong BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION:



FCM 2.15

**Potkin-Kopylov**

Bad Wiessee 2004



**1.  $\mathbb{E}xg7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$**

Just as bad is 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f6!$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (3...  $\mathbb{E}d7$  4.  $\mathbb{E}g8\#$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{W}xf7+$ .

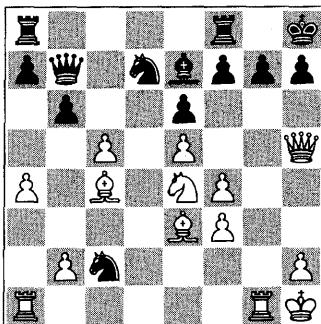
**2.  $\mathbb{E}g1+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$**

Or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b4+$ ! hitting b7.

**4.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$  forces resignation.**

A secondary idea of the stock g7 bunker buster is to attack the NEWLY-ISOLATED PAWN on h7:

FCM 2.16  
**Mikhalevski-Rabinovich**  
Dieren 1999

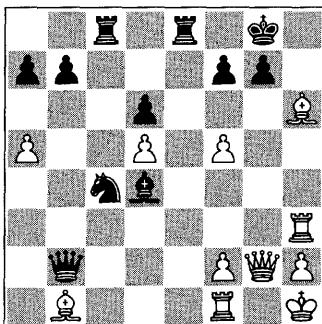


**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$**  The stock mate threat 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$  can't be met by 2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ , or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  **3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$**  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ ) **4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$**  With mate on h7. **1-0.**

◆ ◆

The presence of a pawn on f6 or h6, in the 'belly' of Black's position, sets up the stock possibility of  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  mate. COMPUTER EYES find many sacrificial ways to achieve and exploit such a 'craw pawn':

FCM 2.17  
**Muchnik-Estrin**  
Soviet Union 1961



**1.  $\mathbb{R}b3!$**

A DEFLECTION SACRIFICE offering a rook to break through on g7.

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xb3$**

1...  $\mathbb{Q}a1$  2.  $f6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$  wins the queen.

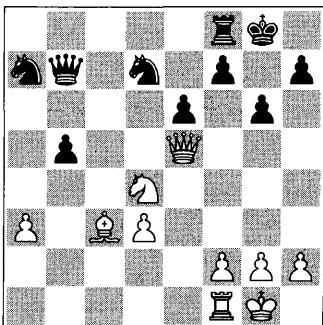
**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$**

If 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$ , 3.  $f6$  is sufficient.

**3.  $f6$  1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

Drastic means are often justified to exploit a weakness on g2/g7:



FCM 2.18

**Sveshnikov-Sherbakov**

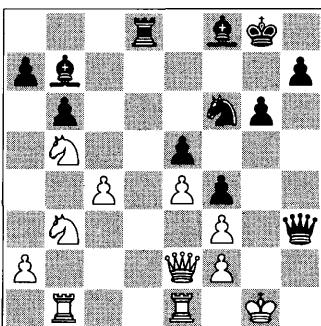
Moscow 1991



**1.  $\mathbb{W}g7+!! \mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$**

The double check forces a familiar stock mate from Chapter 1.

**2...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ .**



FCM 2.19

**Barus-Tkachiev**

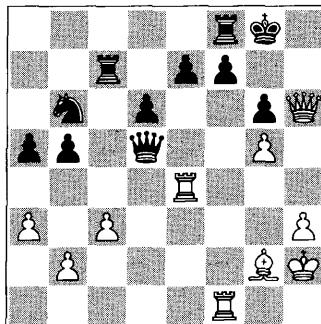
Jakarta 1996



Black has a dominating position, and has several ways to cash in by forcing an f3 pawn in the opponent's craw; e.g. 1...g5! 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  g4! 3. fxg4  $\mathbb{K}xd2!$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xd2$  f3 5.  $\mathbb{W}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$ , or the neat computer line 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  2. fxe4  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  3. f3 (3.  $\mathbb{W}xe4$  f3) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h2$  (4.  $\mathbb{W}b2$   $\mathbb{W}h1+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{Q}c5+!$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{W}g4+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{K}d2+$ . But Tkachiev's solution is also very clear and practical:

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  2. fxe4 (2.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{K}xd2!$ ) 2... f3 3.  $\mathbb{W}f1$   $\mathbb{W}g4+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}h4+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}g4 0-1$ .**  
The f3 pawn renders h2 indefensible.

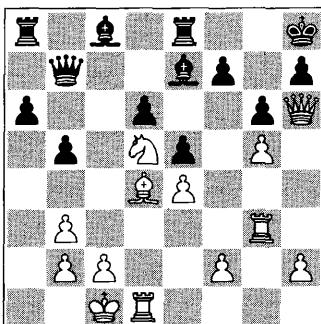
FCM 2.20  
**Movsesian-Tischbierek**  
 New York 1998



While the howler 1.  $\mathbb{H}h4??$  loses to 1...  $\mathbb{W}e5+$  and 2...  $\mathbb{W}g7$ , 1.  $\mathbb{R}f6!!$  achieves the ‘craw pawn’ after 1...  $\mathbb{E}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{G}xf6$ . 1...  $\mathbb{E}e6$  Forced, to meet the new threat 2.  $\mathbb{H}xg6+$   $\mathbb{F}xg6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$  with ...  $\mathbb{G}7$ . 2.  $\mathbb{H}h4$   $\mathbb{W}e5+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}e1+$  4.  $\mathbb{R}f1$  1-0.

◆ ◆

FCM 2.21  
**Emelin-Nepomniashy**  
 St Petersburg 1996



Passive defense by ...  $\mathbb{H}g8$  is often the only response to the stock mate threat  $\mathbb{W}g7$ , but White has several stock answers aside from the queen sacrifice  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$  which we studied in Chapter 1:

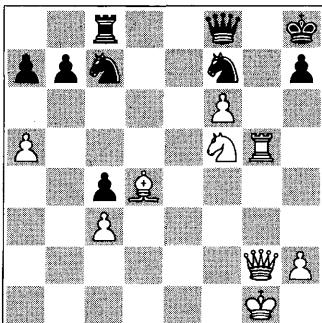
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5+! \mathbb{D}xe5$  2.  $\mathbb{R}f6$**

White forces a pawn to f6 by means of this stock h7 mating threat.

**2...  $\mathbb{R}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{G}xf6$   $\mathbb{H}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{R}d8!$**  Pinning the black rook and forcing 5.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ . 1-0.

## Forcing Chess Moves

The f6 intruder may even worm his way directly onto g7 by means of a sacrifice, creating winning mating or queening threats:



FCM 2.22

**Virtanen-Bergquist**

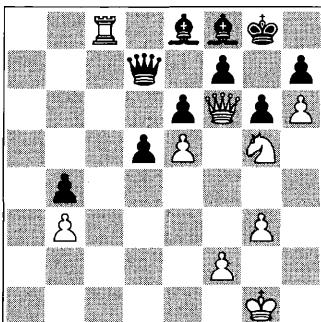
correspondence game, 1974



**1.♕g8+! ♜xg8 2.♗g7+! 1-0.** It's smothered mate after 2...♜xg7+ 3.fxg7+ ♔g8 4.♘e7#.



A pawn on h6 also limits the king's sphere and sets up stock mating threats on g7:



FCM 2.23

**Gausel-Tallaksen**

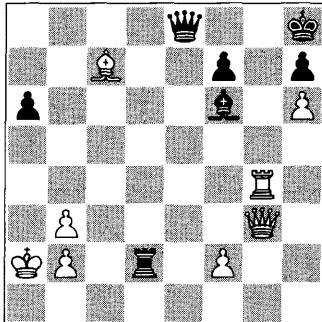
Molde 2004



Black is in a desperate race to remove the offender with 1...♝xh6, but White strikes first:

**1.♗d8 ♜c6 2.♘xf7! ♜xf7 3.♗g7#.**

FCM 2.24  
**Nunn-Murshed**  
 London 1985



Black's counterplay looks strong, but super-randmasterly COMPUTER EYES have prepared a blistering barrage of FORCING MOVES based on the power of the knight on h6:

**1. ♕e5!! ♖xf2**

The main point is 1... ♗xe5 (1... ♗xe5 2. ♜g8#) 2. ♜g8+! ♖xg8 3. ♕xe5+! delivering mate on g7.

**2. ♜e4!**

More elegant than 2. ♔xf6+ ♖xf6 3. ♕c3.

**2... ♖g8**

2... ♗xe5 leads to mate on the back rank: 3. ♜g7+! ♖xg7 4. ♜xe8+ ♖f8 5. ♜xf8#.

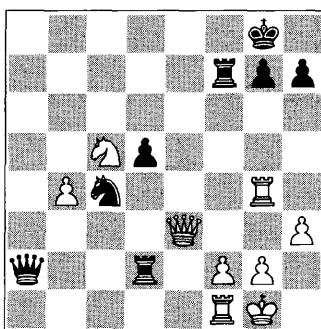
**3. ♔xf6+ ♖xf6 4. ♜xg8+ ♖xg8 5. ♜e8#.**



Of course, other pieces (in lieu of a 'craw pawn') enjoy joining the queen in an irresistible assault on g7.

The attacking duo of queen + knight is regarded as a virtual 'MATING MACHINE':

FCM 2.25  
**Gligoric-Gudmundsson**  
 Amsterdam 1950



**1. ♕e8+!**

## Forcing Chess Moves

1.  $\mathbb{B}xg7+$ ! is another strong idea, mating after 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ ? 2.  $\mathbb{W}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}d8\#$ , but Gligo's method is more forcing, since 1.  $\mathbb{B}xg7+$  allows 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$ !? after which White would have to find the long, brilliant mating sequence 2.  $\mathbb{B}g8+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g5+$   $\mathbb{B}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  (5...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  7.  $\mathbb{h}4+$ ! etc.

**1... $\mathbb{B}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xg7+$ !**

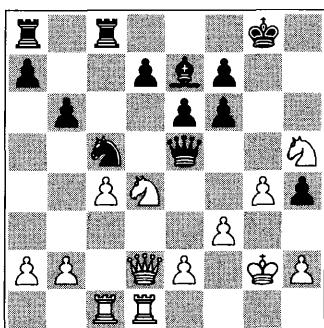
Also winning is 2.  $\mathbb{W}e6+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e7$   $\mathbb{B}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{W}b2$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{h}6$  (5...  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$ !  $\mathbb{W}xe5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$  (7...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ ? 8.  $\mathbb{W}h4\#$ ).

**2... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e7+$   $\mathbb{B}f7$**

Black is also mated after 3...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{B}f7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}e8+$ . 3...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf8$  holds out longest, but the exposed king will soon die of frostbite.

**4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ .**

A great display of COMPUTER EYES. The most forcing moves did the job, using accurate BOARD SIGHT and BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION which we will study at length in Chapter 3.



FCM 2.26  
**Nikolic-Hracek**  
Polanica Zdroj 1996

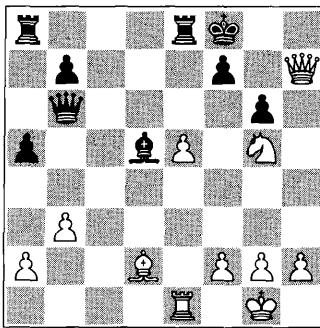


White concocts a winning g7 raid with the help of COMPUTER EYES and perhaps some deductive reasoning. Noticing that 1.  $\mathbb{W}h6$  must be met by 1...  $\mathbb{W}g5$  (not 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  hanging f6), White next tries the interference shot 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$ , but finds the defense 1...  $\mathbb{exf5}$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$ ! This beckons the solution 1.  $\mathbb{b4}!!$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!$  and now 2...  $\mathbb{exf5}$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h6$   $\mathbb{W}xe2+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  wins on the spot, while the roof caves in a little more slowly on 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}d3+!$  1-0.

## C) Stock Attacks Against the f7 Square:

The ever-dangerous queen + knight duo wins many scalps on f7:

FCM 2.27  
O'Kelly de Galway-Böök  
Dubrovnik 1950



**1.e6! ♕xe6**

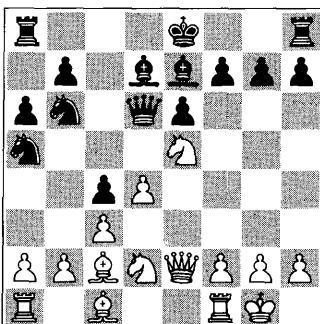
Black must cope not only with the threat of 2.♕xf7#, but also with the stock SELF-BLOCKING shot 1...♝c7 2.e7+! ♜xe7 3.♕h8#.

**2.♕xe6! 1-0.**



The most common stock forcing move on f7 is the SACRIFICE OF A KNIGHT OR BISHOP there to initiate an attack. As we saw earlier with the sacrifice ♘xh7+, an f7 piece sacrifice is sometimes just a ploy to win a pawn, by drawing the king into a winning queen fork:

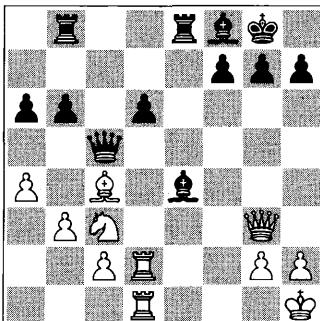
FCM 2.28  
Zhigalko-Goj  
Polanica Zdroj 2001



In this already overwhelming position White chooses the most forcing move:

**1.♘xf7! ♔xf7 2.♗h5+ g6 3.♗xa5 ♜ac8 4.♘e4 ♜c7 5.♘g5+ ♔f8 6.♗e1** with a good extra pawn. 1-0.

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 2.29

Thipsay-Prathamesh

Mumbai 2003



**1. ♜xf7+!**

COMPUTER EYES note a MOVE ORDER issue: 1. ♜xe4? would allow 1... ♜xe4 2. ♜xf7+ ♔h8!.

**1... ♜xf7 2. ♜xe4 ♜e5**

2... ♜xe4 fails to the forking check 3. ♜f3+.

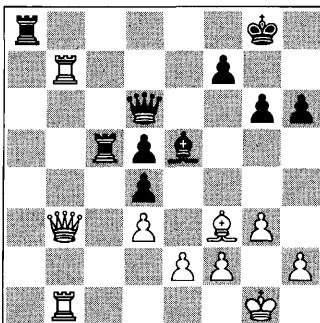
**3. ♜f1+ ♔e7**

Adding insult to injury, the king must step into a minefield to avoid losing the exchange by 3... ♜g8 4. ♜f6+.

**4. ♜g4 1-0.** Black's position is in ruins.



Even a rook may sometimes play a temporary sacrifice on f7:



FCM 2.30

Ibragimov-Kalegin

Elista 1995

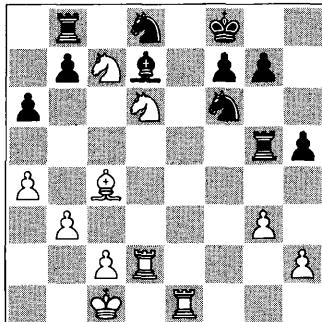


**1. ♜xf7! ♜xf7**

If 1... ♜b8, 2. ♜xb8+ or 2. ♜b7 wins.

**2. ♜b7+** Regaining the rook with interest. Characteristically of such stock shots, Black is not only down a pawn, but his king's cover is seriously compromised. **1-0.**

FCM 2.31  
**Varga-Portisch**  
 Miskolc 2004

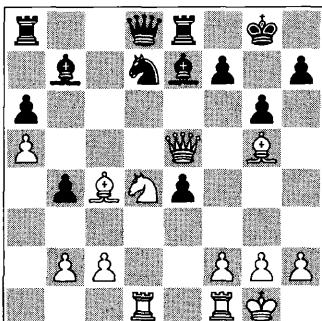


Given f7's PROXIMITY TO THE CENTER, it isn't surprising that many stock shots there result in central breakthroughs:

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xd7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$  White regains the rook after the pin 3... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ ?
4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  or the discovery 3... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5+$  **1-0**. An excellent piece of BOARD SIGHT and BRUTE FORCE calculation.



FCM 2.32  
**Vokarev-Asmundsson**  
 Istanbul 2003



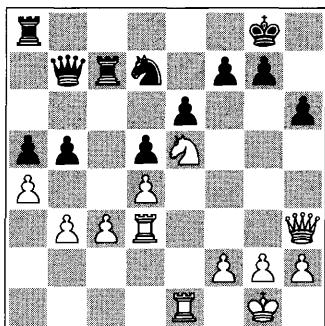
1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$

2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  allows the stock mate 2... $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ , but now White crashes through in the center:

3.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+!$   $\mathbf{gxf5}$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xd7$  Winning the queen or regaining the  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  with a lethal attack.  
**1-0**.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Another common objective of the stock f7 sacrifice is to undermine the e6 square:



FCM 2.33  
**Reis-Rodrigues**  
Lisbon 1996



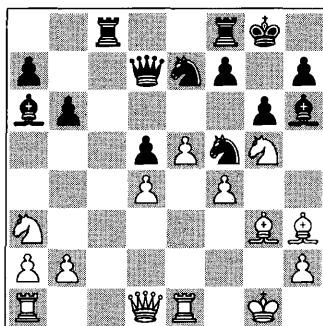
**1.♘xf7! ♗xf7**

1...♗f8 2.♘d6! is murder.

**2.♕xe6+ ♗f8 3.♕e7+ ♗g8 4.♖g3 g5**

Or 4...♗f6 5.♖xg7+ ♗h8 6.♖xc7.

**5.♖xg5+! hxg5 6.♖xg5+ ♗h8 7.♖e7 ♕g8 8.♖h6#.**



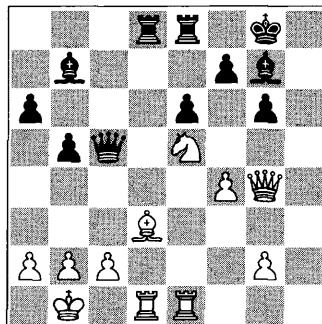
FCM 2.34  
**Zollbrecht-Cvitan**  
Biel 1993



**1.♘xf7! ♕xf7 2.e6 1-0.**

The normal purpose of a stock sacrifice on f7 is not so subtle; namely, the destruction of Black's kingside leading to mate:

FCM 2.35  
**Rozentalis-Luther**  
Panormo 2001



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$**

More resilient was 1...  $\mathbb{B}xd3$ , after which 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$  is best.

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$**

Mate also follows on 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+$  or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xd8$   $\mathbb{B}xd8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{B}h1+$ .

**3.  $\mathbb{B}xd8$   $\mathbb{B}xd8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe6$**

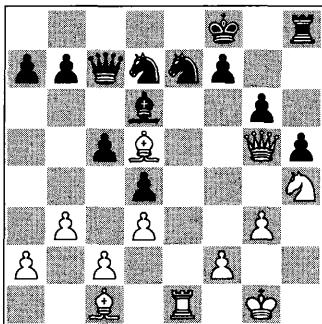
Sharp COMPUTER EYES have perceived A STOCKDOUBLE MATE THREAT.

4...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  (other defenses of f7 meet the same end) 5.  $\mathbb{W}e8+!$   $\mathbb{B}xe8$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xe8\#$ .



When a queen + bishop combine in attacking f7, the defender must also contend with possible mating incursions on g8:

FCM 2.36  
**Gutman-Kholmov**  
Riga 1975

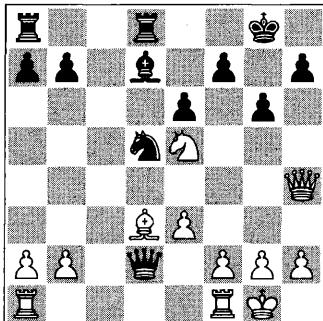


**1.  $\mathbb{B}xe7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+!$   $\mathbb{B}xg6$**

If 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe7\#$ , or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$  is a rout.

**3.  $\mathbb{W}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+!$   $\mathbb{B}xh6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ .**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 2.37

**Bareev-Sakaev**

Moscow 2001



Often the result of an f7 sacrifice is a decisive BREAKTHROUGH on h7 by the queen:

**1.♘xf7! ♜xf7 2.♕xh7+ ♔f6**

Otherwise Black is crushed after 2...♔f8 3.♕xg6, e.g. 2...♔e8 3.♕h8+ ♔e7 4.♕g7+ ♔d6 5.♖fd1.

**2.♕xg6+ ♔e7 3.♕g7+ ♔d6**

White's fine assessment of Black's flight attempt goes beyond a mere stock combination and into the territory of advanced BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION.

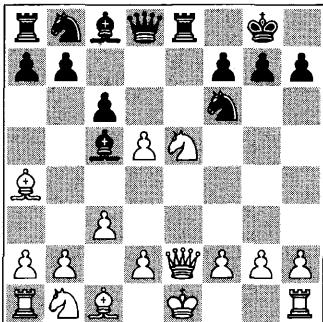
**4.♖fd1! ♜b4 5.e4 ♔a4**

5...♗b6 6.♖ac1!, or 5...♗e7 6.a3! ♜c5 (on 6...♜b6, 7.e5+ wins the ♜e7) 7.♖ac1 ♜g8 8.♕b5+! ♔d5 9.♕xd7+ or first 9.♖xd5+.

**6.♖ac1! e5 (6...♔xd1 7.e5#) 7.♕c2 1-0.**



Another key theme of f7 sacrifices is a knight fork on g5 (g4 here), e5 or d6:



FCM 2.38

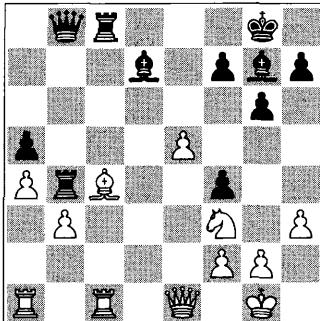
**Vescovi-Ivan Sokolov**

Malmö 1995



White suffered an opening meltdown after **1...♔xf2+! 2.♘xf2** In the game White resigned after 2.♔f1 ♜g4! 3.♕xf2 ♜xe5 4.♔g1 ♜e7; also horrible is 2.♕xf2 ♜xe5+ 3.♔d1 (3.♔f1 ♜f5) 3...♗g4+ 4.♔c2 ♜e2 and 5...♘xd5. **2...♜xe5 3.♕xe5** Losing to a fork trick, but otherwise ...♗g4+ anyway with a winning attack. **3...♗g4+ 0-1.**

FCM 2.39  
**Moiseenko-Areschenko**  
Kharkov 2004



**1.♕xf7+! ♕xf7 2.e6+! ♔f8**

Awful necessity. If 2...♔g8 3.exd7 the stock attack 4.♕e6+ and 5.♕g5 looms, while on 2...♕xe6 3.♕g5+ is tremendous; for if 3...♔f8 4.♕xe6 threatens mate on f7 and h7; while 3...♔f6 is blasted by 4.♕xe6+ and 5.♕xc8.

**3.exd7 ♜d8 4.♕a2**

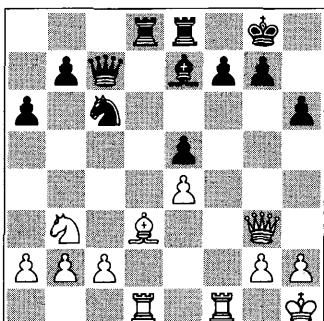
Engaging the reserves. The forcing 4.♕g5! might have been even stronger.

**4...♜xd7 5.♕ac2!** (Black can't defend both the c-file onslaught and the coming ♕g5, e.g. 5...♜d8 6.♜c7 ♜e8 7.♕d2 ♜d8 8.♕d7 ♜f6 9.♕cc7) **5...♛e8 6.♕c8 ♜d8 7.♕xd8 ♛xd8 8.♕g5! ♜d7** (8...♛xg5 9.♕c8+ ♔f7 10.♕e8+ ♔f6 11.♕c6+ ♔f5 12.♕e6#) **9.♕c7!** The fork trick 9...♛xc7 10.♕e6+ decides. **1-0.**



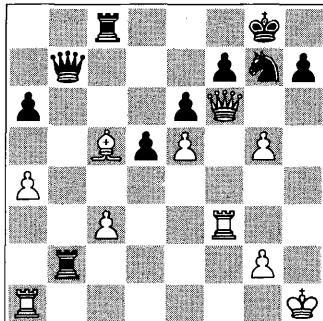
Naturally an open f-file is a big asset in sacrificial raids on f7:

FCM 2.40  
**Hartston-Penrose**  
London 1963



Here the veteran English master offered a 'strategic' draw to his young opponent. Hartston took the bait, and suffered the agony of being shown the stock mating attack **1.♜xf7! ♕xf7 2.♕c4+ ♔f8 3.♕f1+ ♔f6 4.♕xf6+! gxf6 5.♕g8+ ♔e7 6.♕e6+ ♔f8 7.♕xf6+** and mate next **1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 2.41

**Ye Jiangchuan-Judit Polgar**

Prague 2002



**1. ♜e7! ♜f5 2. ♜xf5!** (another elegant win was 2.g6! fxg6 3. ♜xe6+ ♛g7 4. ♜xf5! etc.) **2...exf5 3.e6! ♜f8**

On 3...fxe6, quickest is 4.g6! with the stock mate 4...hxg6 5. ♜xg6+ ♛h8 6. ♜f6+. Simplest on 3... ♜b1+ is 4. ♜h2! ♜b8+ 5.g3! ♜b2+ 6. ♜h3.

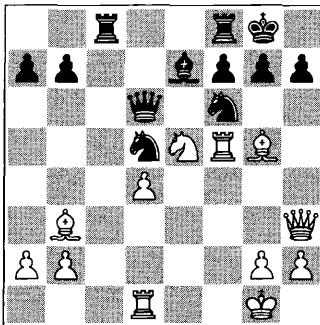
**4. ♜xf8 ♜xf8 5.e7+!**

A reprise of the self-blocking stock mate 5... ♜xe7 6. ♜h8#.

**5... ♜e8 6. ♜e1** and 7. ♜h8+ **1-0**.



In this typical ‘isolated d-pawn position’, the f7 sacrifice softens the a2-g8 diagonal, leading to a breakthrough on d5:



FCM 2.42

**Botvinnik-Vidmar**

Nottingham 1936



**1. ♜xf7!**

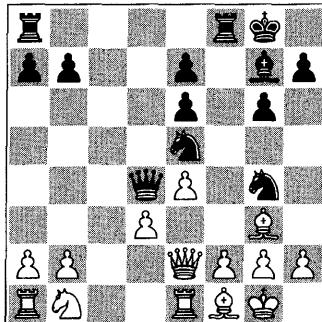
A shot from the blue, but now the a2-g8 diagonal is vulnerable and the ♜c8 is loose. Also strong would have been first 1. ♜xf6, with the same idea.

**1... ♜xf7**

On 1... ♜xf7 2. ♜xf6 the focal point d5 is falling.

**2. ♜xf6 ♜xf6** (2... ♜xf6 3. ♜xf6! and 4. ♜xc8) **3. ♜xd5 1-0.**

FCM 2.43  
**Schmaltz-Vouldis**  
 Fürth 2002



Black uses his development edge to launch an attack on the f-file:

**1... $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}g4!$  4. $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$**

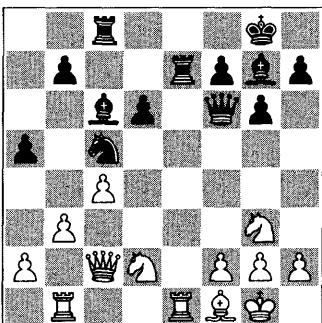
Now Black exploits a stock 'MILL' PATTERN (a repetitive sequence of discovered checks, also known as 'Zwickmühle') on the a7-g1 diagonal, to pick off White's center before recapturing the rook.

**6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3+$  9. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe1$  0-1.**



Here a dramatic STOCK QUEEN SACRIFICE on f2 is made possible by a fatal weakness on the a7-g1 diagonal:

FCM 2.44  
**Farago-Hazai**  
 Budapest 1976



**1... $\mathbb{W}xf2+!!$**

COMPUTER EYES don't neglect the most forcing options, even if they look 'impossible'!

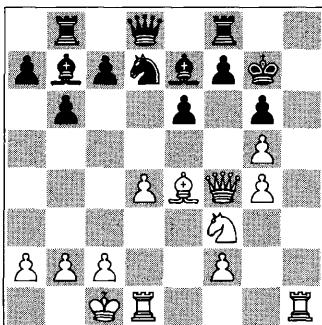
**2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$**

Rook discoveries now threaten mate or the queen, and only some enjoyable BRUTE FORCE PRECISION is needed to break White's defenses:

**4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  (4. $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ ) 4... $\mathbb{Q}d3+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e4+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  0-1.**

#### D) Stock Attacks against the Square h8

These combinations involve DIRECT SACRIFICES on h8, winning material or leading to a mating attack on the h-file; and sacrifices on other nearby squares, paving the way for a FATAL INVASION on h8. The menace of a queen + rook invasion on the open h-file is so tremendous that it often justifies heavy sacrifices. Simultaneous mating threats on h7 and h8 usually win unless the h-file can be contested.



FCM 2.45

**Judit Polgar-Berkes**

Budapest 2003



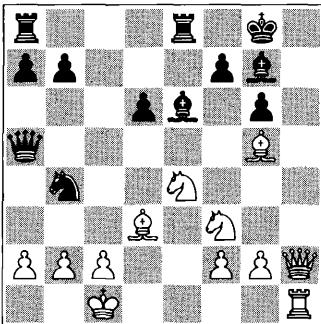
1.  $\mathbb{W}h2?$  allows 1...  $\mathbb{B}h8$ , therefore: 1.  $\mathbb{B}h7+!! \mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h2+ \mathbb{Q}g8$

The idea 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h6+!$  destroys Black's chances to contest the h-file.

3.  $\mathbb{B}h1 \mathbb{Q}xg5+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5 \mathbb{W}xg5+$  5.  $f4$  1-0.



A defending  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  provides one of the best defenses against mate on the open h-file, while remaining active on the h8-a1 diagonal; but various stock sacrifices have been found to overcome this obstacle:



FCM 2.46

**Shabalov-Bhat**

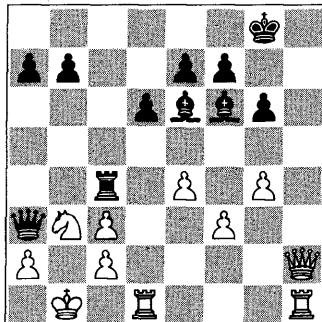
Alexandria 1996



1.  $\mathbb{W}h7+ \mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h8+ \mathbb{Q}xh8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xh8+ \mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

An equally strong stock sac, by the way, is 2.  $\mathbb{W}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ .

FCM 2.47  
**Sicilian, Dragon Variation**  
 analysis by Lilienthal



**1.g5! ♖xc3**

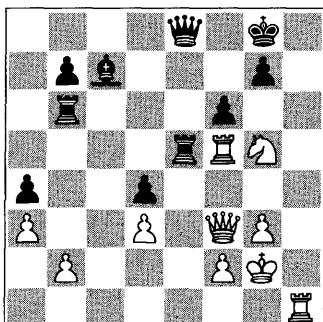
Now Black is ready to deliver mate on b2, but the stock h8 breakthrough sacrifice arrives just in time:

**2.♘h7+ ♕f8 3.♘h8+! ♖xh8 4.♖xh8+ ♔g7 5.♗dh1 1-0.** 6.♗1h7# follows.



The common stock sacrifice ♘h8+ may provide a crucial tempo for a devastating queen check:

FCM 2.48  
**Malisov-Birnboim**  
 Jerusalem 1996



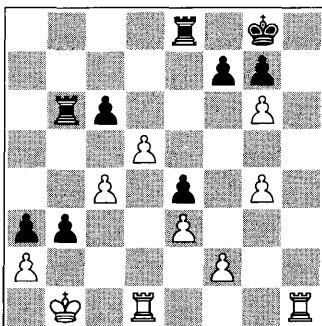
**1.♗xe5! ♖xe5**

Not 1...♖xe5 2.♘d5+ ♕f8 3.♘h8+.

**2.♘h8+! ♕xh8 3.♘h5+ ♕g8 4.♘f7+ ♕h8 5.♘f8#.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

In some cases, the h8 rook sacrifice is followed by a QUIET FORCING MOVE threatening to entrap the king on the h-file and deliver a CORRIDOR MATE, perhaps in conjunction with a secondary threat:



FCM 2.49

**Artur Kogan-Samaritani**

Bled 1998

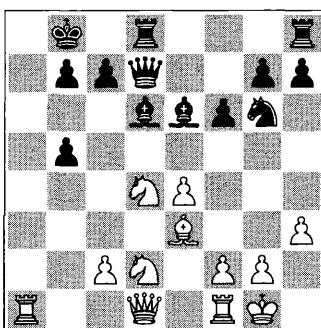


**1.♖h8+! ♕xh8 2.gxf7 bxa2+ 3.♕xa2 1-0.**

After 3...♗b2+, 4.♔a1, White makes a new queen due to the threatened corridor mate on h1.



In this stock thriller, White uses more violent means to corral the king on the a-corridor: a stunning stock queen sac, setting up a DECISIVE DOUBLE CHECK:



FCM 2.50

**Wahls-Bjarnason**

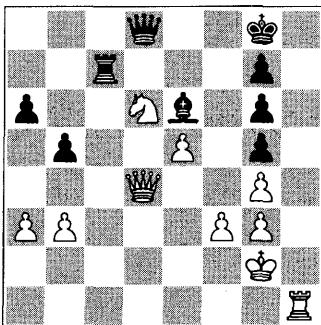
Malmö 1985



**1.♖a8+!! ♕xa8 2.♖a1+ ♔b8 3.♖a7+! ♕xa7** (3...♔c8 4.♖a8#) **4.♘c6+!** and mate by 5.♖a1+, 1-0.

In other cases, the object of the rook sacrifice is the more pedestrian WIN OF MATERIAL:

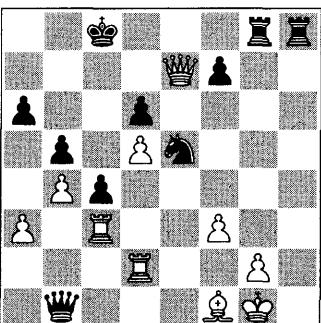
FCM 2.51  
**Meijers-Golubovic**  
 Bern 1995



1.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd8+$  1-0.

◆ ◆

FCM 2.52  
**Malakhatko-Volokitin**  
 Kharkov 2004

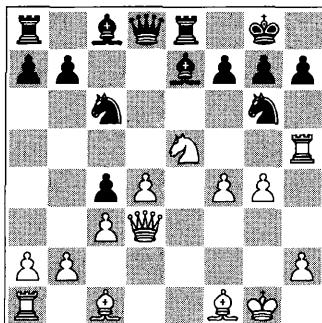


Black exploits the soft spot on h1 to unglue White's forces before counterplay develops:

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ ! 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh1$   $\mathbb{W}xf1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}h8+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}e1+$  5.  $\mathbb{H}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}g8+$  Regaining the rook with interest. 0-1.

## Forcing Chess Moves

In our final two examples, stock sacrifices on other squares are used to pry open the h-file, leading to mate on h8:



FCM 2.53  
**Fox-Bauer**  
Washington 1901



**1.  $\mathbb{W}xg6!! hxg6$**

Or 1...fxg6 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$  hxg6 4.  $\mathbb{E}h8\#$ .

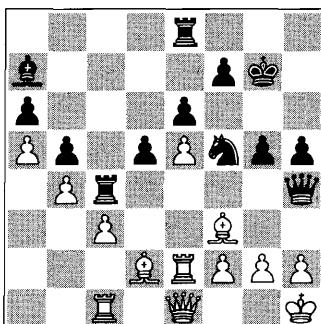
**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6! fxg6$**

Otherwise 3.  $\mathbb{E}h8\#$ .

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{E}h8\#$ .**



In this common version, mate on h1 is enforced by means of a PIN on the a7-g1 diagonal:



FCM 2.54  
**Reshevsky-Ivanovic**  
Skopje 1976

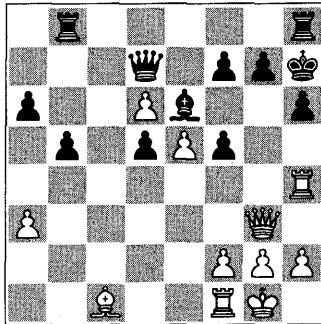


**1...  $\mathbb{W}xh2+!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{E}h4+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$  and 4...  $\mathbb{E}h1\#$ .**

## E) Stock Attacks Against the h6 Square

Sacrifices on h6 are most often directed toward WEAKENING VARIOUS SQUARES around the enemy king, including g6, g7 and f6, as well as the h- and g-files. However, in some cases h6 itself is the final target:

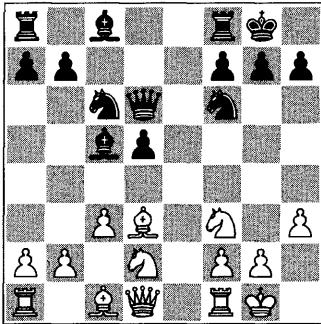
FCM 2.55  
Hirn-Stuhl  
Schwäbisch Gmünd 2003



**1. ♜xh6! gxh6 2. ♜g5 1-0.**



FCM 2.56  
Gilea-Atalik  
Sovata 2003



When the opponent controls the a7-g1 diagonal, the move h2-h3 may represent a foolish weakening of g3:

**1... ♜xh3!**

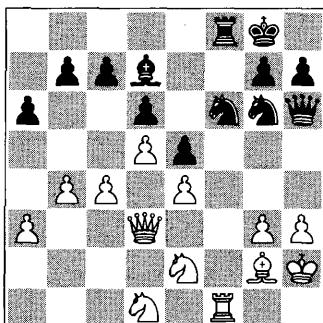
1... ♜g3!, as played in Tatai-Kortchnoi, Beer-Sheva 1978, would also win a pawn.

**2. gxh3 ♜g3+ 3. ♜h1 ♜xh3+ 4. ♜g1**

4. ♜h2 unfortunately hangs the ♜d3. But now White becomes hopelessly tied to defending h2, and can't reorganize to shield the shaky king.

**4... ♜g4! 5. ♜f5 ♜ce5! 6. ♜xg4 ♜xg4 7. ♜b3 ♜g3+ 8. ♜h1 ♜xf2** The stock queen + bishop mate threat with 9... ♜h3+ ends it. **0-1.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 2.57

**Kalantarian-Hagesaether**

Linares 2000



Sometimes the objective of the h3 sac is just to land a winning check on g4:

**1... ♖xh3! 2. ♖xh3 ♗g4+ 3. ♕g2 ♖xf1 4. ♖xf1**

Worse is 4. ♖xg4 ♖h1#.

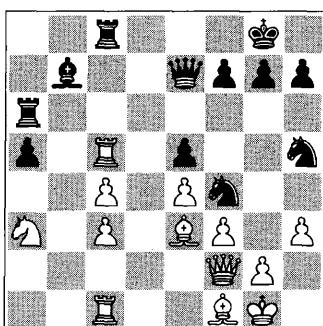
**4... ♖xh3+**

Black has not only won a pawn, but destroyed the king's cover, which he now exploits with elan and fresh COMPUTER EYES:

**5. ♔e1 ♖f4! 6. ♖f3 ♖h2! 7. ♖h1**

The knights are dancing on 7. ♖f2 ♖d3+, while 7. ♖e3 ♖f1+ 8. ♖d2 ♖f3+ corrals a horse.

**7... ♖d3+ 8. ♖d2 ♖f1+ 0-1.**



FCM 2.58

**Wang Yue-Yuldashev**

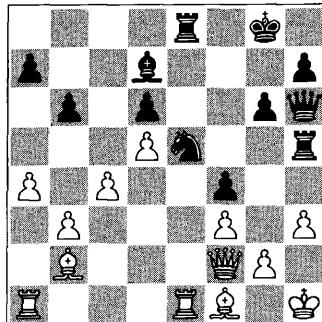
Calcutta 2001



The versatile h3 sac can also lead to a winning tactic on the opened g-file:

**1... ♖xh3+! 2. gxh3 ♖xc5! 3. ♖xc5 ♖g5+ picking up the ♖c1. 0-1.**

FCM 2.59  
**Mattick-Lorscheid**  
Lübeck 2001



Here the thematic sac leads to a winning assault on f3:

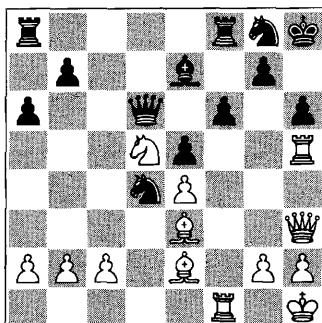
1... $\mathbb{Q}xh3!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{W}xh3+$  4. $\mathbb{W}h2$

If 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  5. $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe1+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$  is a pretty stock mate.

4... $\mathbb{W}xh2+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  The fork trick regains decisive material. **0-1.**



FCM 2.60  
**Komliakov-Gadjily**  
Nikolaev 1993



COMPUTER EYES take a keen interest when the stock  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  sac strips both h- and g-pawns from the defense of the enemy king:

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  (1... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h8+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $g6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  6. $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  7. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  leads to mate, as does 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ ) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  3. $\mathbb{W}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

This quiet forcing move renders Black helpless.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e6$

A pretty mate greets 4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ , while on 4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$  the pinned f7 rook is doomed in light of 6... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ .

5. $\mathbb{W}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$

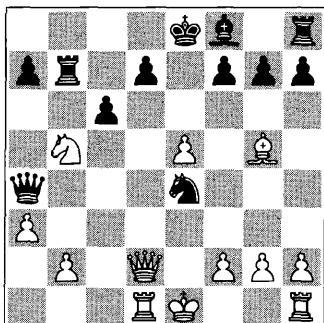
A typical rook lift exploits the empty h-file corridor.

6... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  8. $\mathbb{W}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$ . Great BRUTE FORCE calculation.

### F) Stock Attacks against d8 and the Uncastled King

These mating positions are often associated with the swashbuckling 19th century style of play; yet in our modern era of complex openings, there are still many instances where one side delays castling, in order to maintain flexibility or pursue other goals. During such encounters, COMPUTER EYES must be extra vigilant for opportunities to bust open the center with sacrifices and catch the enemy king in the crossfire.

Square d8 is the focal point for many surprises against the uncastled king, often justifying heavy sacrifices:



FCM 2.61

**Ostropolsky-Ivanovsky**

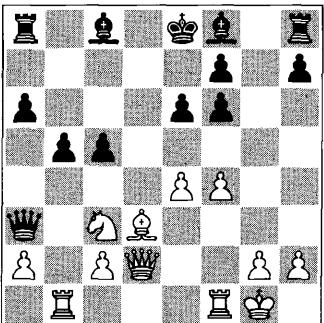
Soviet Union 1949



**1.  $\mathbb{W}xd7+!$   $\mathbb{B}xd7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c7+$   $\mathbb{B}xc7$  3.  $\mathbb{R}d8\#$ .** An old standard pedigree to Morphy-Consultants, Paris 1858.



Underdevelopment can result in a fatal central assault when the enemy pieces are 'barely out of the box':



FCM 2.62

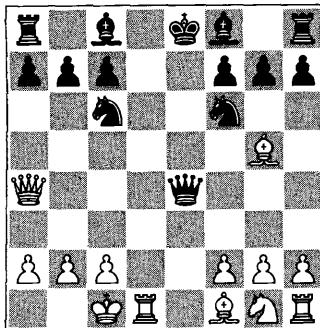
**Beliavsky-Stean**

Lucerne 1982



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$   $axb5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{R}fd1$  1-0.** Once again, twin mating threats (on d6 and d8) are too much.

FCM 2.63  
**Bronstein-NN**  
 Sochi simul 1950



In many opening positions,  $\blacksquare d8+$  is the most forcing move on the board, yet until we develop unbiased COMPUTER EYES it is easy to miss, since it looks so absurd!

**1.  $\blacksquare d8+!!$**

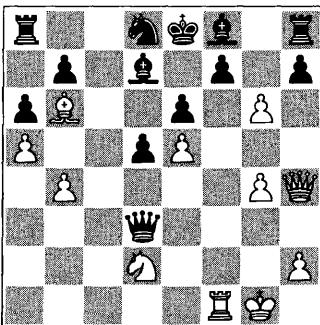
The king is drawn into a deadly pin.

**1...  $\blacksquare x d8$  2.  $\blacksquare x e4$  (better than 2.  $\blacksquare x f6$  +  $\blacksquare e7!$ ) 1-0.**



The f7 square is especially vulnerable when the f-file opens before Black can castle:

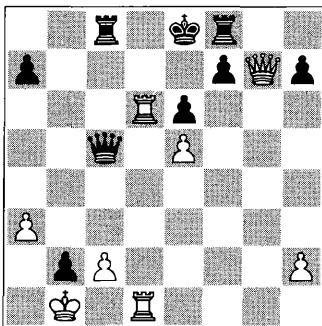
FCM 2.64  
**MacKenzie-NN**



**1.  $\blacksquare x d8+!!$   $\blacksquare x d8$  2.  $\blacksquare gxf7+$   $\blacksquare e7$  3.  $\blacksquare c5#$**  An alert FORCING RETREAT.

## Forcing Chess Moves

The d7 and e7 squares in front of the king may also become targets. COMPUTER EYES should take note of the better coordination of White's forces, as the uncastled king disconnects Black's rooks.



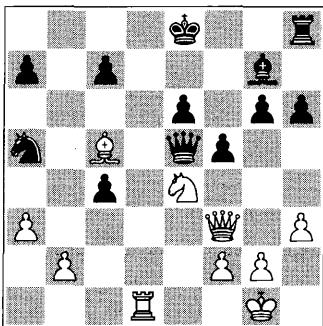
FCM 2.65

**Vigorito-Maldonado**

Woburn 1995



1.  $\mathbb{E}xe6+!$   $\mathfrak{f}xe6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#$ .



FCM 2.66

**Shabalov-Fridman**

Stratton Mountain 2004



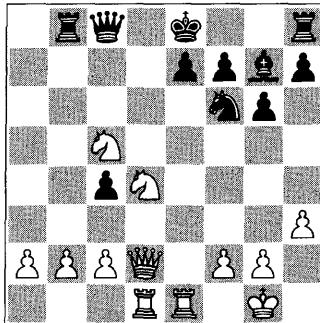
The slicing  $\mathfrak{Q}c5$  prevents castling and cuts Black's position in half. Start the fireworks:

1.  $\mathfrak{Q}f6+!$   $\mathfrak{Q}f7$

1...  $\mathfrak{Q}xf6$  (or 1...  $\mathbb{W}xf6$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{W}a8+$   $\mathfrak{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{B}d7+$ .

2.  $\mathbb{B}d7+!$   $\mathfrak{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}e7+$   $\mathfrak{Q}f7$  4.  $\mathbb{B}d6+$   $\mathfrak{Q}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{B}e7+$  'For good measure', White plays for mate (6.  $\mathbb{W}a8$ ) **1-0**.

FCM 2.67  
**Goloschapov-Tosic**  
 Moscow 1999

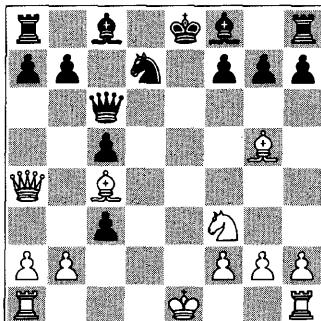


Once Black castles, White's central preponderance will come to naught, so COMPUTER EYES gravitate toward sacrificial solutions: **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ !** and the game ended elegantly with **1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}ce6+$**  etc. After **1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$**  Black is also doomed: **2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ ; 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$ , or 2...  $gxf5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e1+$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xb8+ 1-0$ .**



In this final stock theme, White is willing to part with his queen, just to land a winning check on the e-file:

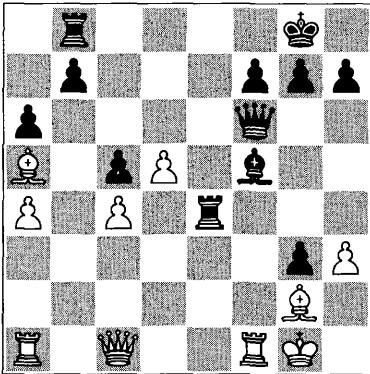
FCM 2.68  
**Taimanov-Polugaevsky**  
 Leningrad 1960



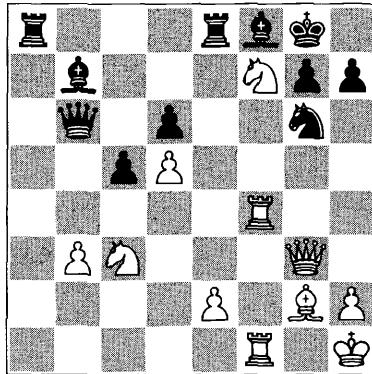
**1.0-0-0!!  $\mathbb{Q}xa4$**  Declining doesn't save Black: **1... cxb2+ 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6!$  bxc6 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}he1+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  (or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  and  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  winning material. In the game it was curtains after **1... cxb2+ 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}he1$  f6 4.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  (4...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{Q}c1!$  fxg5 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e4+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  (8...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5+$ ) 9.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}e5+$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ . **2.  $\mathbb{Q}he1+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$**  If 4...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e1+$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  cxb2+ 8.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$   $\mathbb{Q}b4+$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$ . **5.  $\mathbb{Q}fxd7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e5+$**  winning the queen, **1-0**. The initial idea was backed up by incredible BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION, which we will see more of in the next chapter.****



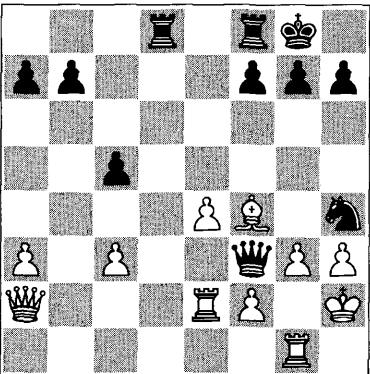
## Chapter 2 - Exercises



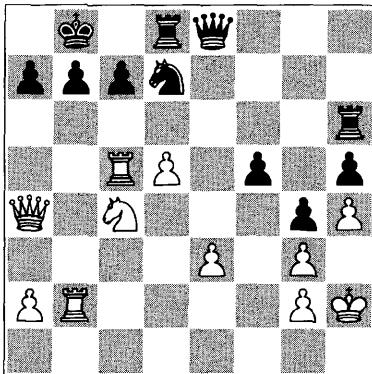
Ex 2.1 ■ Find  
the mate attack



Ex 2.2 □ Find the killer blow

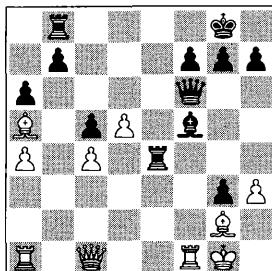


Ex 2.3 ■ Has White  
defended  
everything?



Ex 2.4 □ Find  
the breakthrough

## Forcing Chess Moves

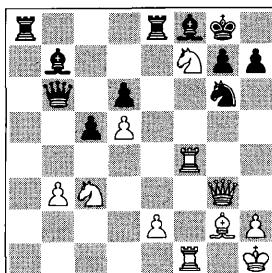


### Ex 2.1 Grigorov-Bratanov Sofia 2004

The 'craw pawn' on g3 becomes the springboard to a deadly 7th rank attack: **1... ♕d4+ 2. ♔h1 ♖xh3!**

**3. ♖xh3** On 3. ♖a2 ♖h4 4. ♖xh3 ♖xh3+ 5. ♔g2 ♖h2+ decides, and after 3. ♖d2 ♖xd2 4. ♖xd2 ♖xg2+ 5. ♔xg2 ♖e2+ Black regains his piece with interest.

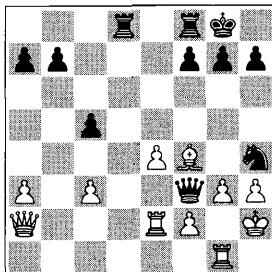
**3.... ♖e2 0-1** Mate on h2 follows, since on 4. ♖g2 ♖h4+.



### Ex 2.2 Karpov-Salov Linares 1993

**1. ♖xg6! hxg6 2. ♖h4 1-0.**

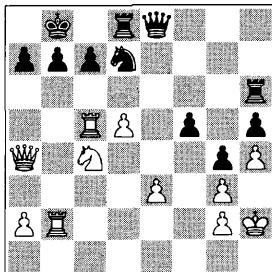
A flash h8 breakthrough from a normal-looking position.



### Ex 2.3 Rodriguez Vargas-Fridrik Olafsson

Las Palmas 1978

Alert COMPUTER EYES found a beautiful version of the stock rook + knight mating pattern **1... ♕g2+!! 2. ♖xg2 ♖f3+ 3. ♔h1 ♖d1+ 4. ♖g1 ♖xg1#.**



### Ex 2.4 Khalifman-Serper St Petersburg 1994

An incisive b7 'bunker buster' broke down all the barricades, leading to mate: **1. ♖xb7+! ♔xb7 2. ♖xc7+! ♔xc7 3. ♖xa7+ ♔c8 4. d6! 1-0.** Mate follows on c7 or d6. A tour-de-force!

# Chapter 3 - Brute Force Combinations

## Study Material

In the introduction, we defined the two core aspects of developing powerful COMPUTER EYES. The first task was accurate BRUTE FORCE ANALYSIS of variations, and the second was OVERCOMING HUMAN BIAS in order to become more objective, and creative, in our ability to find unusual winning FORCING MOVES.

The term 'BRUTE FORCE' refers to the way machines 'think'. While computers analyze scores of variations and then try to draw conclusions, humans have a tendency to conceptualize positions first, with concepts like 'weak pawn', 'open file', 'better development', etc. This is natural and okay, but the problem comes when we make decisions based on such generalizations, without first testing their validity with concrete analysis. Developing COMPUTER EYES means learning to analyze essential forcing moves first, and always basing our final decisions on well-considered analysis.

When the supercomputer Hydra crushed the incredibly strong English GM Michael Adams in a 2005 match, an age-old debate was put to rest. Many had believed that positional judgment or 'grandmaster intuition' could overcome 'brute force' calculation of scads of variations, but we now know that **accurate brute force analysis is the single most important chess skill**.

In Chapters 1 and 2 we began by training your COMPUTER EYES to become aware of RECURRING STOCK SACRIFICES, helping you recognize critical attacking positions and get in the habit of examining the MOST FORCING MOVES FIRST. At the same time, we began to examine the crucial role of brute force analysis and creativity in unearthing these powerful combinations. Having gained a basic knowledge of stock themes, your COMPUTER EYES are now ready to learn how to better calculate the original, uncharted 'bread and butter' situations which occur most often in tournament play.

Even 'straightforward' brute force variations can be very difficult to calculate accurately, because this analysis requires three essential skills:

1. Accurate 'BOARD SIGHT' – the ability to correctly envision where the pieces are, and what they can do, even deep in the midst of a long calculation.
2. Accurate 'SELECTION' – the ability to hone in on the key options, and avoid two key pitfalls at the opposite ends of the spectrum: failure to consider unexpected, but crucial ideas; or wasting huge amounts of time analyzing 'DEAD ENDS'.
3. The RAW ABILITY AND EFFORT needed to calculate variations.

Fortunately, these skills can be developed through practice, problem-solving, the study of master games, and by gaining a deeper understanding of FORCING MOVES.

## Forcing Chess Moves

In this chapter we examine three types of BRUTE FORCE COMBINATIONS:

### A) 'Bread and Butter' Brute Force Combinations

Most tactics books concentrate only on mating positions like the stock forcing moves found in Chapter 2. But these positions are relatively unusual in club play, compared with 'BREAD AND BUTTER' tactics: 2-4 move deep combinations winning material. Some of these combinations may utilize stock ideas in one or two side variations; but the primary focus is on accurate brute force calculation, leading to material gain.

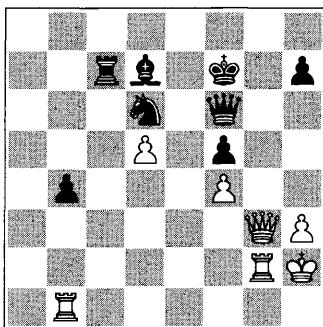
### B) Mating and 'Hybrid' Brute Force Combinations

This section is devoted to MATING COMBINATIONS which are too unique, or require too much original brute force analysis, to be considered 'stock' ideas; and 'HYBRID' sequences in which both mate and/or win of material figure in the calculation of different variations.

### C) Promotion-Based Brute Force Combinations

Combinations involving actual pawn promotion, or the achievement of mate or material gain via the threat of promotion, could constitute a worthwhile book in themselves. A strong awareness of these motifs is certainly a key aspect of developing your COMPUTER EYES, and we will revisit them many times, as they relate to different chapters of the book.

#### A) 'Bread and Butter' Brute Force Combinations



FCM 3.1  
**Short-Zagrebelyn**  
Dhaka 1999



The old coffee-house saying 'Always check, it might be mate!' could be usefully amended as follows: 'When many checks are available, COMPUTER EYES carefully calculate each one, mining every line for potentially winning brute force sequences!' Four succinct and accurate checks bring home the point here.

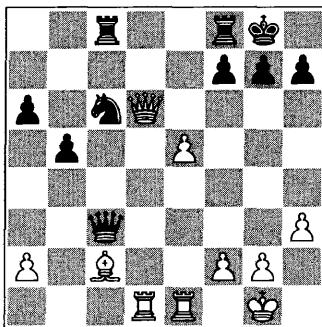
**1.♕g8+ ♕e7 2.♘g7+**

The quickest and most efficient, although here or on the next move, 2/3.♖e1+ would also have won.

**2...♞f7 3.♖xf7+! ♖xf7 4.d6+ prying king from queen after 4...♚e6 5.♖e1+. 1-0.**

Even in relatively 'simple' positions, calculating one move deeper or more precisely often makes the difference:

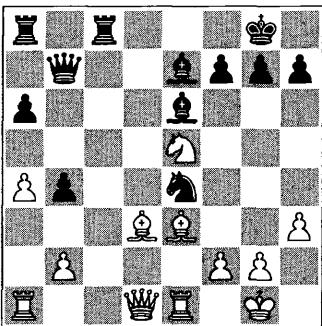
FCM 3.2  
**Ehlvest-Golod**  
 Chicago 2004



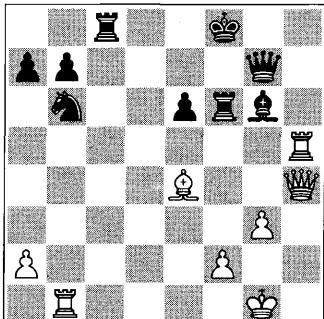
**1.  $\mathbb{H}c1!$   $\mathbb{W}a5$**  Everything loses, e.g. 1...  $\mathbb{W}d4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$  3.  $exd6$  winning the exchange, or 1...  $\mathbb{W}b2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{H}fd8$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xc6!$  or also 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8!$   $\mathbb{H}xc6$  4.  $exd6$ , always exploiting the weak back rank. **2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{H}c7$**  On 2...  $\mathbb{H}fd8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  the two rooks and passer dominate the queen. Accurate brute force analysis has now forced Black to allow a winning stock blow: **3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$**  Picking off the  $\mathbb{H}f8$ . Slightly simpler was 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ . **1-0**.

◆ ◆

FCM 3.3  
**Nunn-Xie Jun**  
 San Francisco 1995



White plays two 100% FORCING MOVES and calculates them through to material gain. **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$   $\mathbb{W}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{W}b7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$**  Other captures (3...  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ ; 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ ) lose a pawn and the initiative. **4.  $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{H}xe6$   $\mathbb{H}c5$  6.  $\mathbb{h}4$   $\mathbb{h}6$**  Black strives for play rather than accepting a technically lost position. But, as so often, her activity hastens the end. Bad were 6....  $\mathbb{Q}xg5?$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e8+$  and 6...  $g6$  7.  $\mathbb{H}xg6+!$ . **7.  $\mathbb{H}xh6!$   $gxh6$  8.  $\mathbb{W}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  9.  $\mathbb{W}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  10.  $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$**  Else 11.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$  wins. **11.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  12.  $\mathbb{H}d1!$  1-0.** Capping a great performance with a crushing quiet move, preparing 13.  $\mathbb{W}g8+$ . In such complex positions, BRUTE FORCE VISION RULES.

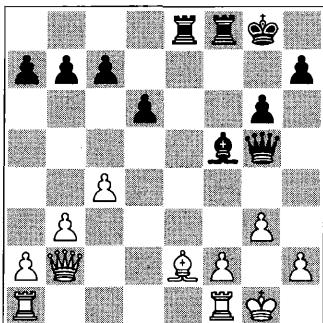


FCM 3.4  
Kasparov-Short  
Sarajevo 1999



Like with his 'Great Predecessor' Bobby Fischer, Kasparov's deadly and penetrating BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION elevated him a notch above his peers:

**1.♖h8+ ♕f7 2.♗xc8 ♗xc8 3.♗xb7+ ♔e7 4.♗xg6+ ♔xg6 4...♔xg6 loses to 5.♗g4+ ♔h7 6.♗xg7+.** **5.♗b4 1-0.** 'Selection' of the right options was straightforward, as each move was extremely forcing; but the calculative skill and board sight required to assess White's piece-down position, are the very essence of COMPUTER EYES.

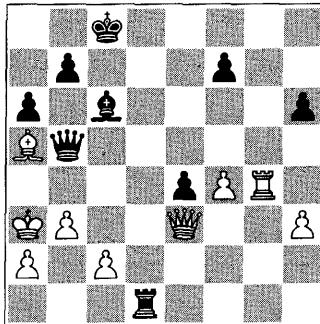


FCM 3.5  
Alatortsev-Boleslavsky  
Moscow 1950



Black is able to parlay a fleeting advantage in activity into a stunning brute force win: **1...♗h3! 2.f4!** The natural 2.♗fe1 fails to 2...♗xf2! 3.♗xf2 ♖e3. **2...♗xf1!!** Since on 2...♖c5 3.♗f2 holds, Black must seek a creative solution, retaining the initiative. **3.fxg5 ♗xe2 4.♗c3 ♗g2! 5.♗d3** There is no time for 5.♗e1 ♗h3! and, at the right moment, ...♗xe1+ and ...♗f1+! with a winning ending. **5...♗f3!** Not 5...♗ff2 6.♗e1! **6.♗f1** White has no good answer to 6...♗g2+, e.g. 6.♗f1 ♗xh2; or 6.♗d4 ♗g2+ 7.♗f1 c5 8.♗xd6 ♗c6+ 9.♗e1 ♗g1+ 10.♗e2 ♗xa1 11.♗e6+ ♗f7. **6...♗g2+** **7.♗h1 ♗c6!** A beautiful QUIET FORCING MOVE; not 7...♗d2? 8.♗xf3 with drawing chances. **8.♗xf8+ ♗xf8 9.♗f1+ ♗f2+ 0-1.**

FCM 3.6  
**Charbonneau-Tyomkin**  
 Montreal 2004



Again, a well calculated checking sequence brings home the bacon:

**1.  $\mathbb{E}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$**

1... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2.  $\mathbb{H}d8+$  skewers the rook.

**2.  $\mathbb{W}c3+! \mathbb{Q}d7$**

Black probably intended 2... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ , but then comes the surprising brute force line 3.  $\mathbb{W}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  4. c4!  $\mathbb{W}c6$  5. c5! followed by 6.  $\mathbb{W}b6+!$  winning a piece.

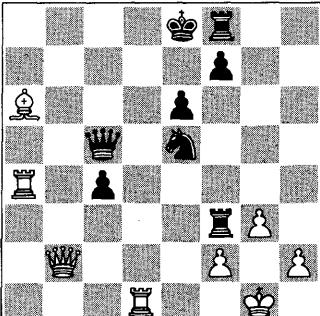
**3.  $\mathbb{W}c7+ \mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}e5+!$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  5.  $\mathbb{H}xe8+$**

A decisive zwischenzug

5... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  6.  $\mathbb{H}xe5!$   $e3$  7.  $\mathbb{H}e7$  **1-0**. White wins easily after 7... $e2$  8.  $\mathbb{H}xf7+$ .



FCM 3.7  
**Svidler-Rublevsky**  
 Smolensk 2000

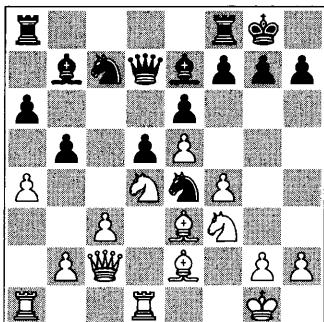


With major pieces roaming the board and the enemy king exposed, a series of queen checks is often (though not always!) decisive:

**1.  $\mathbb{H}xc4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}b8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}d7$ .** **4.  $\mathbb{W}xf3+ \mathbb{Q}e7$  4... $\mathbb{Q}g7$**  is met by 5.  $\mathbb{W}g4+$  (but not 5.  $\mathbb{H}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ ). **5.  $\mathbb{H}c1$  **1-0****. Now 5... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  fails to 6.  $\mathbb{W}b7+$  and after 5... $\mathbb{W}d5$  the endgame will be a dead loss. A quicker win, by the way, could have been achieved by 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4!$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$  6.  $\mathbb{W}a3+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  7.  $\mathbb{H}c1$ .

## Forcing Chess Moves

A crucial function of COMPUTER EYES is knowing when to switch from a positional struggle to the complications of a tactical fray. Lesser players often back off in critical positions, rather than developing the confidence and work ethic to accurately assess MESSY TACTICS which may lead to victory:



FCM 3.8

**Mokry-Stocek**

Czechia 1994



White sees through the illusion of the 'rock solid'  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  and accurately navigates Black's scary desperation tries. COMPUTER EYES DON'T FEAR GHOSTS, but insist on exposing them to the light of analysis!

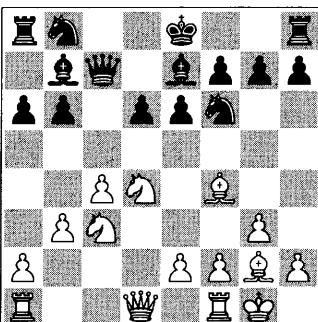
**1. axb5 axb5 2.  $\mathbb{B}xa8$   $\mathbb{B}xa8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe4!$   $\mathbb{B}a2$**

Very scary, but winning for White was 4...dxe4 5.  $\mathbb{B}xd7$  exf3 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  6...  $\mathbb{B}a1+$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$  fxe2 8.  $\mathbb{Q}e2!$

**5.  $\mathbb{W}c2$  (not 5.  $\mathbb{W}b1?$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ ) with a good extra pawn 1-0.**



Always examine the FORCING OPTION first, even in the opening!



FCM 3.9

**Mohr-Atlas**

Ptuj 1995



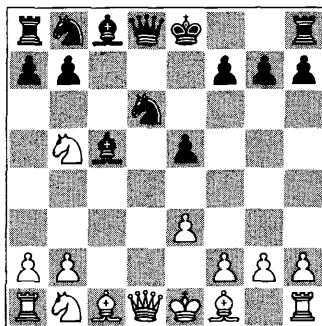
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}db5$  axb5 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  1-0.**

I am reminded of a miniature from earlier in my career.

1.c4 c5 2.Qf3 Qf6 3.d4 cxd4 4.Qxd4 e5 5.Qb5 d5 6.cxd5 Qc5 7.d6!?

**Qxd6??**

FCM 3.10  
Hertan-Rohde  
New York 1984

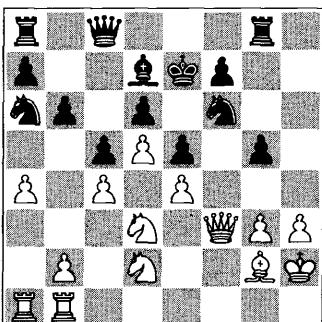


Black could have tried the interesting sac 8...0-0-0!? 9.Qc7 Qxd6 10.Qxa8 Qb4+ 11.Qd2 (11.Qd2 Qf5 or even 11...Qc6!?) 11...Qh4. But what could be wrong with this normal move, regaining the pawn? I didn't know the answer, but instead of playing routinely, I took one more look around for FORCING MOVES and discovered a screamer: 9.Qd5! Wriggle and squirm as he may, Black will lose the e-pawn with check, with an awful position. One problem is that White recaptures with check after 9...Qxb5; another is that the Qd6 is loose after 9...Qb4+ 10.Qd2 Qxd2+ 11.Qxd2. **1-0**, shortly.



The evaluation of 'positions' often turns on a brute force shot. If Black had one more move, he could establish a fortress with ...Qg6 or even take the initiative with ...g4. But White shows who's in charge by striking first, destroying the integrity of Black's set-up:

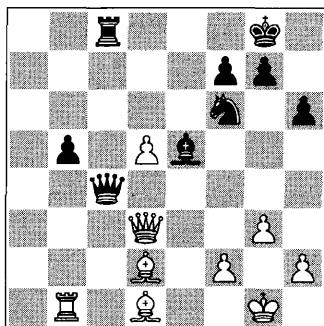
FCM 3.11  
Gostisa-Robatsch  
Ptuj 1995



**1.Qxe5! dxе5** White has a solid extra pawn and more on 1...Qh8 2.Qf1, while on 1...g4, 2.Qf4! gxh3 3.Qf1 is very strong. **2.d6+! Qxd6** (2...Qe6 3.Qf5+) **3.Qxf6+ Qe6 4.Qf3** Black is in tatters **1-0**.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Black had counted on ... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ , but COMPUTER EYES found a BRUTE FORCE REFUTATION:



FCM 3.12

Judit Polgar-Aronian

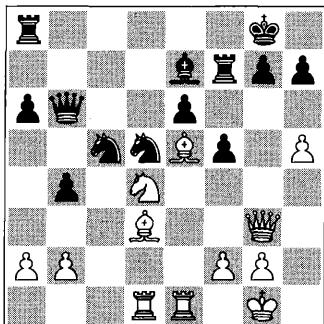
Hoogeveen 2003



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}c1!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc1$**  The cute point is 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$ , regaining the queen with interest. **2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  3.  $d6$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $g6$**  Black is down material, but will also get reamed on the light squares near the king. **6.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  1-0.**



White obviously has a lot of pressure for the pawn, but can he overwhelm Black's fortress in this CRITICAL POSITION? Again, the BRUTE FORCE answer is 'yes'.



FCM 3.13

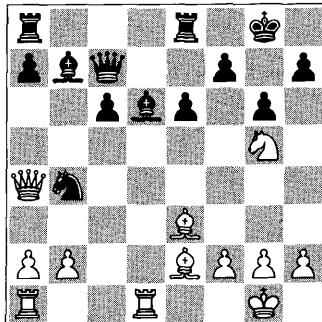
Kramnik-Hübner

Dortmund 2000



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$**  1.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$  was also very strong, but White has correctly calculated that he can already initiate winning tactics: **1...exf5** The opening of the a2-g8 diagonal now becomes decisive. But Black had no answer to the brutal threats on h6 or g7, e.g. 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  (3... $\mathbb{Q}xe1$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  winning. Accurately envisioning such tangled lines is much easier said than done, and is really the key to becoming a feared tactician. For most of us, it requires hard work and determination! **2.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$**  Or 2... $f4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$ . **3.  $\mathbb{Q}c7!$  1-0** The devastating point is revealed – the  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  falls. After 3... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7!$  the walls cave in.

FCM 3.14  
**Dreev-Cifuentes Parada**  
 Wijk aan Zee 1995



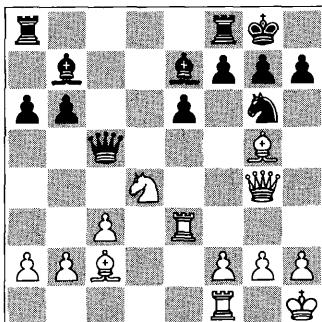
A BREAD AND BUTTER tactic tips the scales, before Black can plug holes with ... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ .

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6!$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{W}e5$**  (or 2... $\mathbb{W}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$ ) **3.  $\mathbb{W}xb4$**  With two strong minor pieces for the rook, the position is resignable amongst strong players. **1-0.**



A great many attacks are based on fleeting advantages, such as a preponderance of force in the attacking zone (a 'TIME' advantage or initiative), as opposed to structural edges. These positions demand energetic FORCING MOVES before the opponent can consolidate.

FCM 3.15  
**Rublevsky-Morovic Fernandez**  
 Poikovsky 2001



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6!$   $\mathbb{fxe6}$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$**

More resilient was 2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2+!?$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}f4+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ , though White will be a healthy pawn up in the endgame.

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $\mathbb{hxg6}$  (3... $\mathbb{W}xg5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $f3$ ) **4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{W}b5!$****

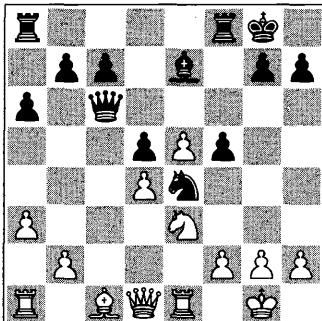
In desperate times, strong opponents are very dangerous. COMPUTER EYES must anticipate their last-ditch attempts to complicate!

**5.  $c4!$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$  6.  $\mathbb{W}d7!$**

A surprising twist; the bishop is tracked down in the open, while the attack 6... $\mathbb{W}xf2$  is bashed by 7.  $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}h3$ . Quite hard to foresee!

**6...  $\mathbb{W}b8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}c7$  1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 3.16  
Keres-Sliwa  
Gothenburg 1955

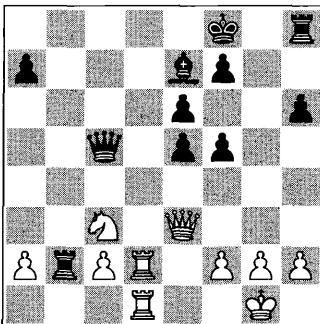


With the sharp advance ...f5?, Black hopes to attack with ...f4-f3, or blockade the e-pawn on 1.f3 ♜g5 and ...♜e6. But a simple BREAD AND BUTTER brute force sequence shows that the idea isn't viable:

**1.♝b3! ♜ad8 2.♜xf5! ♜xf5 3.♜xe4** Winning a vital pawn via the pin. **1-0.**



White has every reason to seek a BRUTE FORCE SOLUTION in this odd position; if the initiative fizzles, Black will relish an imposing center, nice bishop, and White's queenside weaknesses:



FCM 3.17  
Mohr-Wach  
Ptuj 1995

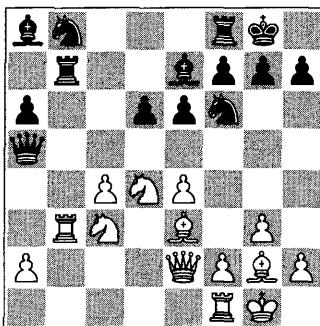


**1.♞d8+! ♜g7 2.♝g3+ ♜h7 3.♜xh8+ ♜xh8 4.♞a4! ♜xc2 5.♞xb2 ♜xb2 6.♝e3!**

Only now does White's superiority crystallize, as two tremendously important pawns are under fire. In the game Black lost after 6...a5 7.♜xh6+ ♜g8 8.h3 ♜xa2? 9.♞c1! and similarly, if Black were to play 6...♜xa2 White's advantage in king safety would decide: 7.♜xh6+ ♜g8 8.h3 e4 9.g3! followed by penetration with the rook **1-0.**

Among the most bedeviling brute force lines are those that unleash an orgy of captures. The game hangs in the balance with each decision. Only good SELECTION, BOARD SIGHT, and RAW CALCULATION will decide the outcome.

FCM 3.18  
Akopian-Svidler  
Yerevan 2001

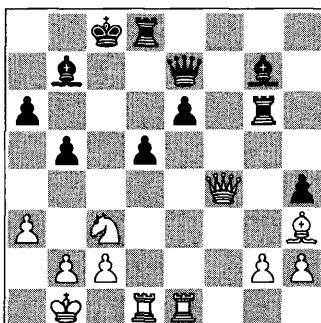


**1.e5! ♜xb3** (1...dxe5 2.♗xb7 exd4 3.♗xd4) **2.exf6!** (not 2.♗xb3 ♛xe5! 3.♗xa8 ♛xc3) **2...♝xg2** The bishops are golden on 2...♜xc3 3.fxe7 ♜e8 4.♗xa8. **3.♗xb3!** Every capture has fresh ramifications. On 3...♛xc3 4.fxe7 wins. **3...♝xf1! 4.♛g4!** Bagging the point. **4...♝xf6 5.♗xa5 ♜xc3 6.♗xf1 ♜xa5 7.♗d4 ♜d8 8.♗a7 h6 9.♗b6 1-0.**



Well-timed BREAD AND BUTTER COMBINATIONS play as strong a role in converting positional pluses into material gain, as they do in tipping the balance in 'critical positions'. Knowing when and how to cash in on such advantages is an art in itself, but COMPUTER EYES are in the forefront, as usual. White has pressure against the weaknesses e6 and h4, but is it enough? Brute force calculation shows that White can already ignore the threat of ...♝xc3 and convert his advantage:

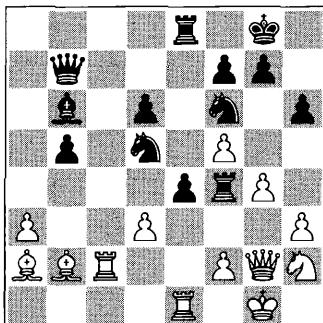
FCM 3.19  
Kasparov-Ivanchuk  
Frankfurt 1998



**1.♝xe6+! ♜xe6 2.♛g4 ♜d6 3.♝xe6 ♛xe6 Or 3...♜xe6 4.♝e1 ♔d7 5.♝xe6 ♛xe6 6.♛xg7+.** **4.♛xg7 1-0.** White has won a pawn while maintaining a strong position.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Amateur players often fail to perceive the positional benefits that can accrue along with material gain; did the lost pawn secure crucial squares, or anchor a chain?



FCM 3.20  
**Gelfand-Adams**

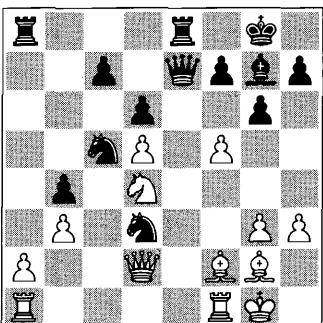
Wijk aan Zee 2002



Mickey Adams makes it look easy, in grandmasterly fashion; five BREAD AND BUTTER forcing moves with a lone subvariation, and Black's initiative blooms into a pawn plus and a crushing edge: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ ! This tremendous zwischenzug is the key. 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+!$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  (4. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3+)$  4... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  0-1.



White is pretty clearly on the ropes, given the looseness of her position and Black's menacing minor (and major!) pieces. The master's imperative is to transform these factors into material gain or mate via the CORRECT APPLICATION OF BRUTE FORCE.



FCM 3.21  
**Chiburdanidze-Zsuzsa Polgar**

St Petersburg 1995



1... $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$

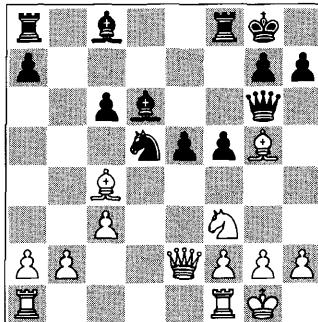
Forced, as both 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  and 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}e4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  lose material.

2... $\mathbb{Q}xb3!$

Forcing a massive simplification, correctly foreseeing the inability of White's minors to cope with the rook and passed b-pawn. Also very strong was the 'quiet' 2... $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ .

3. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$   $\mathbb{Q}xa1$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$   $\mathbb{Q}e1+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe1+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2$  8. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}c2!$  0-1.

FCM 3.22  
**Handoko-Martin Gonzalez**  
 Lucerne 1982

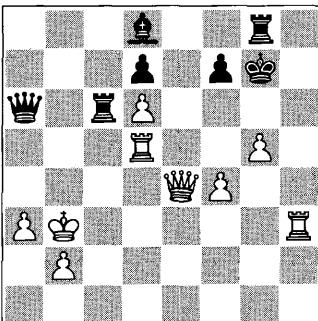


White converts his edge by refusing to back down in the face of counterplay: **1.♕xe5!** **♛xg5** Not 1...♝xe5 2.♛xe5 ♛xg5 3.♝xd5+. **2.♝xc6 ♜xh2+!** A nice idea! Many years ago, the American hippie-master Brian Hulse gave me a valuable lecture about the NEED TO PLAY FOR SOME IMBALANCE IN BAD POSITIONS! **3.♝h1** ♛h6! with too much play. That the direct method ends all resistance. **3...♛h6+** **4.♝g1 ♛xc6 5.♝fd1 ♜e6** Or 5...♝d8 6.♝xd5 ♛xd5 7.♝xd5+ ♛xd5 8.♝e8. **6.♝xe6+!** Regaining the piece with a winning ending after 6...♝xe6 7.♝xd5. **1-0.**

### B) Mating and 'Hybrid' Brute Force Combinations

These are ‘non-stock’ brute force sequences, combining mating ideas and the win of material.

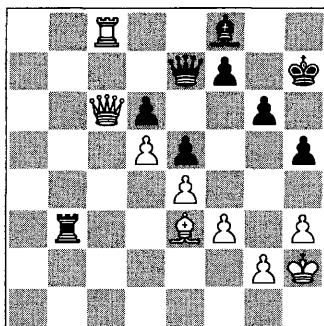
FCM 3.23  
**Short-Lutz**  
 Budapest 2003



**1.♚h7+ ♜f8 2.♜xf7+!! ♜xf7 3.♛f5+ ♜g7** Or 3...♝e8 4.♜e5+ and mate on d7!  
**4.♛xd7+ ♜g6 5.♛e6+ ♜h5** The queen flies solo on 5...♝h7 6.♛h6. **6.♛h3+ ♜g6**  
**7.♛h6+ ♜f7 8.♜f5+** White had to see this checking possibility way beforehand. **8...♝e8**  
**9.♛e6+ 1-0.** This sacrifice was too deep and unusual to be considered a stock f7 blow!

## Forcing Chess Moves

A simple but elegant brute force line forces mate or slow death:



FCM 3.24

Bareev-Van der Wiel

Wijk aan Zee 1995



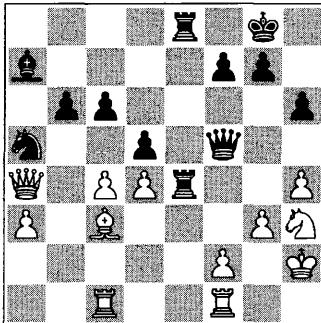
**1... $\mathbb{K}c7 \mathbb{W}f6$**

The only rational defense, but it loses miserably. White would have been able to bring on the end quite elegantly on 1... $\mathbb{W}d8$  2. $\mathbb{K}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  and now 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  4. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  5. $\mathbb{K}f6!$ .

**2. $\mathbb{W}e8 \mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$  1-0.** Even easier this time. White breaks through to mate via f7, or wins the queen.



The brilliant English attacker transforms a large positional plus into a flash mating sequence:



FCM 3.25

Lars Bo Hansen-Adams

Wijk aan Zee 1995

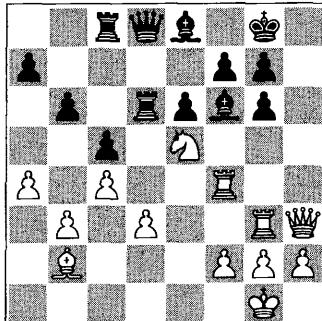


**1... $\mathbb{E}xh4!$  2. $\mathbb{G}xh4 \mathbb{Q}b8+$  3. $\mathbb{F}4$**

Or 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{W}g4+$ .

**3... $\mathbb{E}e3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}xf4+$  0-1.** Mate is at hand after 5. $\mathbb{E}xf4 \mathbb{W}xf4+$  or 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{E}h3+!$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{E}h2+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}d6+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{W}e4$ . White's defenders were too few and far away.

FCM 3.26  
**Zviagintsev-Wojtkiewicz**  
 Tripoli 2004



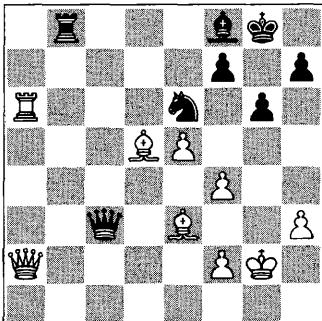
A critical moment has arrived; White's pieces are optimally posted, and if he can't make progress, he may pay for the weakness of his d-pawn. Only a strong BRUTE FORCE COMBINATION can turn the outcome:

**1.♕xg6! fxg6 2.♗xf6 gxf6 3.♖h4 ♕f8** Black falls victim to beautiful mating variations in every line: 3...f5 4.♖h8+ ♔g7 5.♖h7+ ♔f6 6.♗f8+ ♔e5 7.♗g7+; or 3...e5 4.♖h8+ ♔f7 5.♗xg6! ♖c7 (5...♔xg6 6.♗h5+) 6.♗g7+! ♔xg7 7.♗h7. **4.♖h7 ♘f7 5.♗h6+ ♔e8 6.♗xf7 ♘xf7 7.♗xg6+ ♔e7 8.♗h7+ ♔e8 9.♗g8** 1-0.



In this CRITICAL POSITION, White isn't deterred by Black's venomous counterattack, but sees his own play through to mate:

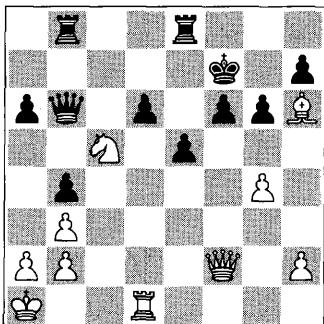
FCM 3.27  
**Kortchnoi-Grosar**  
 Ptuj 1995



**1.♕xe6! ♖b2!** Clearly, all Black's hopes rest on this intermezzo. **2.♗xf7+ ♔g7** Inadequate is 2...♔h8 3.♗e6 ♗xe3 4.♗f6+ ♔g7 5.♖a8+. **3.♗e6 ♗xe3** White can't defend, but he can attack! **4.♗f6+ ♔h6 5.♗g5+ ♔g7 6.♗xg6+! ♗xf7 7.♗f5+ ♔e7 8.♗e6+** The rest is elementary 1-0.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Black seems poised to take the offensive, when COMPUTER EYES uncork White's brute force idea: a rare 'ideal mate' on an open board:



FCM 3.28  
**Platz-Lampe**

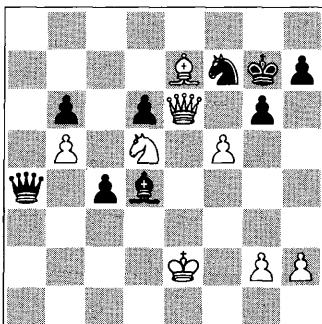
Halle 1967



**1.  $\mathbb{W}xf6+!! \mathbb{Q}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{H}f1+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\#.$**



All strong players must shine in precise BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION of positions like this one; just one false move and the counterplay comes raining down:



FCM 3.29  
**Lalic-Valdes**

Seville 2003



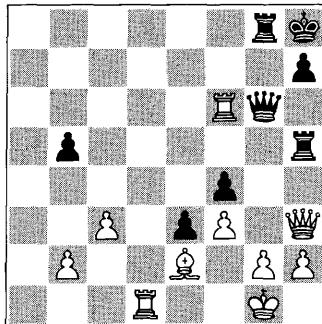
One assumes that Lalic didn't enter this minefield lightly, but carefully mapped the long road to mate:

**1.  $f6+! \mathbb{Q}h6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f4+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}e4+$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$**

The other interpolation ends in mate on the queenside: 5... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f4+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  7.  $\mathbb{W}c6.$

**6.  $\mathbb{Q}f4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  7.  $\mathbb{W}d5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  9.  $\mathbb{W}d8\#.$**

FCM 3.30  
**Leko-Kramnik**  
Linares 2004



Inadequate is 1... $\mathbb{W}g7$  2. $\mathbb{B}d7!$ , but the World Champ was ready with a terrible BRUTE FORCE SOLUTION:

**1... $\mathbb{W}c2!$  2. $\mathbb{W}xh5$   $\mathbb{W}xe2$  3.g4**

The white king perishes after 3.g3  $\mathbb{W}xd1+$  4. $\mathbb{W}g2$   $\mathbb{W}e2+$  5. $\mathbb{W}h3$   $\mathbb{W}f1+$  6. $\mathbb{W}h4$   $\mathbb{W}g2!$  7.h3 (else 7... $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$ ) 7... $\mathbb{W}xg3$ .

**3... $\mathbb{W}f2+$  0-1.** The edifice crumbles on 4. $\mathbb{W}h1$   $\mathbb{W}xf3+$  5. $\mathbb{W}g1$   $\mathbb{B}xg4+$ .



By means of a few simple, well-calculated forcing moves, White's crushing positional edge is converted into decisive mating threats:

FCM 3.31  
**Aronian-Karpov**  
Hoogeveen 2003

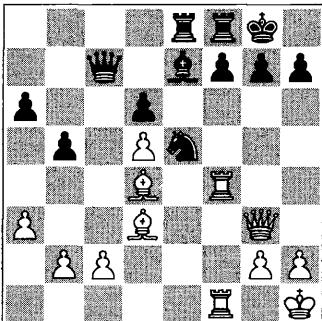


**1. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{G}xf6$  2. $\mathbb{W}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$   $\mathbb{W}g7$**

On 3...f5, 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe8!$  wins, as does 3... $\mathbb{W}e7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5. $\mathbb{W}g4+!$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  (5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6. $\mathbb{W}g8$  or 5... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  6. $\mathbb{B}d3$ ) 6. $\mathbb{W}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  7. $\mathbb{B}d3$   $\mathbb{B}h8$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f5+!$  and mate in two.

**4. $\mathbb{W}e3$   $\mathbb{B}h8$  5. $\mathbb{B}d8!$  1-0.**

The stock diversion sacrifice leads to mate on 5... $\mathbb{B}xd8$  6. $\mathbb{W}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  .



FCM 3.32

**Bednarski-Adamski**

Slupsk 1978



White utilizes a combination of stock themes which goes a little beyond the ordinary, and into the realm of fine BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION:

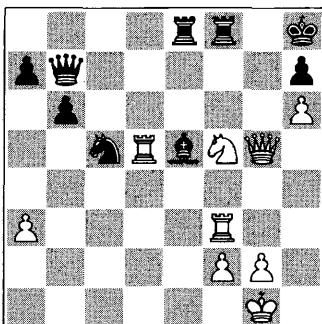
**1.♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2.♗xf7! ♕xf7 3.♗xf7 ♕g8**

There is no credible defense of g7 (3...♗xf7 4.♗xg7).

**4.♗h3+ ♔g6 5.♗f5+ ♔h6 6.♗e3+ g5 7.♗h7.**



White found a long and beautiful brute force win in this sharp position, although, unfortunately, the computer finds a quicker and even more elegant way:



FCM 3.33

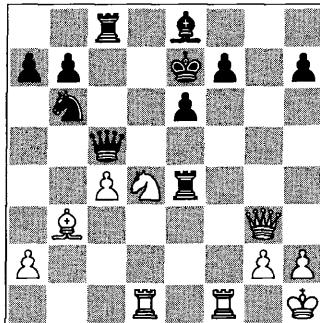
**Ivan Sokolov-Judit Polgar**

Hoogeveen 2003



Sokolov won beautifully after 1.♗xe5 ♕xe5 2.♗e7!!<sup>1</sup>, but the fantastic 1.♗e7!! is much simpler: 1...♔b2 Sudden death befalls 1...♗xf3 2.♗xe5+; 1...♔d7 2.♗xd7!, or 1...♗xe7 2.♗xe7 ♗xe7 3.♗xf8. **2.♗e5!! ♔e6** Sadly, the only defense of g7 (2...♗g8 3.♗f6+). **3.♗xe6 ♗xf3** Or 3...♗g8 4.♗xg8 ♕xe6 5.♗f8! ♕e1+ 4.♗h2 ♕c7+ (4...♔e5+ 5.♗xe5+!) 5.g3. **4.♗g6+ hxg6 5.♗xe8+ 1-0.**

FCM 3.34  
**Kotov-Yudovich**  
Leningrad 1939



White's activity, and the precariousness of the black king's bunker, cry out for a well-executed SACRIFICIAL BLOW:

**1.  $\mathbb{H}f5!$  exf5**

Otherwise a winning check lands on g5: 1...  $\mathbb{W}c7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$ . Probably Black's best defense was the queen sac 1...  $\mathbb{W}xd4$ .

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$**

The king is flushed out, due to 2...  $\mathbb{W}xf5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d6$ .

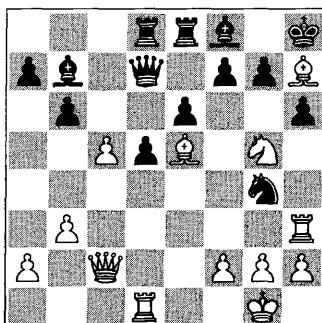
**3.  $\mathbb{H}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f3+$   $\mathbb{H}f4$**

Else 5.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$  mates shortly.

**5.  $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c2+$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  7.  $\mathbb{H}d3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f2$  8.  $\mathbb{H}d2+$   $\mathbb{Q}e1$  8...  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  9.  $\mathbb{W}e2$ . 9.  $\mathbb{W}d1\#$ .**



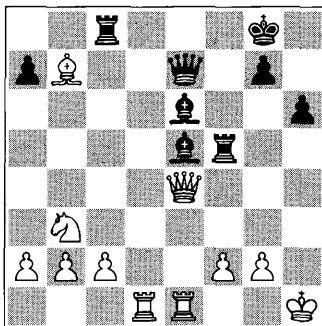
FCM 3.35  
**Annageldiev-Paramonov**  
Alushta 2004



In this wild and critical position, White unveils an original and well-calculated COMPUTER EYES attack: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g8!$  f5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6!$   $\mathbb{H}xe6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf5$ , renewing the h7 mate threat. 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  Straining to defend h7 with the queen on 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $gxf6$ , but to no avail. 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{H}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{H}xh6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  Futile is 5...  $gxh6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}g6+$ . 6.  $\mathbb{H}xf6!$   $gxf6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{H}xe5$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}h5+$  and 10.  $\mathbb{W}xe5+$  winning the  $\mathbb{H}e5$ . 1-0.

## Forcing Chess Moves

Another critical situation in which everything rests on precise calculation. White is very active and up material, but after Black's brute force demonstration against the exposed king, all becomes clear within a few moves:



FCM 3.36

**Adams-Morozevich**

Dortmund 2001



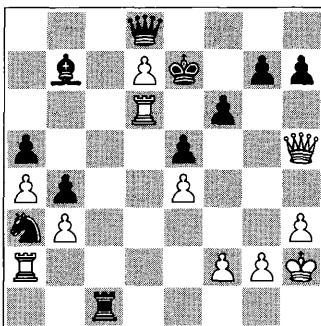
**1... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$  2. $\mathbb{W}e3$**

Black's attack is too strong on 2. $\mathbb{W}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}xf2+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ , or 2. $\mathbb{W}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h2+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2!$ ) 3... $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h2+!$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ .

**2... $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h2+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}c4+$  0-1.** After all the fireworks comes the simple 5... $\mathbb{W}xb7$ .

## C) Promotion-Based Brute Force Combinations

The theme of PROMOTION is a critical element in many brute force combinations, gaining more importance as the battle wears on. COMPUTER EYES are turned up a notch when passers near the queening square:



FCM 3.37

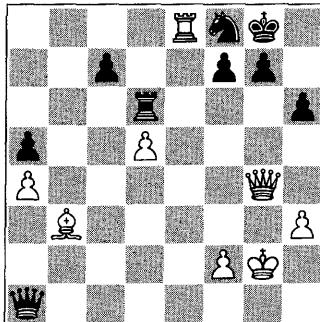
**Shirov-Atalik**

Sarajevo 2004



**1. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$**  The pawn queens after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  2. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ . **2. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$  1-0.**

FCM 3.38  
**Koblents-Chukaev**  
 Soviet Union 1946



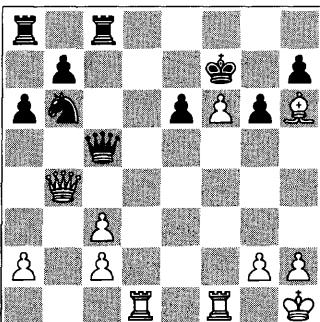
In this unlikely setting where White must reckon with ...Bg6, the blockaded d-pawn suddenly becomes a BRUTE FORCE STEAMROLLER:

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xc7+$   $\mathbb{H}d7$  4.  $d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  (5...  $\mathbb{H}xf7$  6.  $\mathbb{W}c8$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{W}xd7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  8.  $d7$  1-0. A long line, but absolutely forcing.

COMPUTER EYES just had to find the most forcing moves, see the board correctly, and calculate it through!



FCM 3.39  
**Prandstetter-Panchenko**  
 Czechoslovakia 1978



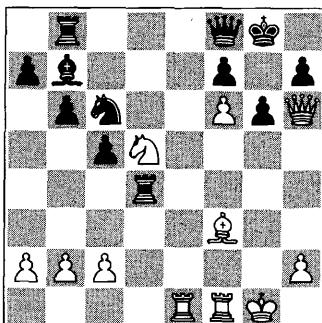
The terrible threat of making a new queen is rendered even stronger by MATING THREATS, achieved here with the important idea of sacrificing to force promotion with discovered check:

1.  $\mathbb{W}xb6$ !!  $\mathbb{W}xb6$  2.  $\mathbb{H}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{H}e7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  4.  $\mathbb{H}d1+$ ) 3.  $f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$

The smoke has cleared. Now, have your COMPUTER EYES been able to 'see through' and examine one more completely forcing move?

4.  $\mathbb{Q}g7+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  5.  $f8\mathbb{W}$ .

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 3.40

**Bednarski-Giorgadze**

Tbilisi 1971



A series of brute force hammer blows culminates in a crushing promotion threat:

**1.♕e7+! ♕xe7 2.♗xf8+ ♔xf8**

The ♜b7 falls on 2...♝xf8 3.fxe7.

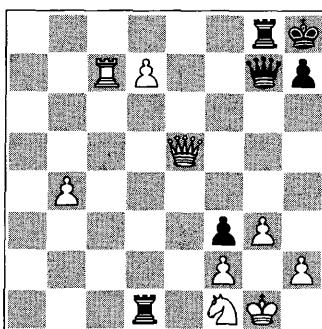
**3.fxe7+ ♔e8 4.♗xb7 ♜xb7**

Black would win if not for: **5.♗xf7!** Banging home the e-pawn with 6.♗f8+ (5...♔xf7 6.e8♗+). **1-0.**

COMPUTER EYES are always alert for the sting at the end of the scorpion's tail! Innumerable battles are decided by analyzing a brute force sequence ONE MOVE DEEPER than the opponent.



Accurate analysis requires creativity! Lacking bias, COMPUTER EYES never rule out UNDERPROMOTION as a forcing option.



FCM 3.41

**Geist-Burrows**

San Francisco 2000

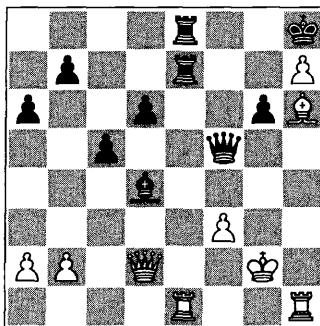


White played the second-rate **1.♗xg7+? ♜xg7 (2.♗c8+ ♜g8)** and only drew; also not so easy was **1.d8♛? ♜xf1+! 2.♔xf1 ♜xe5 3.♗e7 ♜f5.**

The right way, **1.d8♛!!** was lights out: **1...♜xe5 2.♗f7+ ♔g7 3.♗xe5+ ♔f6 4.♗xf3 1-0.**

Beware the wrath of a far-advanced passer blockaded by the king; as in a horror movie, it itches to morph into a new form and deliver mate, if it can only escape confinement!

FCM 3.42  
**Patience-Tilson**  
 England 1964



**1.  $\mathbb{W}xd4+!!$   $cxd4$  2.  $\mathbb{A}g7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  (2...  $\mathbb{B}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xe8+$  mates) 3.  $\mathbb{B}xe7+$   $\mathbb{B}xe7$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xe8$   $\mathbb{W}g5+$  5.  $\mathbb{B}f2$   $\mathbb{W}d2+$  6.  $\mathbb{B}e2$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{h}8\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$**

As with many promotion combinations, the final phase is a WINNING KING HUNT with the marauding major pieces.

**5.  $\mathbb{B}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}c8+$**

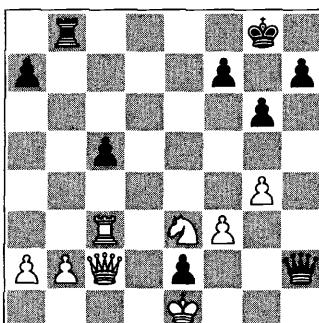
Bagging the rook.

**6...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$  1-0.**



Far-advanced passers may control sensitive squares near the enemy king and limit his options. The seemingly 'doomed' button on e2 exacts its pound of flesh:

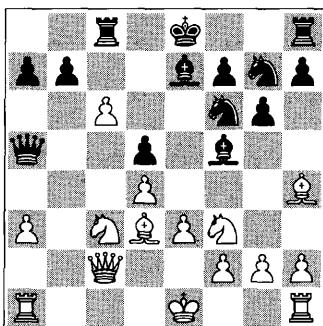
FCM 3.43  
**Fischer-Spassky (variation)**  
 Sveti Stefan/Belgrade 1992



**1...  $\mathbb{B}xb2!!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xb2$   $\mathbb{W}g1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{W}h2+$  0-1.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

Queening combos are more unusual in the opening, and usually accompanied by great fireworks due to the large number of extant forces:



FCM 3.44

Vaganian-Westerinen

Moscow 1982



The unorthodox Finnish GM tries to take the initiative on the c-file instead of making a routine recapture. The point is 1.cxb7  $\blacksquare$ xc3 2.b8 $\blacksquare$ +??  $\blacksquare$ c8+ winning the queen with the discovery, but Black gets burned by playing with the dangerous fire of a passer on the 7th rank.

**1.cxb7!  $\blacksquare$ xc3**

In the game Westerinen saw what was coming, played 1... $\blacksquare$ b8 and lost anyway.

**2. $\blacksquare$ a4+!!  $\blacksquare$ xa4 3.b8 $\blacksquare$ +**

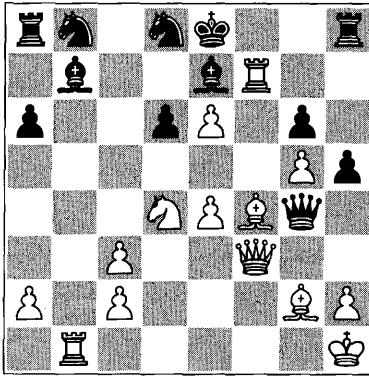
The new queen is better placed than the old, and wreaks decisive havoc! The coming bishop check is crushing.

**3... $\blacksquare$ c8**

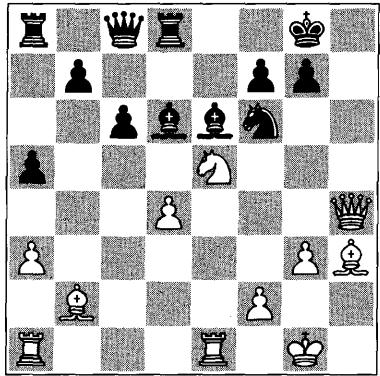
Black jumps from fryer into fire on 3... $\blacksquare$ d7 4. $\blacksquare$ b5+  $\blacksquare$ e6 5. $\blacksquare$ g5.

**4. $\blacksquare$ b5+  $\blacksquare$ d8 5. $\blacksquare$ xc8+ 1-0.**

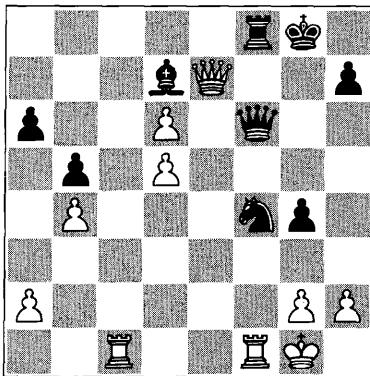
## Chapter 3 - Exercises



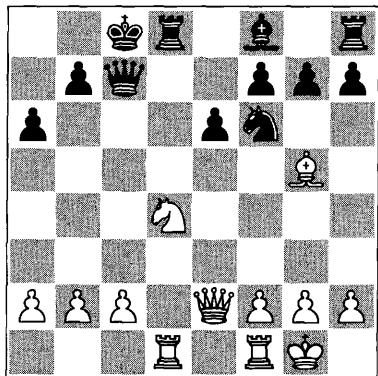
Ex 3.1  Find the most forcing solution



Ex 3.2  Is White forced to exchange?

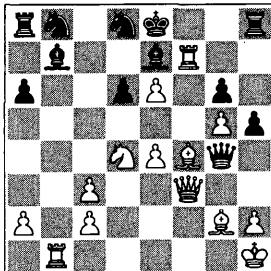


Ex 3.3  Find the road to White's king



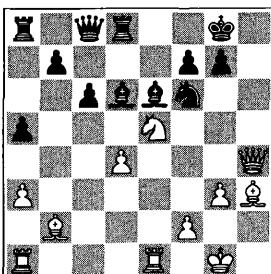
Ex 3.4  Find Black's soft spot

## Forcing Chess Moves



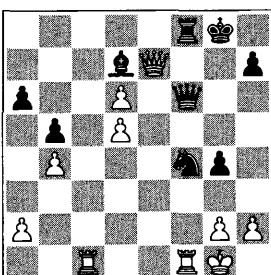
### Ex 3.1 Sutovsky - Gofshtein Israel 1998

White defeats the scattered black army with a BRUTE FORCE finale: **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6+$**  Even more forceful was **2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f6!$  **2...  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  3.  $e5+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$**  Wherever he turns, the black king finds only grief: **3...  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  5.  $e7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7!$ ) 6.  $exd8\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7+$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xb8+$ ! with a quick mate; or 3...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xh8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  7.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}c6+!$ . **4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xb7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c6+$**  and mate next move. **1-0.******



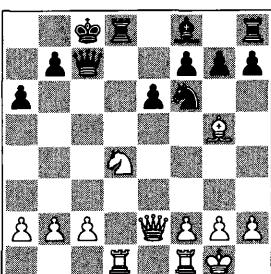
### Ex 3.2 Taimanov-Kuzminikh Soviet Union 1950

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$**  White begins with a stock threat on h8 with the knight obviously taboo (1...  $f\rightarrow g$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$ ). The creative application of BRUTE FORCE ANALYSIS comes after the forced reply **1...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $fxe6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd8+!!$   $\mathbb{W}xd8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6#$ !**



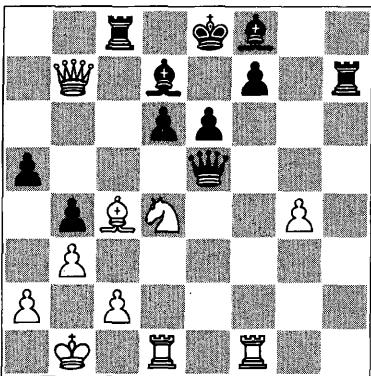
### Ex 3.3 Videki-Mansurov Budapest 1994

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}h3+$  2.  $gxh3$   $\mathbb{W}d4+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$**  The game continuation was **3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $gxh3+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$  (4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}xd5+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}g2#$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{W}g4#$ .** **3...  $\mathbb{W}xd5+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}d4+$**  The queen's 'jig' has opened a decisive attacking line: **5.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}c6+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1+$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g1#$ .** Maybe Fritz could find it in his sleep, but this was a fine feat of BOARD SIGHT RAW CALCULATION for 'one of us'. All Black's moves were among the MOST FORCING, which made the selection process a bit easier.

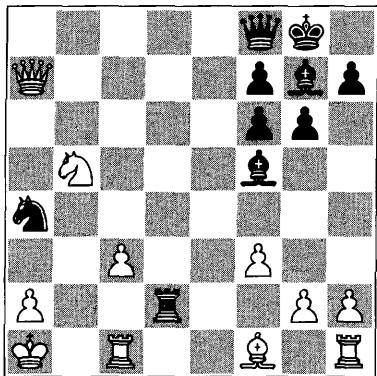


### Ex 3.4 Benjamin - Seirawan Seattle 2000

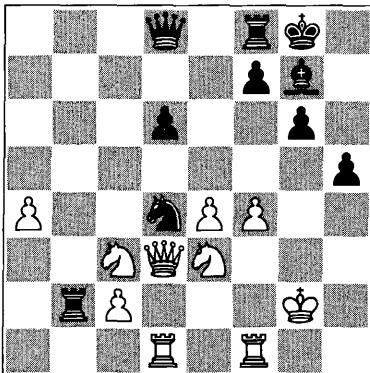
The American GM identifies the CRITICAL POSITION, with Black on the verge of equalizing, and brings him down with a far-reaching brute force combo winning decisive material: **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6!$   $fxe6$**  If 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d8+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  (2...  $\mathbb{W}xd8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ . **2.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $gxf6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d4!$**  The key to White's idea, combining the strong threats 5.  $\mathbb{Q}fd1$  and 5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$ . **4...  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$**  There is no decent answer to the threat of 6.b4; e.g. 5...  $b5$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xa6+$ . **6.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{W}xc5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$  8.  $\mathbb{W}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  1-0.**



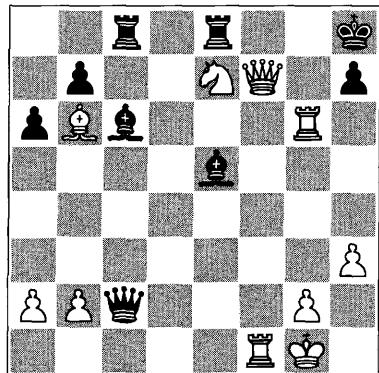
Ex 3.5 □ Break through  
Black's defenses



Ex 3.6 ■ Can Black cash in  
on his initiative?

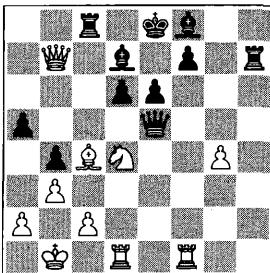


Ex 3.7 ■ Find White's  
soft spot



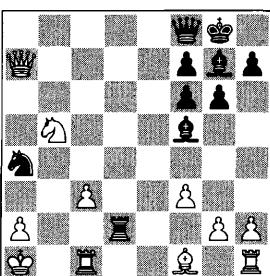
Ex 3.8 □ Is there a mate?

## Forcing Chess Moves



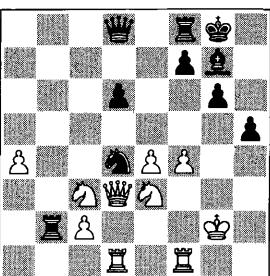
### Ex 3.5 Svidler-Timofeev Krasnoyarsk 2003

It's impressive how White dispatches Black's chances with creative BRUTE FORCE play: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}b5!$  Twin threats on c8 and d7 force the reply: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c6!$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  Or 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ . Black hopes to embarrass the oddly placed white knight, but he seems quite happy attacking from the heart of enemy headquarters! 4.  $\mathbb{Q}a8!$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b7!$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  1-0.



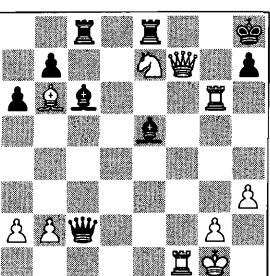
### Ex 3.6 Lahno-Jobava Dubai 2004

Too slow is 1...  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$  f5 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc2!$ , so Black must use BRUTE FORCE to punch White's ticket: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  Other tries: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$ ; 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}d1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$ ; or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xa2$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xa2$   $\mathbb{Q}e6+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}a8+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}a5!$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$ . 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  A feverish attempt to prevent 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ . 3...  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  A tremendous blow! 4... f5+ will mate or cost White the queen. 3...  $\mathbb{Q}c2!$  would have yielded the same result. 0-1.



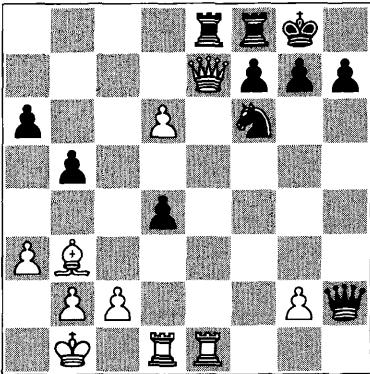
### Ex 3.7 Yu Shaoteng-Ni Hua Yongchuan 2003

Black cashes in with a BREAD AND BUTTER forcing sequence: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc2!$  Not as strong is 1...  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$  or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}cd5$  threatening 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ . 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc2$   $\mathbb{Q}c8!$  Not only regaining the piece, but eyeing the kingside menacingly. 3.  $\mathbb{Q}f3?$  White's best chance was 3.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ , with some drawing chances. 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  The point is an 'X-ray attack' on 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2+$ . 4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  Black's positional and material edge carried after a few more moves. 0-1.

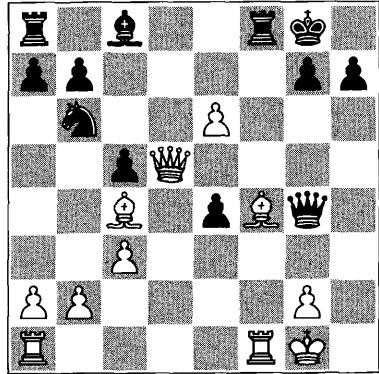


### Ex 3.8 Hertan-R. MacDonald Amherst 1999

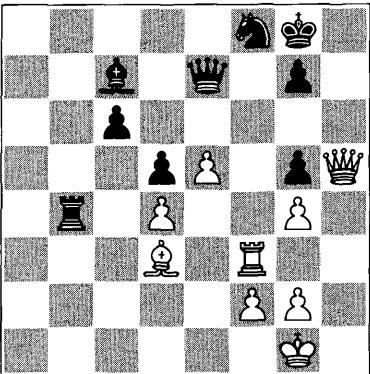
The black king is on the ropes, but where's the mate? 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  Easy is 2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}hxh7\#$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}gxg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  With h7 defended, I could have given up on the line here, but continued to follow the trail of forcing checks, and it paid off. 4.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d4+!$  A winning in-between check. 5...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e5+$  Also 7.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ . 7...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$ .



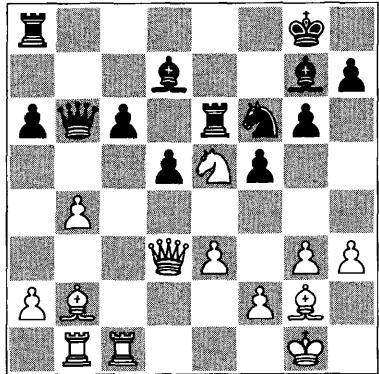
Ex 3.9  Is there  
a breakthrough?



Ex 3.10  Is Black's defense  
on time?

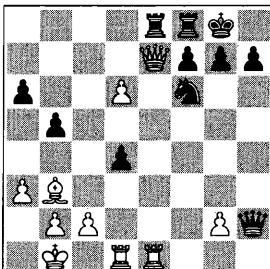


Ex 3.11  Catch  
the black king

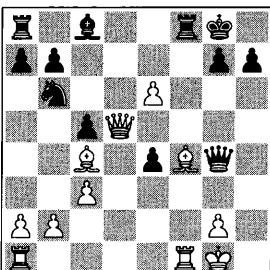


Ex 3.12  Can White  
force matters?

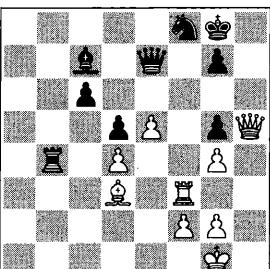
## Forcing Chess Moves



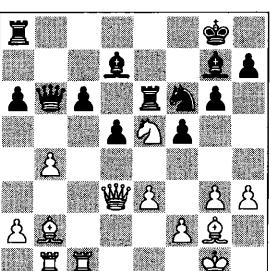
Ex 3.9 **Velimirovic-Csom** Amsterdam 1974  
White conjures up a lethal blend of queening and mating threats. 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{B}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xe8+$   $\mathbb{B}f8$  4. d7  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  5.  $\mathbb{B}f1$  1-0. The finale is the stock double rook mate 5...  $\mathbb{W}xd7$  6.  $\mathbb{B}xf8\#$ .



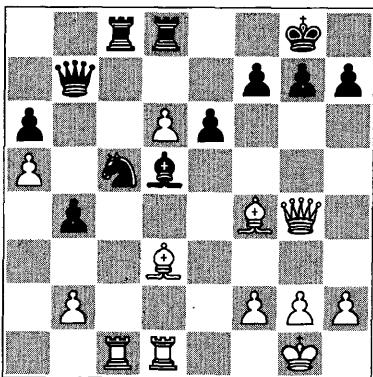
Ex 3.10 **Onischuk-Hertneck** Biel 1997  
A fine brute force QUEEN SACRIFICE leads to mate:  
1. e7+!  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  2. exf8 $\mathbb{W}+$ ! (not 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5+??$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$ )  
2...  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}f8\#$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}b5+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  5.  $\mathbb{B}f8\#$ .



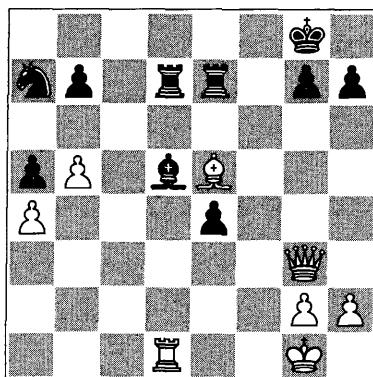
Ex 3.11 **Geller-Novotelnov** Moscow 1951  
1.  $\mathbb{B}xf8+$  A magnificent conception by an attacking genius. COMPUTER EYES extraordinaire were needed to foresee the beautiful third move which justifies White's whole position, as otherwise his center falls.  
1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  Not 1...  $\mathbb{W}xf8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ . 2.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$  A triumph of creative SELECTION. Would you give due consideration to this stunning, but crucial, forcing option, three moves deep in analysis? 3...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  Or the exquisite point 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ . 4.  $\mathbb{W}g8+$ . Or 4.  $\mathbb{W}c8+$ . 4...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$  1-0.



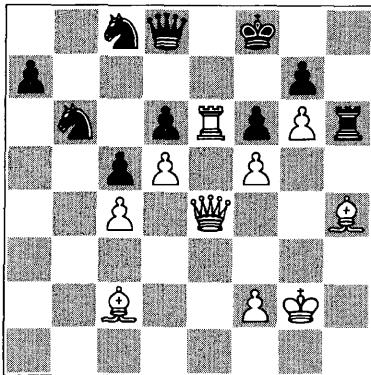
Ex 3.12 **Dreev-Zhang Zhong** Beijing 2000  
White converts his positional pull with a series of brute force hammer blows: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xc6!$   $\mathbb{W}xc6$  Even worse is 2...  $\mathbb{B}xc6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd5+$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  This embarrassing in-between capture is the deadly point, since 4...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}c3+$  and 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xa8$  unpins the bishop and emerges two pawns up. 4...  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{W}xa2$  7.  $\mathbb{B}d1$  1-0. A pawn down and with gale force winds blowing down the a1-h8 diagonal, Black is not long for this world.



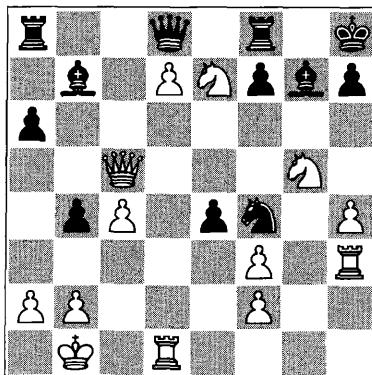
Ex 3.13  Win material by force



Ex 3.14  Find the quickest win

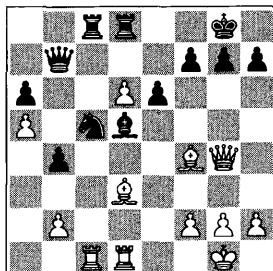


Ex 3.15  Don't give Black time

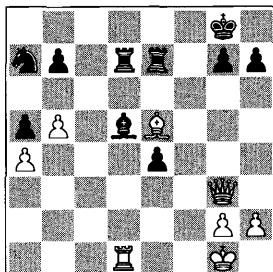


Ex 3.16  Round off the attack

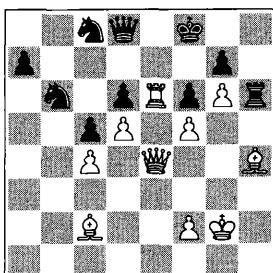
## Forcing Chess Moves



Ex 3.13 **Tukmakov-Speelman** Tilburg rapid 1994  
A simple BREAD AND BUTTER combo snags material:  
**1.  $\mathbb{H}xc5 \mathbb{H}xc5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h4$**  The double attack on h7 and d8 decides at once, since 2...f6 3.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$  is ruinous. **1-0.**



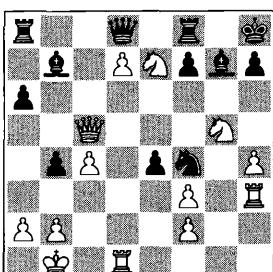
Ex 3.14 **Lastin-Sergey Ivanov** Moscow 2004  
White wants to cash in on the initiative, since Black might hold if his misplaced knight could reach b6.  
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$**  The most forcing way to bring home the point. **1...  $\mathbb{H}xg7$**  Or **1...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2.  $\mathbb{H}f1+$  mating!** **2.  $\mathbb{W}b8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xd5!$**  Crisper than **3.  $\mathbb{W}xa7$** , though **3.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$**  also wins. **3...  $\mathbb{H}xd5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xb7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xg7$  e3 6.  $\mathbb{W}h6+$  1-0.**



Ex 3.15 **Khalifman-Campora**

Dos Hermanas 2003

Black threatens to reorganize with the maneuver ... $\mathbb{Q}d7-e5$ , but White converts his bind with the PROMOTION-BASED BRUTE FORCE TRICK **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$   $gxf6$  2.  $\mathbb{H}e8+!$   $\mathbb{W}xe8$  3.  $g7+$  1-0** The queen dominates Black's scattered army on **3...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe8$** , while the pawn promotes after **3...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  5.  $g8\mathbb{W}+$** .



Ex 3.16 **Shirov-Topalov** Sarajevo 2000

This is the critical position in White's sacrificial attack, but his COMPUTER EYES have anticipated every turn:  
**1.  $\mathbb{W}f5!$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  2.  $\mathbb{h}5!$**  A brilliant continuation of the assault on h7! **2...  $\mathbb{W}xe7$  3.  $\mathbb{h}xg6$   $f\mathbf{x}g6$**  Forced, since on **3...  $h6$  or  $3... \mathbb{exf}3$ ,  $4. \mathbb{gxf7}$** , renewing the h7 mate threat, is lights out. **4.  $\mathbb{E}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xg6$  1-0.** There is no defense against the stock mate threat **6.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ .**

# **Chapter 4 - Surprise Forcing Moves**

## **Study Material**

In the first three chapters we focused on recognition of stock forcing moves and the use of brute force calculation. In the remaining chapters, we examine the other key aspect of developing strong computer eyes, **OVERCOMING HUMAN BIAS**. We begin with **SURPRISE FORCING MOVES**.

The most basic human chess bias is our tendency to rely on ‘normal’ moves, and to rule out ‘impossible’ or strange ideas. On the one hand, this shows a deficit of creativity; but from a COMPUTER EYES perspective, it also demonstrates a lack of objectivity, since unusual forcing moves are often the best! Computers lack human sensibilities which label a move abnormal, so they calculate surprise moves and normal moves equally, without bias. Since humans do have a need to categorize positions and weed some options out (we don’t have the computer luxury of analyzing every move!), we must make a special effort to develop the capacity to find strong surprise forcing moves in our games. Many great attackers make a practice of **CONSIDERING ‘IMPOSSIBLE’ MOVES FIRST**, to ensure that they don’t overlook the shocker which might be the key to the position. Since opponents also neglect these surprise options in their calculations, mastering this key aspect of COMPUTER EYES will translate into better results, as well as a heightened appreciation for the possibilities hidden in ‘everyday’ positions.

Last chapter, we discussed the three essential skills involved in calculating forcing chess moves: selection, board sight, and raw calculation of variations. Surprise forcing moves are of primary importance in the area of **improving your selection skills**.

The two **CARDINAL SINS OF SELECTION** bear repeating:

1. Failure to consider crucial forcing options during your calculations. If this is your problem, the remaining chapters are the remedy. You must start by ‘reprogramming’ to be extra alert for the **SURPRISE FORCING MOVES** that you tend to discard.
2. Spending too much time on ‘dead ends’. This becomes a serious problem if you are chronically addicted to the disease of time pressure. The remedy for this one is more difficult, since you don’t want to ‘throw out the baby with the bath water’ and stunt your creativity. Much of this ‘HONING’ skill will come from experience and the study of master tactics, but a good start at this point would be to heighten your practice of **ALWAYS EXAMINING THE MOST FORCING MOVES FIRST**. The surprise moves in this chapter all share in common the trait of being extremely forcing; as such, they are precisely not the types of options you want to ‘filter out’ of your calculations. We will distinguish two types of surprise forcing moves.

**A) 'Impossible' Moves**

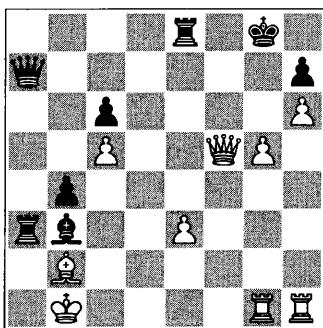
**B) Unusual Squares and 'Antipositional' Surprise Forcing Moves**

'UNUSUAL SQUARES' refers to surprise invasions which occur on a square not usually associated with a particular piece. Rote thinking often wrongly ignores these strange forcing options.

'ANTIPOSITIONAL' forcing moves are the kind of 'ugly' forcing shots computers thrive on. They may look like 'the worst moves on the board' to human eyes, until brute force analysis shows that they win by force! Typical 'antipositional' shots include moves which destroy one's own pawn structure, or trap one's own piece(s), until one grasps the tactical justification which overrides these positional considerations.

**A) 'Impossible' Surprise Forcing Moves**

These are the elemental 'bolts from the blue' catching the opponent completely off guard, with devastating impact. They typically involve major material sacrifices. The quintessential surprise forcing move is the 'JAW DROPPER', a move which looks so unlikely that it is often completely overlooked by the opponent.



FCM 4.1

**Bischoff-Nogueiras**

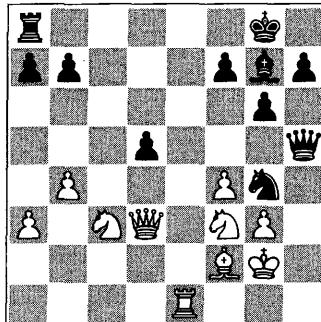
Havana 1998



I'm guessing that Black was pretty happy with his chances here, since 1.g6? is met by the winning countershot 1... $\mathbb{Q}a1+$ ! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$   $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ . But White struck first with an unbelievable BARN BURNER:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+!!! \mathbb{Q}xh7+$**  (or 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.g6+  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.h7+) **2.g6  $\mathbb{Q}a2+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$  1-0**. After the shock of a lifetime, it's hard to blame Black for resigning a little prematurely; he could still resist with 3... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$  4.gxh7+  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  6.hxg7+  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  with slim holding chances.

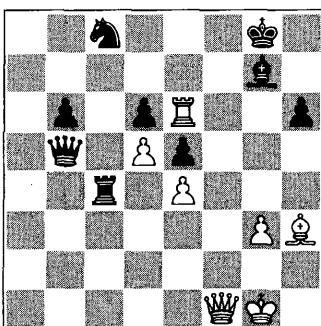
FCM 4.2  
**Zilber-Tal (variation)**  
Riga 1958



The main justification of another brilliantly speculative Tal piece sacrifice was the shocker 1... $\mathbb{W}h3+$ , envisioning an unusual version of the stock fork trick 2. $\mathbb{Q}g1\mathbb{W}h1+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xh1\mathbb{Q}xf2+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g2\mathbb{Q}xd3$ , regaining the piece with a winning edge. 0-1.



FCM 4.3  
**Kasparov-Smirin**  
Moscow 1988



It's hard to believe that White could be winning here down a piece and pawn, with an exposed king and Black threatening ... $\mathbb{W}c5+$  and ... $\mathbb{K}c1$ , but Kasparov's SURPRISE BOMBSHELL reveals that he has the whole position in hand:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}xh6\mathbb{Q}xh6$**  (otherwise 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$  is mate) **2. $\mathbb{Q}e6+\mathbb{Q}h8$**  (2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ )  
**3. $\mathbb{W}f6+$**

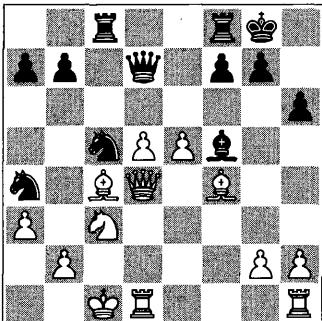
As we noted earlier, such positions with many checking possibilities require careful brute force calculation. 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  now loses to 4. $\mathbb{W}h4+$ .

**3... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4. $\mathbb{W}f7+\mathbb{Q}g7$**

Or 4... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ . Finally all becomes clear.

**5. $\mathbb{Q}f5+\mathbb{Q}h8$  6. $\mathbb{W}h5+\mathbb{Q}g8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e6+\mathbb{Q}f8$  8. $\mathbb{W}f7\#$ .** A stunning display of Kasparovian prowess.

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 4.4

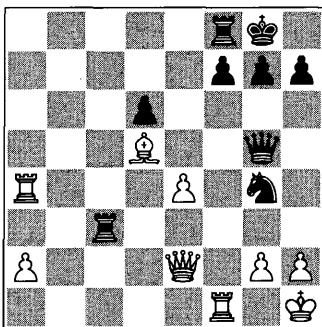
Vetemaa-Shabalov

Haapsalu 1986



Black's initiative is even stronger than White's imposing center, but White hopes to fight on after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  2.bxc3  $\mathbb{W}a4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ . The OTHER magician from Latvia has something much more devilish in mind:

**1... $\mathbb{W}b5$**  A monstrous SURPRISE FORCING SHOT. **2. $\mathbb{H}d2$**  The queen is taboo due to 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$ ; while 2.b4 loses prosaically to 2... $\mathbb{Q}b3+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$   $\mathbb{B}xc3+$ . **2... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$**  (3.bxc3  $\mathbb{W}b1\#$  or 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$ ) **3... $\mathbb{Q}b3+ 0-1$** . The c-file pin proves decisive.



FCM 4.5

Fischer-Sherwin

New York 1957



Losing is 1. $\mathbb{H}xf7$   $\mathbb{B}c1+$  2. $\mathbb{H}f1+??$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$ , but with Fischer's unique ability to penetrate positions with searing objectivity, he wasn't quite ready to give up on this critical forcing line:

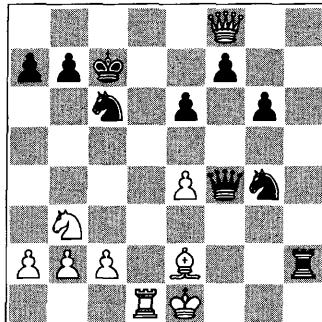
**1. $\mathbb{H}xf7$   $\mathbb{B}c1+$  2. $\mathbb{W}f1$**  A marvelous feat of creative SELECTION! The doomed queen enables mate after 2... $\mathbb{H}fc8$  3. $\mathbb{H}f8\#$ , while 2... $\mathbb{H}xf1+$  3. $\mathbb{H}xf1+$   $\mathbb{W}xd5$  4. $\mathbb{H}xf8+$  wins.

**2... $\mathbb{h}5$  3. $\mathbb{W}xc1$   $\mathbb{W}h4$  3... $\mathbb{W}xc1+$**  loses a rook to 4. $\mathbb{H}f1+$ . **4. $\mathbb{H}xf8+ 1-0$** . Before computers, only Fischer-like genius could conceive a move like 2. $\mathbb{W}f1!$

FCM 4.6

**Andres Rodriguez-Leon Hoyos**

Buenos Aires 2003



In desperate situations, most of us don COMPUTER EYES and suddenly become eager to analyze any 'crazy possibility' searching for some loophole to escape certain death. What if we could be this alert to the 'impossible' all the time?

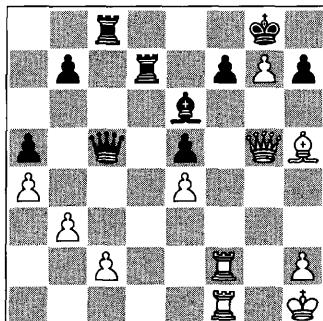
White's position looks resignable here, but it was Black who had to throw in the towel after **1.Qd7+! Qxd7** (1...Qb6 2.Qc5#) **2.Qc5+ Qc7** **3.Qxe6+ fxe6** **4.Qxf4+** **1-0.**



FCM 4.7

**Tiviakov-Beshukov**

Elista 1996



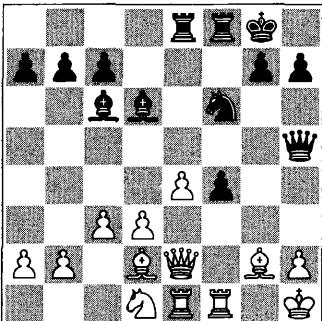
White's pieces are perfectly poised for attack, but he could soon be forced into an awkward defense of the e4 weakness. Also, Black may try to complicate with 1...f5!? (threatening ...f4) and if 2.exf5 Qd5+ and 3...Rg7.

White's quiet prelude masks a SURPRISE CRUSHER which resolves all these issues:

**1.Qh6! Qc6**

'Falling for it', but there's no reasonable answer to the coming blow; if 1...Rdd8 2.Rxf7 wins on the spot.

**2.Qg6!! 1-0.** Checkmate on h7, f8, or h8!



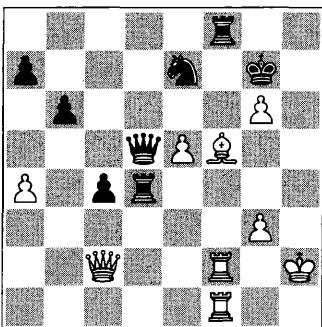
FCM 4.8

Riumin-Rauzer

Odessa 1929



In this clearly critical position, Black foresaw a run of ‘impossible’ forcing moves deciding the battle: **1...f3!!** A triumph of selection! COMPUTER EYES can’t reject a forcing option solely due to abstract thoughts like, ‘it drops a pawn three ways!’. Like Fritz, we should strive to ANALYZE FIRST, then make generalizations! **2.Qxf3** (forced, to stop mate on h2) **2...Qxe4!** Definitely not rote play! **3.Qxh5 Qf2+ 4.Qg1 Qh3#** is a stock mate; and h2 or the queen fall on **3.Qxe4 Rxf1+! 3.dxe4 Rxf3! 4.Rxf3 Rxe4! 0-1.** White’s defenses are ripped to shreds after **5.Qf2 Rxf3+! 5.Qe3 Rxe3!, or 5.Qf8+ Qxf8 6.Qxh5 (6.Qf2+ Rf4+) 6...Rxe1#.**



FCM 4.9

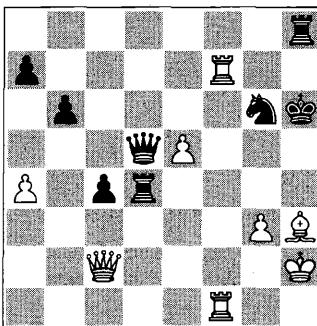
Nezhmetdinov-Kasparian

Riga 1955



The legendary tactician Rashid Nezhmetdinov was Tal’s nemesis, one of the few who could match the wizard from Riga’s creativity on the attack: **1.Qe6!!** An astounding conception, leading to a stunning breakthrough despite Black’s wealth of replies. **1...Rh8+** Forced to forestall the attack. White breaks through after **1...Rxf2+ 2.Qxf2 Rxe5 (2...Rxe6 3.Qf2+ Qxg6 4.Qf6+) 3.Qf7+ Qh6 4.Qh7+ Qg5 5.Qxe7+ 2.Qh3!** A wonderful feat of SELECTION. It was exceptionally hard to discern the strength of this paradoxical, forced move. The black rook has been forced off the

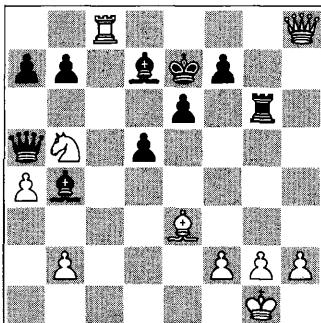
f-file, but it is far from clear whose threats are stronger. **2... $\mathbb{Q}xg6?$ !** Black appears to hold after 2... $\mathbb{B}d3!$  3. $\mathbb{B}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{B}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5. $\mathbb{B}1f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  6. $\mathbb{B}xh8$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$  with a small advantage for White. **3. $\mathbb{B}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$**  More tenacious was 3... $\mathbb{W}xf7$  4. $\mathbb{B}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  5. $\mathbb{W}f5+$  (amazingly, White must avoid 5. $\mathbb{W}f2+?$   $\mathbb{Q}f4!!$  equalizing after 6.gxf4 – Black even wins on 6. $\mathbb{W}xd4??$   $\mathbb{B}xh3+$  – 6... $\mathbb{B}d3)$  5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{W}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7. $\mathbb{B}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  8.e6, but White is still winning.

position after 3... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 

The critical position. White would even lose with the ‘natural’ 4. $\mathbb{B}1f2?$   $\mathbb{B}d1$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g2?$   $\mathbb{Q}g5+!$  Rashid’s remarkable COMPUTER EYES are revealed by a second jaw-dropping SURPRISE DAGGER: **4. $\mathbb{W}xg6+!!$**  The rest is forced! **4... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  5. $\mathbb{B}1f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  6. $\mathbb{B}f5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  7. $\mathbb{B}7f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$**  (7... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  8. $\mathbb{B}g5+$  transposes) **8. $\mathbb{B}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  9. $\mathbb{B}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  10. $\mathbb{B}f#.$**

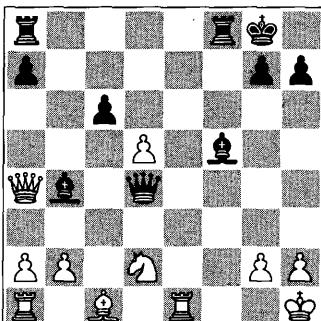
◆ ◆

FCM 4.10  
Tal-NN  
Soviet Union 1964



When the enemy position hangs by a thread, any and all forcing moves need to be tried. Very promising was 1. $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{B}d4+$ , but for simplicity one can’t argue with Tal’s shocking **1. $\mathbb{Q}b6!!$**  Initiating a decisive ‘checking circuit’ by the white queen: **1... $\mathbb{W}xb6$**  (1...axb6 2. $\mathbb{W}d8\#$ ) **2. $\mathbb{W}h4+$   $\mathbb{B}f6$**  (2...f6 3. $\mathbb{W}h7+$ ) **3. $\mathbb{W}xb4+$  **1-0.****

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 4.11  
**Lalic-Schekachev**  
Metz 1998



Master COMPUTER EYES sense that White is too underdeveloped here, and radical ideas may be justified:

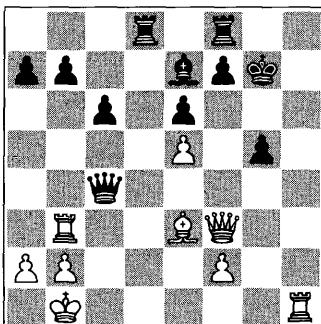
**1... $\mathbb{Q}h3!$  2. $\mathbb{R}g1$**

The sudden assault on the king is unstoppable. 2... $\mathbb{Q}xg2+$  with 3... $\mathbb{W}f2+$  was threatened, and neither 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{W}xd5+$  3... $\mathbb{R}e4$  (3... $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ ) 3... $\mathbb{R}f1+$  4... $\mathbb{Q}g2$  (4... $\mathbb{Q}xf1$   $\mathbb{W}xe4+$  5... $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ ) 4... $\mathbb{R}xc1!$  (or also 4... $\mathbb{R}af8!$ ) 5... $\mathbb{R}xc1$   $\mathbb{W}xd2+$  6... $\mathbb{Q}g3$  (6... $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ )  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ , nor 2... $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{R}f2$  3... $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  offer any hope.

**2... $\mathbb{R}ae8!$**

Bringing up the reserves with tempo via the pernicious threat 3... $\mathbb{W}xg1+!$  with a stock double rook mate.

**3... $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2+$  4. $\mathbb{R}xg2$  (4... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{W}g4+$ ) 4... $\mathbb{R}e1+$  0-1.** Mate follows shortly on 5... $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{R}xg1+$  6... $\mathbb{R}xg1$   $\mathbb{W}e4+$ .

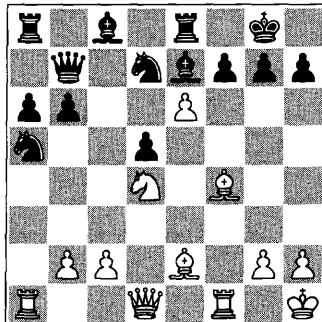


FCM 4.12  
**Apicella-Bauer**  
Aix les Bains 2003



Black was prepared to refute the crude 1... $\mathbb{W}h5??$   $\mathbb{W}e4+$  and 2... $\mathbb{R}h8$ , but not the jaw dropper 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg5!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  2... $\mathbb{W}f6+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$  and mate 1-0.

FCM 4.13  
**Naer-Bocharov**  
 Elista 2000

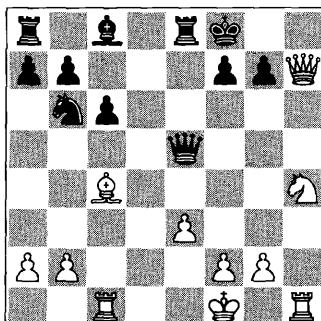


When time is more crucial than material force, surprise forcing moves often appear as DEFLECTION SHOTS whose sole purpose is to GAIN A TEMPO FOR THE ATTACK:

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa6!!$  Allowing the queen to join battle with crushing effect.  
 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  Black cannot survive 3...  $g6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$  or 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ .  
 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$  1-0 Black's hapless forces are massacred after 4...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$ , or 4...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$   
 5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$ .



FCM 4.14  
**Abrahams-Thynne**  
 Liverpool 1936

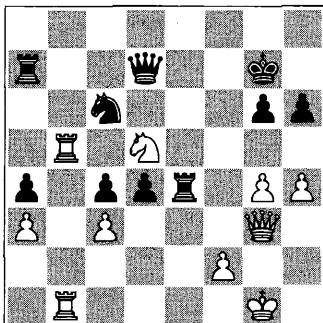


Black was ready for the normal 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}e7$ , but was caught off guard by a far more potent option:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}g8+$**

Would your COMPUTER EYES foresee such a fresh candidate move? If not, you must work on creative SELECTION of forcing options. The assault on f7 swings the game.

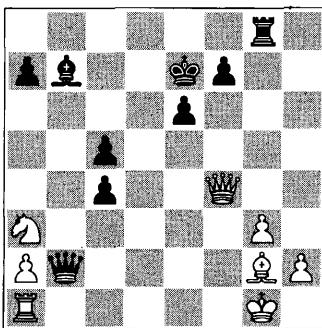
- 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g6!$  with a stock mate on h8) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d1+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$   
 4.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2?$  A blunder in a hopeless position. 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$  1-0.



FCM 4.15  
**Vasiukov-Taimanov**  
Tallinn 1965



White neatly refutes the threat on g4 with an 'impossible' move winning material:  
**1.♘f6 Stomp. 1...♞xf6 2.♗f3+ 1-0.**



FCM 4.16  
**Van Wely-Sammour Hasboun**  
New York 1994

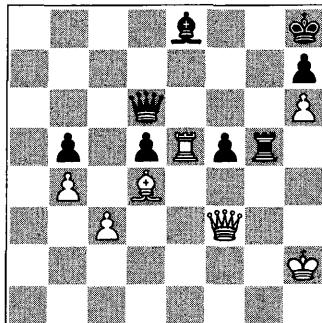


The illusion of a finely balanced theoretical slugfest is shattered by a thunderbolt:

**1.♗d6+ 1-0.**

1...♞xd6 falls to 2.♘xc4+, while 1...♞e8 2.♗b8+ picks off the bishop with check; or 1...♞f6 2.♗f1+ and 3.♗xb7.

FCM 4.17  
**Spielmann-Duras**  
 San Sebastian 1911



Black's defenses hang by a thread, but it looks like a very strong thread! Any normal pin-breaking moves ( $\mathbb{Q}h1$ ,  $\mathbb{Q}h3$ ,  $\mathbb{W}f4$ ) allow ... $\mathbb{W}xh6$  mating! Still, the bishop + rook battery is so menacing, that good SELECTION requires examining EVERY forcing move, however unlikely...

**1.  $\mathbb{W}g3!! \mathbb{W}xh6+$**

Not 1... $\mathbb{E}xg3$  2. $\mathbb{E}xe8\#$ .

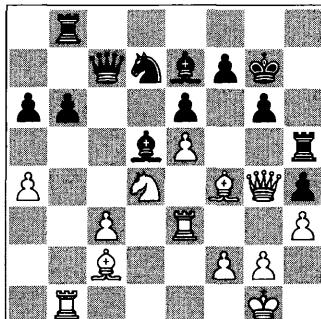
**2.  $\mathbb{W}h3 \mathbb{W}d6$**

Otherwise the mate threat on e8 costs Black at least a bishop. But now the pin can be broken without allowing mate:

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1!$  1-0.**



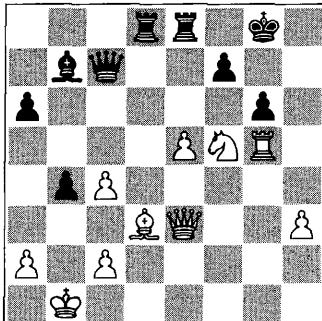
FCM 4.18  
**Djukic-Gipslis (variation)**  
 Vrnjacka Banja 1975



Black's unusual defensive posting ... $\mathbb{E}h5$  makes it hard to break through by usual means, but...

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$   $\mathbb{F}xg6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xe6!!$**

My friend Michael Dathé calls such moves 'leading with your jaw'. This triumph of CREATIVE SELECTION wins on the spot; both bishops are attacked, and 2... $\mathbb{W}xe6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$  wins easily. **1-0.**



FCM 4.19

**Sadvakasov-Korotylev**

Moscow 2003



By their very nature, surprise forcing moves may occur in any situation, but they certainly play a vital role in prosecuting attacks, when routine moves are often simply too slow, and too easily foreseen by the defender. Creativity rules!

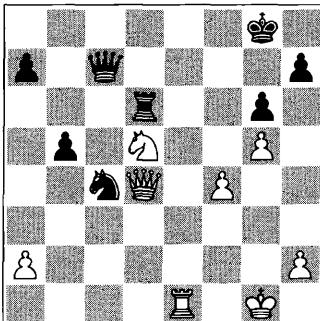
**1.♕h5!**

Breathing fire into the attack, as the variations show: 1...♛xe5 2.♘h6+; 1...♜xe5 2.♖h8+!; 1...gx f5 2.♗g5+ ♔f8 3.♖h8#.

**1...f6 2.♗g1!**

The ‘forcing retreat’ avoids a pinned e-pawn (after 2.♗g3) and quickly breaks Black’s fortress. The same could have been achieved by 2.♗h6!.

**2...g5 (2...♞f7 3.♘h6+) 3.exf6** Or also 3.♗xg5+!. **1-0.**



FCM 4.20

**Spassky-Fischer**

Siegen 1970

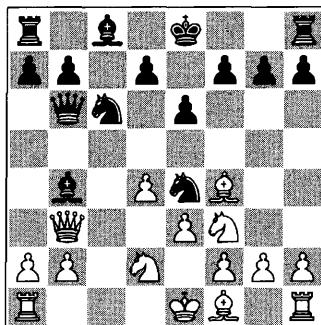


Clearly White’s attack is very strong, but the placement of Black’s defenders isn’t too slouchy, either. It takes a little surprise move to tip the apple cart:

**1.♕e8+ ♔f7 2.♕f8+! 1-0.** The black queen is skewered after 2...♔xf8 3.♕h8+ ♔f7 4.♕xh7+, another stock scenario to digest carefully. Note that 2.♕f8+ was 100% forcing and, as such, must be routinely examined in such positions.

Naturally, surprise forcing moves are also critical in sharp opening positions:

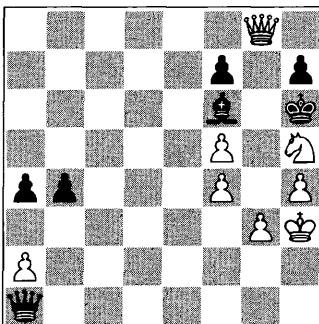
FCM 4.21  
Sangla-Karpov  
Riga 1968



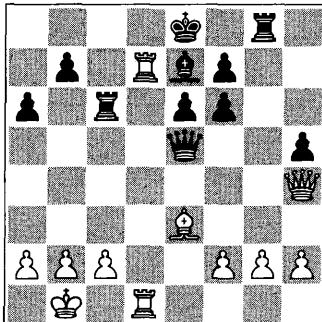
**1...g5!** White soon resigned after this unusual spike, since ...g4 is threatened, but after **2.Qxg5 Qxd2+** (or **2...Qxg5 3.Qxg5 Qxd2+ 4.Qxd2 Wa5+**) **3.Qxd2 Wa5** (but not **3...Qxg5? 4.h4**) attacks two pieces and wins cleanly. **0-1.**

◆ ◆

FCM 4.22  
Sherzer-Mathe  
Hungary 1989



In this now-or-never position White had foreseen the fantastic surprise forcing move **1.Qg5+!! Qxg5 2.hxg5+ Qxh5 3.g4#.**



FCM 4.23

**Korchmar-Kulchinsky**

Soviet Union 1949



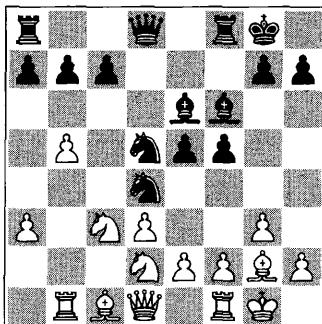
**1. Wb4!**

A surprise direct assault on e7! Black must resign due to 1... ♕xb4 2. ♜d8+ ♔e7 3. ♜1d7#.

This could file under ‘stock attacks against the d8 square’, but the point is that one must first learn to even consider a forcing shot such as 1. Wb4!.

### B) Unusual Squares and ‘Antipositional’ Surprise Forcing Moves

Some surprise forcing moves are particularly elusive because they happen on strange squares, or look just plain ugly. We learn to ‘weed out’ these awkward-looking moves as we became more ‘sophisticated’ players. But surprise moves are all about CREATIVE SELECTION, and creativity requires lack of bias; is this the exceptional position where the weird or ugly move represents the truth?



FCM 4.24

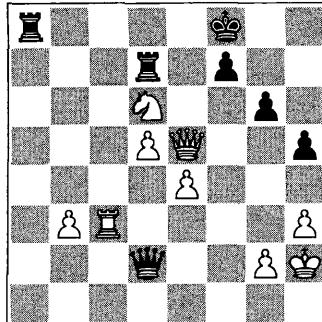
**Gheorghiu-Wirthensohn**

Biel 1982



This trap in the English has occurred often, since who would even think of trading the light-squared bishop? The powerful Romanian GM played the ‘normal’ 1. ♜b2, but 1. ♜xd5! would have won a piece: 1... ♕xd5 2. e3 ♗e6 3. e4! 1-0.

FCM 4.25  
**Graf-Georgiev**  
 Recklinghausen 1998

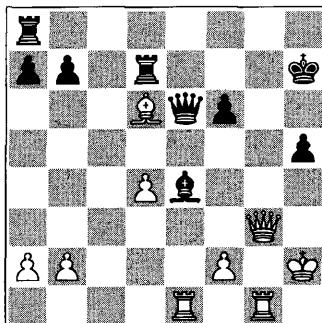


White executes an 'IDEAL MATE' on a quite unusual square:

**1.  $\mathbb{H}c8+$ !  $\mathbb{B}xc8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8\#.$**



FCM 4.26  
**Dzindzichashvili-Browne**  
 New York 1984



Black covers the critical squares, and on the normal 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  plans to untangle with 1...  $\mathbb{W}f5$ ! 2. f3  $\mathbb{Q}d5$ . But the super-talented 'Dzin' doesn't stop at 'normal' ideas!

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}b8!!$**

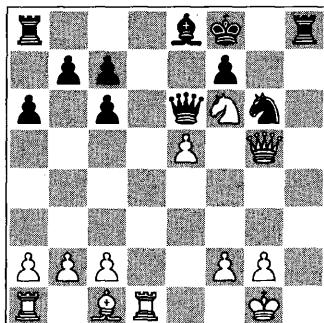
With twin crushing threats: 2. f3, or 2.  $\mathbb{B}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}xe4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{W}h7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xf6+$ .

**1...  $\mathbb{W}e8$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xe4$ !  $\mathbb{W}xb8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}e5$ !**

Finally overwhelming the critical squares.

**3...fxe5 4.  $\mathbb{W}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}h6+$   $\mathbb{B}h7$  6.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$  1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 4.27

**Richter-Kahn**

Prague 1931



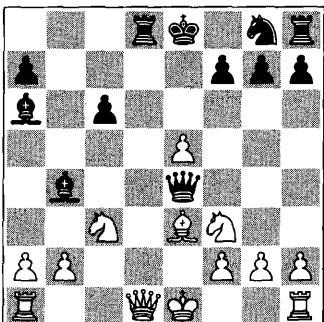
By now the reader should have no trouble finding the first move that needs to be considered here:

**1.  $\mathbb{W}h6+$ !  $\mathbb{B}xh6$**

1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ !  $\mathbb{B}xg8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $f6$  4. $exf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5. $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$  mates.

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$**

But did you foresee the pretty finale on the unusual square **3.  $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ ?**



FCM 4.28

**Akimov-Pridorozhni**

St Petersburg 2000



There is a human tendency to forget that castling may also be a forcing move on occasion:

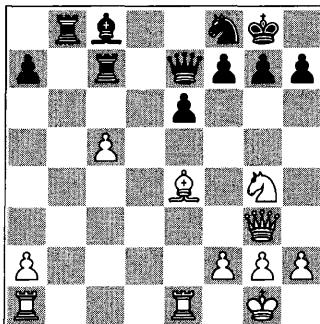
**1.  $\mathbb{W}xd8+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  2.0-0-0+**

The pin on the knight is thus broken with tempo.

**2...  $\mathbb{W}d3$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xd3+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  4.  $\mathbb{W}d1$  1-0.**

Can you find White's unusual forking square, based on the looseness of Black's rooks?

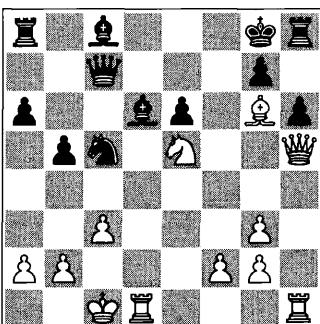
FCM 4.29  
**Botvinnik-Sarov**  
 Soviet Union 1928



**1.Qf6+! Qh8 2.Qe8!** The g7 mate threat wins the exchange. **1-0.**



FCM 4.30  
**Pedzich-Murdzia**  
 Swidnica 1999



With all White's forces trained on f7 (1.Qf7 and if 1...Qe7 2.Qf3 is in fact winning), Black did not expect the winning shot to come on a different square:

**1.Bxd6! Qxd6 2.Qh7+!**

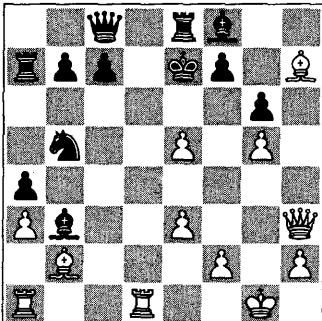
More forcing than 2.Qf7+ Qf8 3.Qe8!, rather than 3.Qg6+?! Qxf7 4.Qe5+ Qe7 5.Bd1 Qxd1+ and Black is still fighting on.

**2...Qxh7**

2...Bxh7 3.Qf7+ Qh8 4.Qg6+ is also mate.

**3.Qg6+ Qg8 4.Qf7+ Qh7 5.Bxh6+! Qxh6 6.Qg6#.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 4.31

**Sturua-Xu Jun**

Istanbul 2000

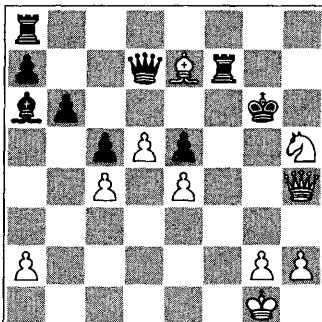


White is down a piece and his 'incarcerated'  $\mathbb{B}h7$  looks ugly, but well-developed GM COMPUTER EYES have discerned that this bishop is in fact ideally placed for the coming breakthrough!

**1.e6! fxe6**

Even pitching the  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  first doesn't help: 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  fxe6 (2... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$ ) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g8+!$   $\mathbb{B}xg8$  (4... $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  5. $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ ) 5. $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6. $\mathbb{W}e7\#$ .

**2. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g8+!$   $\mathbb{B}xg8$  4. $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5. $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$ .**



FCM 4.32

**Vyzhmanavin-Nikolenko**

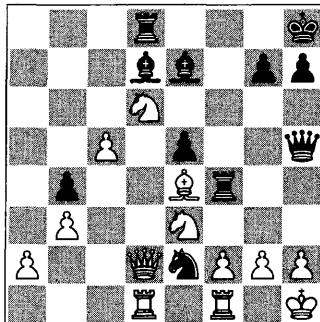
Moscow 1987



White is down an awful lot of material, and the obvious forcing moves are dead-ends. But an awkward-looking slow move, sacrificing both minor pieces, wins in all variations:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}f6!!$**  (threatening 2. $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ ) 1... $\mathbb{W}xe7$  (also losing are 1... $\mathbb{B}xf6$  2. $\mathbb{W}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3. $\mathbb{W}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ , or 1... $\mathbb{B}xe7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{B}xd7$  3. $\mathbb{W}g4+)$  **2. $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}x16$**  (3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ ) **4. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$** . A great feat of imagination!

FCM 4.33  
**Vokarev-Shabalov**  
Linares 2000



Black's last move ... $\mathbb{B}f4$  threatens both the bishop and the king with the stock corridor mate ... $\mathbb{W}xh2+!$  Unfortunately, the 'antipositional' reply **1.g4!** wins decisive material:

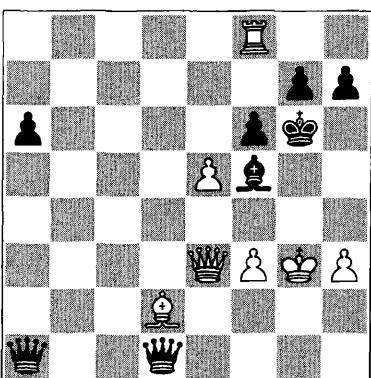
**1...Bxg4**

There is no turning back, e.g. 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{W}xg4$  (2... $\mathbb{Q}c3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$  4. $\mathbb{W}xd8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  5. $\mathbb{B}xd8+$   $\mathbb{W}g8$  6. $\mathbb{B}xg8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{B}xg4$  8.c6) 3.f3!+—, or 1... $\mathbb{W}h4$  2. $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$  winning routinely.

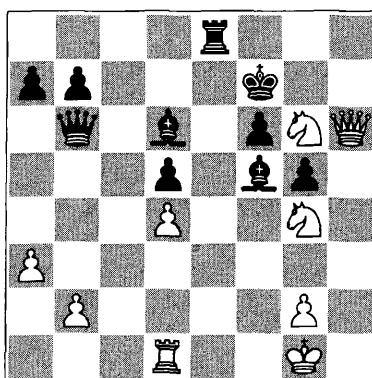
**2.Wxe2 Qg1+ 3.Bxg1 Wxe2 4.Qf7+ Qg8 5.Qxd8 1-0.** White's material edge and passed c-pawn are too much.



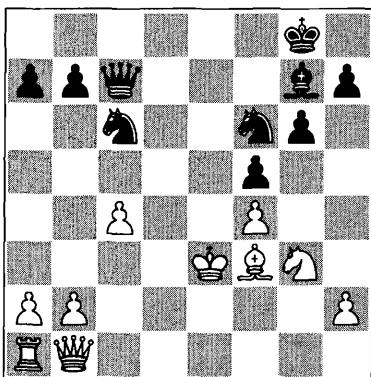
## Chapter 4 - Exercises



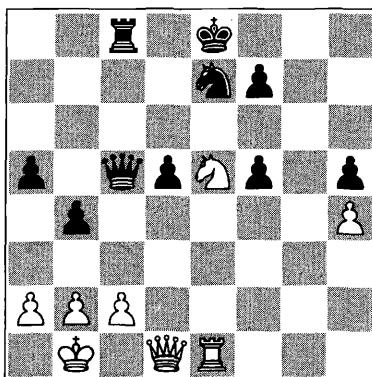
Ex 4.1  Find  
the amazing win!



Ex 4.2  Force  
the breakthrough

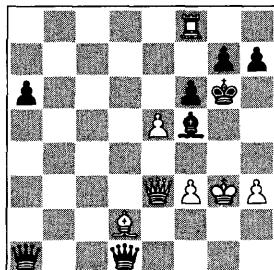


Ex 4.3  Round off  
the attack

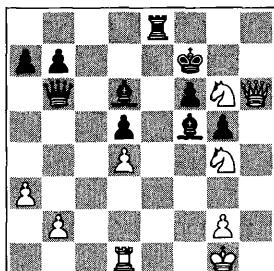


Ex 4.4  Find an opening

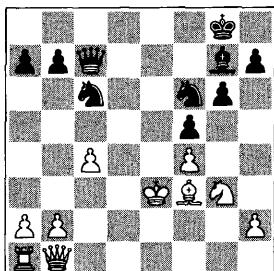
## Forcing Chess Moves



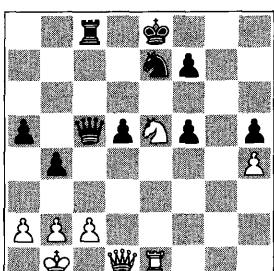
**Ex 4.1 Panfilov-Novozhenin** Soviet Union 1975  
A phenomenal surprise shot introduces a stock mating finale: 1.  $\mathbb{W}h6+!!$   $\mathbb{g}xh6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xf6+$   $\mathbb{g}g7$  2...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$   
3.  $\mathbb{B}xh6\#$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{g}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}f8\#$ .



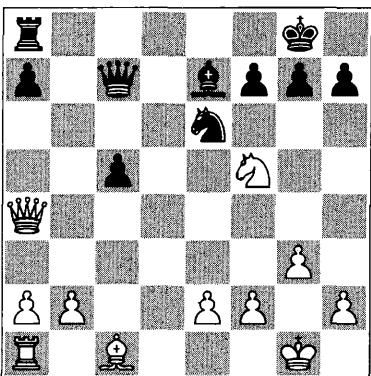
**Ex 4.2 Bologan-Kasimdzhanov** Pamplona 2002  
Black's attempt to construct a central haven after 1.  $\mathbb{W}h7+?$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}e1+$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  or to escape after 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  was blown up by the unorthodox attacking shot 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+!$   $\mathbb{B}xh8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$   
3.  $\mathbb{W}xg5+$  1-0 when the attack easily triumphs.



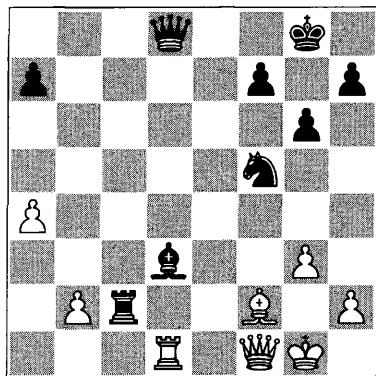
**Ex 4.3 Letelier Martner-Fischer** Leipzig 1960  
The point of Fischer's laser show was not the ponderous 1....  $\mathbb{Q}h6?$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f2!$  but the thunderous 1...  $\mathbb{W}xf4+!!$   
2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  Not worth the effort was 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}g4+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}e3+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$ . 2....  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ .



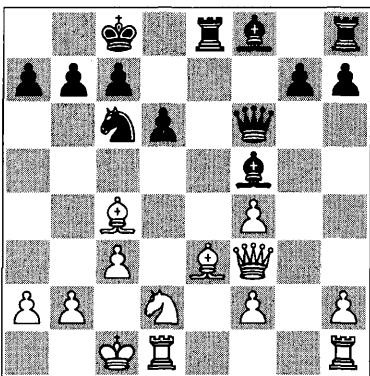
**Ex 4.4 Magem Badals-Vaisser** Escaldes 1998  
Every patzer knows how anti-positional it is to weaken your king's pawn cover, which made it exceptionally easy to overlook the winning shot 1.  $\mathbb{c}4!!$  with the diabolical double threat of 2.  $\mathbb{W}a4+$  winning the house, or 2.  $\mathbb{W}xh5$ . 1...  $\mathbb{b}3$  Attempting to bail out after 2.  $\mathbb{W}xb3$   $\mathbb{W}b4$ , but White declines the distraction. 2.  $\mathbb{W}xh5!$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf7$  With the strong threat 4.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$ .  
3...  $\mathbb{W}b4$  A last demonstration, but the black king is not long for this world, e.g. 3...  $\mathbb{W}f2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c6+!$   $\mathbb{B}xc6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$ . 4.  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  A strong forcing retreat. 4...  $\mathbb{B}xa2+$   
5.  $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  6.  $\mathbb{c}5$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}e6$  1-0.



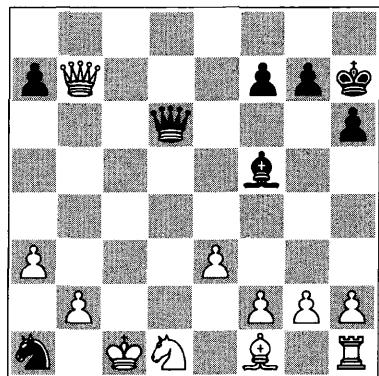
Ex 4.5 □ Find the killer blow



Ex 4.6 ■ Has White saved himself?

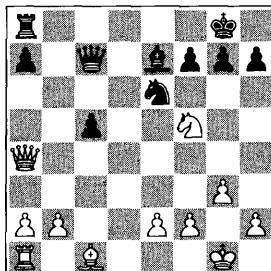


Ex 4.7 ■ Find the soft spot

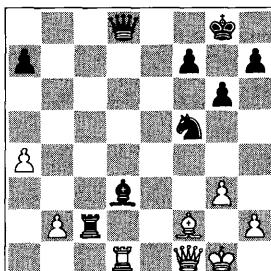


Ex 4.8 ■ Find the mate

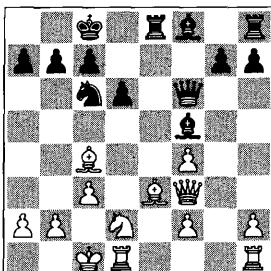
## Forcing Chess Moves



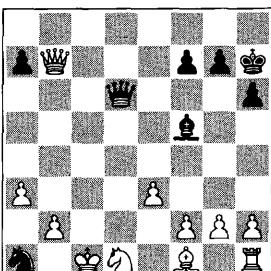
Ex 4.5 **Krogius-Martiushov** Soviet Union 1949  
Armed with both the knowledge of Chapter 1's stock fork tricks, and COMPUTER EYES which consider the impossible move first, it should now be child's play for the reader to find the surprise knockout 1.  $\mathbb{W}c6!$  1-0.



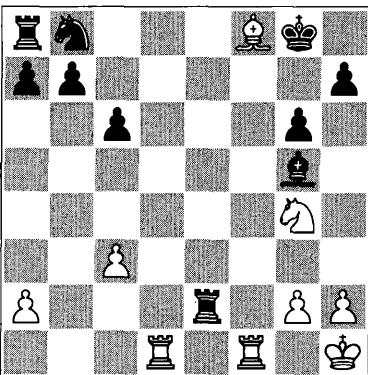
Ex 4.6 **Tischbierek-Avrukh** Biel 2004  
White relies on the pin-based tactic 1.  $\mathbb{W}f1$  to regain material, but has to resign after the pin-busting jaw-dropper 1...  $\mathbb{E}c1!$  0-1.



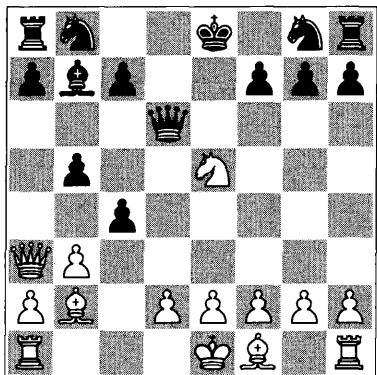
Ex 4.7 **Schulder-Boden** London 1860  
From a 'normal' position, White learns a lesson about the dangers of a slicing bishop on the h7-b1 diagonal against a  $\mathbb{Q}c1$ : 1...  $d5!$  This 'impossible' push wins a piece outright on account of 2.  $\mathbb{A}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}xc3+!!$  3.  $bxc3$   $\mathbb{Q}a3\#$ . A bonus STOCK BISHOP MATE for you to remember, which has been named after the black player since this game.



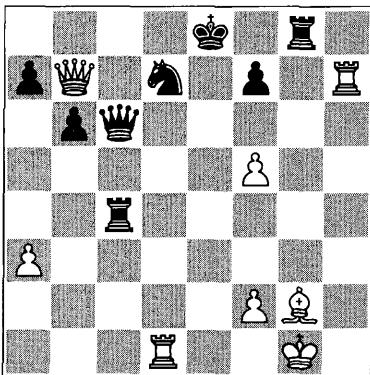
Ex 4.8 **Vaganian-Planinc** Hastings 1974/75  
The 'awkward'  $\mathbb{Q}a1$  became the star attacker after the 'impossible' 1...  $\mathbb{W}c7+!!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xc7$   $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$ . A crowning creative achievement by the inventive ex-factory worker from the former republic of Yugoslavia.



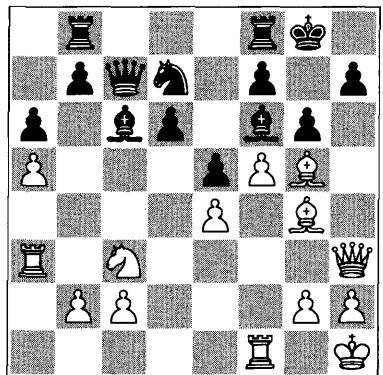
Ex 4.9  Eliminate  
the defender



Ex 4.10  Does White have  
everything  
covered?

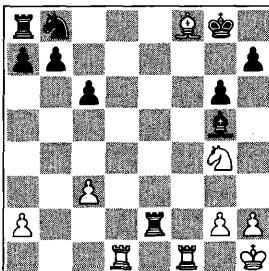


Ex 4.11  Two combinations,  
one idea

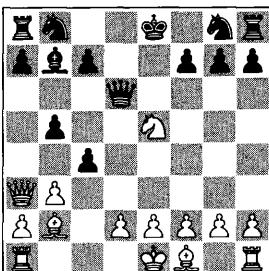


Ex 4.12  A surprise shot

## Forcing Chess Moves



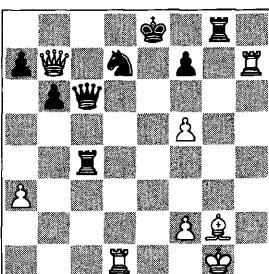
Ex 4.9 **Khalifman-Fishbein** New York 1998  
Black is not ready to concede anything after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$   $\mathbb{E}e8$ , but White pulls one more surprise arrow from his quiver: 1.  $\mathbb{h}4!$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  meets the same fate, while other tries allow a winning rook invasion on d8. 2.  $\mathbb{E}xd2!$   $\mathbb{E}xd2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{E}f7$  1-0 and mate on g7.



Ex 4.10 **Carlos Torre-Edward Lasker**

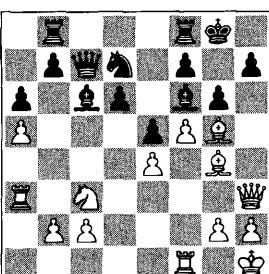
Chicago 1926

Instead of Lasker's 1...f6, the oddball shot 1...**c3!!** cuts White's supply lines, since two pieces hang on 2.  $\mathbb{E}xd6$   $cxd6$ . 0-1.



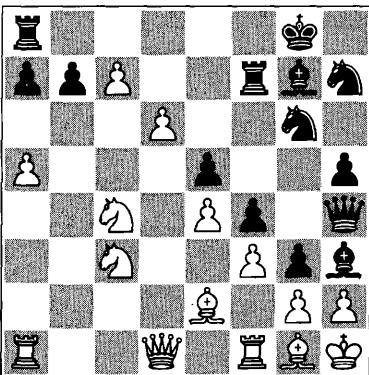
Ex 4.11 **Stein-Smyslov** Moscow 1972

A deeply calculated combination by the masterful two-time Soviet champ culminates in the smashing of the pin-based defense of c6: 1.  $\mathbb{W}xc6$  COMPUTER EYES will realize that switching the move order also works: 1.  $\mathbb{E}h8!!$   $\mathbb{W}xb7$  (or 1...  $\mathbb{W}xg2+$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg2$   $\mathbb{E}xh8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}a8+$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{E}xg8+$  and 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ . 1...  $\mathbb{E}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{E}h8!!$   $\mathbb{E}xh8$  Other moves allow 3.  $\mathbb{E}xg8+$  unpinning the  $\mathbb{Q}g2$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  Winning a piece. 1-0.

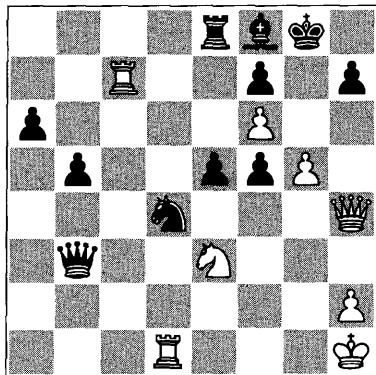


Ex 4.12 **Sherzer-Collier** Virginia 1991

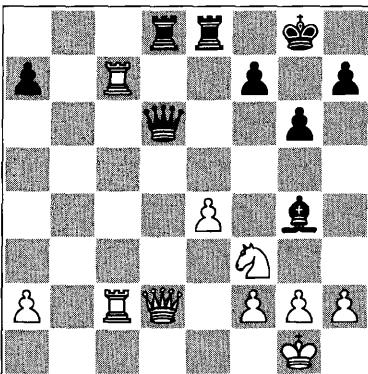
A 'shot from left field' provides the needed tempo to culminate White's mating attack: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}b5!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  2.  $\mathbb{fxg6}$   $\mathbb{fxg6}$  Black is always a move too slow, e.g. 2...  $\mathbb{hxg6}$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xf6!!$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$  (3...  $\mathbb{E}be8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h6$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$  5.  $\mathbb{E}h3$  (5.  $\mathbb{E}xg6!!$  also mates) 5...  $\mathbb{W}b1+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{E}xg6!!$   $fxg6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{E}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  7.  $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (7...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  8.  $\mathbb{W}e7#$ ) 8.  $\mathbb{E}f3+$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{E}f7$  On 3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  comes the picturesque stock queen sac 4.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  5.  $\mathbb{E}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4\#$ . 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6.  $\mathbb{E}xf6+$  1-0.



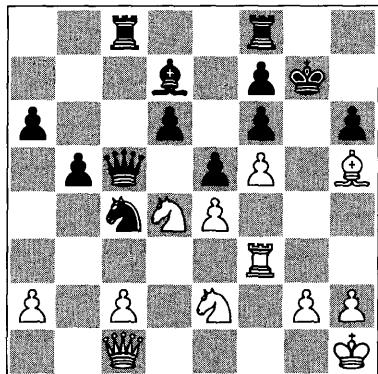
Ex 4.13 ■ Who comes first?



Ex 4.14 □ Attack with accuracy

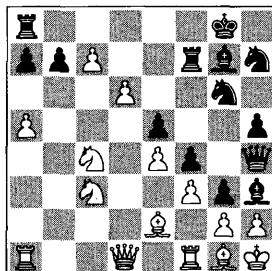


Ex 4.15 ■ Combine different motifs



Ex 4.16 □ Find the soft spot

## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 4.13 Ftacnik-Cvitan

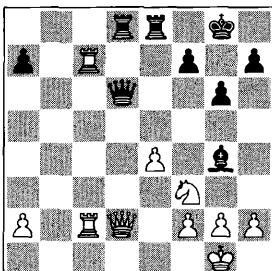
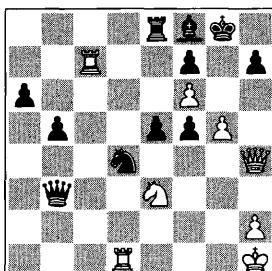
Germany Bundesliga 1997/98

In such positions, one must 'smell a rat' and expect a surprise, since Black can't survive unless he lands a decisive blow. 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg2+$ ! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  White's plan is to happily give back a rook to stave off mate after 2... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h1!$   $\mathbb{W}h3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ , but Black has a more forcing improvement in store, which you may have anticipated after reading Chapter 2: 2... $\mathbb{W}h3+!!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  g2#. 3... $\mathbb{Q}g5+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  g2#.

### Ex 4.14 Illescas Cordoba-Yermolinsky

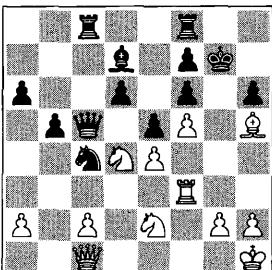
Madrid 1998

Surprise moves are commonplace when there is no room for half-measures: 1.g6!  $\mathbb{h}xg6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$  With the huge stock threat 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$  fxg6 4. $\mathbb{W}xh7#$ . 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$   $\mathbb{W}b1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  Not 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1??$   $\mathbb{W}xg1+!$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$   $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ . 4... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+!$  Great BRUTE FORCE PRECISION is still needed to salt the win. Not 5.fxg7  $\mathbb{Q}f4+$  and 8... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ . 5... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  6. $\mathbb{W}g5!$   $\mathbb{W}e4+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$  Not 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2??$   $\mathbb{W}f4+!$ , but now Black can safely resign in view of 7... $\mathbb{W}b1+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}b2+$  9. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ . **1-0**.



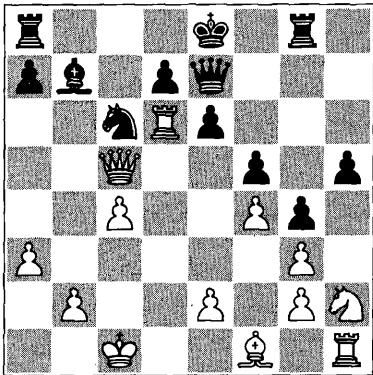
### Ex 4.15 Tal-Fridrik Olafsson Las Palmas 1975

He who lives by the shot must sometimes die by it! White's back rank seems amply covered, but after 1... $\mathbb{W}f4!!$  there was no answer to the threats ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  and ... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ . White tried 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  to escape after 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd2?$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$  and 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ , but after 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  there was still no recourse: 3. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  4. $\mathbb{W}xf3$  4.gxf3  $\mathbb{W}g5+$  spears a rook. 4... $\mathbb{W}d6!$  The winning FORCING RETREAT, double-attacking the rook and the back rank. **0-1**.

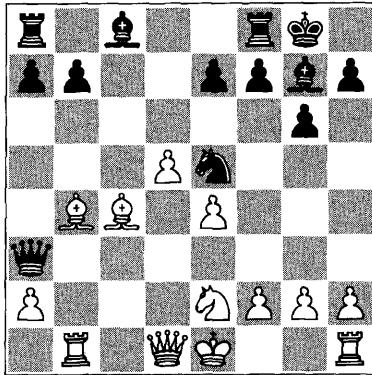


### Ex 4.16 Parma-Fischer (variation) Bled 1961

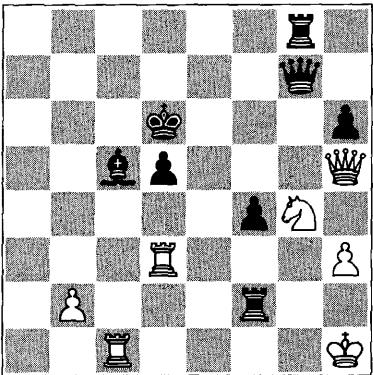
Sometimes it takes one last surprise forcing move to cap a winning combination: 1. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  On 2...fxg6, 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  mates on h6. So far so good, but where's the win? 3. $\mathbb{Q}h7+!!$  This unusual placement diverts Black from the defense of the h-pawn and forces mate after 3... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ . **1-0**.



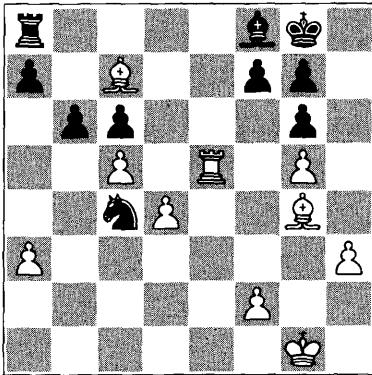
Ex 4.17 ■ Don't give White time



Ex 4.18 ■ Is the queen caught?

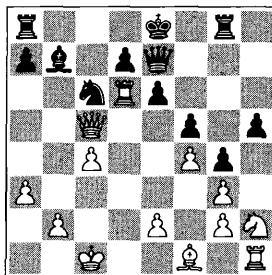


Ex 4.19 ■ Find the most forcing move

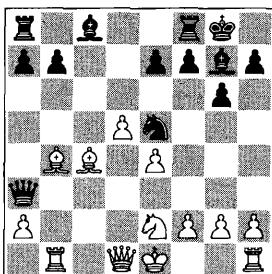


Ex 4.20 □ Find the breakthrough

## Forcing Chess Moves



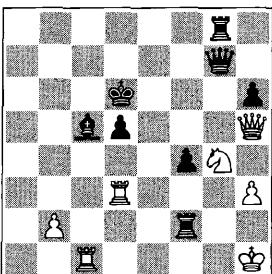
**Ex 4.17 Van Wely-Bologan** Wijk aan Zee 2004  
It's a rare day when White can afford to be three moves from developing his kingside deep in a middlegame, but Black must play energetically: 1... $\mathbb{Q}a5!$  Stronger than 1... $\mathbb{B}c8$  2.e4!, which is now prevented by the forcing threat ... $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ . 2. $\mathbb{W}b4$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4!$  3. $\mathbb{W}xb7$  White can't stomach the horrible ending 3. $\mathbb{B}d4$   $\mathbb{W}xb4$  4.axb4  $\mathbb{B}c8$ , but now three black attackers overwhelm his cloistered king. 3... $\mathbb{W}xd6!$  4. $\mathbb{W}xa8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5. $\mathbb{W}b7$   $\mathbb{B}b8$  0-1.



### Ex 4.18 Kuchta-Honfi

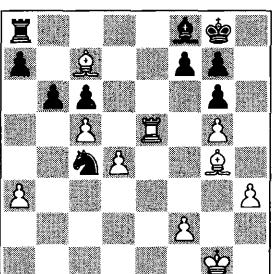
correspondence game, 1956

'IMPOSSIBLE MOVES' must always be considered, not only for creativity's sake, but because they will often elude your opponent, even in correspondence play! (Admittedly, this is less likely now that most postal players have literal 'COMPUTER EYES!') Black won a crucial center pawn and was able to consolidate after 1... $\mathbb{W}f3!!$  2.0-0 On 2.gxf3 comes the beautiful stock mate 2... $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$ . 2... $\mathbb{W}xe4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{B}d8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}h4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  0-1.



### Ex 4.19 Hermann-Braun

East Germany 1974  
The most forcing move on the board proves that Black's initiative is stronger: 1... $\mathbb{B}h2+!!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$  Or 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$ . 2... $\mathbb{W}xb2+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}xc1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}g1+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}f1+$  0-1.



### Ex 4.20 Kasparov-Adams

Linares 2002  
It's far from easy to stun top-level GM's with surprise moves. This was a trademark of Kasparov, arguably the greatest attacker ever. His calculations were so deep and accurate, the surprise was often indefensible by the time the defender saw it coming. 1.d5!! Amazingly, the deadly passed c-pawn can't be stopped. 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{C}xd5$  3.c6 f5 4.gxf6 gxf6 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xa3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  The passer and 'laser bishops' are so strong, that White can afford a detour to pick off a pawn. 7... $\mathbb{B}c8$  8.c7  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  9. $\mathbb{Q}b7$  1-0.

# Chapter 5 - Equal or Stronger Threats (EST's)

## Study Material

Last chapter we examined perhaps the most common human bias, the tendency to look only at 'normal moves' and overlook the surprise forcing moves which often decide games. In this chapter we turn our attention to another very harmful type of bias, the 'KNEE-JERK DEFENSIVE RESPONSE'. You can see this bias very clearly in beginners; when their queen is attacked, they immediately reach to move it, as if all other moves were suddenly outlawed! But even the strongest players are sometimes guilty of automatic defensive responses.

I have a very practical suggestion that will teach your COMPUTER EYES to overcome this bias. When analysis shows that the opponent has a concrete threat, no matter how strong, you must learn to first ask yourself, '**Can I make an Equal or Stronger Threat?**' Asking yourself this simple question consistently during games will help you find many more winning forcing moves, and change the way you think about positions.

The presence of an EST (we will use this abbreviation to save space) does not mean that it is the best move; as with any other forcing move, further analysis may show that it loses. However, like other forcing moves, EST's should be analyzed first before settling for defensive measures. Equal or stronger threats have both strategic and tactical advantages. Strategically, all things being equal, it is preferable to promote your own plan, versus responding to the opponent's agenda. When prosecuting an attack, every tempo is precious, and finding an EST that keeps the momentum going may be the difference between forcing a win and allowing consolidation. But even in 'innocuous' or unclear positions, it is crucial to stay in the habit of checking for equal or stronger threats first, rather than assuming that the opponent's threat must be stopped. A well-placed EST often changes the course of the battle.

Tactically, equal or stronger threats are often demonstrably the strongest moves in a given position, and are a critical component of COMPUTER EYES, as Fritz continually demonstrates. When computers shock us with completely unexpected moves, they are often of this variety: moves that ignore our threat completely, then demonstrate 2-3 moves hence that our apparent threat was irrelevant, as the position had already slipped away.

In this chapter we will consider two basic types of EQUAL OR STRONGER THREATS:

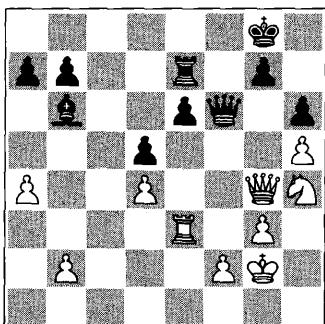
**A) Attacking EST's:** These equal or stronger threats ignore the opponent's threat, in the service of continuing one's own attack without loss of time. Bread and butter for the at-

## Forcing Chess Moves

tacker, these creative forcing moves may deny the enemy the one necessary tempo to consolidate and turn back the onslaught. The key theme is KEEPING THE INITIATIVE.

**B) Momentum-Changing EST's:** These are EST's which turn seemingly unclear positions decisively in one side's favor. At times they may even 'turn the tables', revealing that the apparent 'defender' is in fact winning by force.

### A) Attacking Equal or Stronger Threats

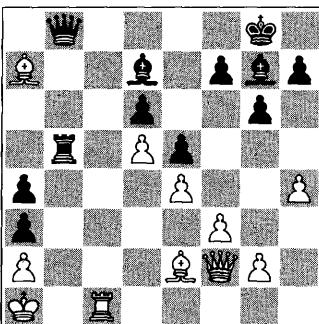


FCM 5.1  
**Speelman-Benko**  
Rotterdam 1987



Black apparently expected White to defend the d-pawn with 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{K}e8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$ , but the creative Englishman prefers to force Black to execute his 'threat':

**1.  $\mathbb{B}f3$   $\mathbb{W}xd4$**  On 1...  $\mathbb{W}g5$  comes the same crushing reply **2.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$**  The threatened mate-in-two trumps everything **2...  $\mathbb{K}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+$   $\mathbb{K}xe6$  4.  $\mathbb{B}f8+$   $\mathbb{K}h7$  5.  $\mathbb{B}h8\#$ .**

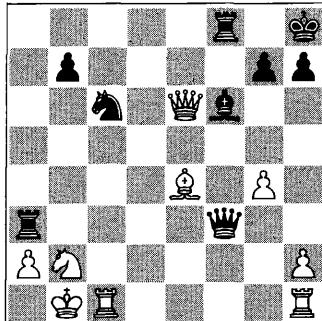


FCM 5.2  
**Delva-Levtchouk**  
Montreal 1982



Black's two major pieces are hanging, but he has prepared far more important business than defending the queen: **1...  $\mathbb{K}c5!!$**  Forcing resignation. The  $\mathbb{R}a7$  must fall to meet the dual mate threat on c1/b2.

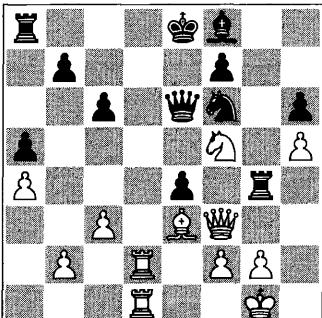
FCM 5.3  
**Movsesian-Sutovsky**  
 Kaskady 2002



Black's attack should win due to White's airy king, but there is plenty of wiggle room in lines such as 1... $\mathbb{W}e2?$  2. $\mathbb{B}c2$   $\mathbb{W}b5?$  3. $\mathbb{W}f5!$  forcing a queen swap. 1... $\mathbb{W}e3$  is a good move, but after putting in some brute force sweat equity, Black determines there's no better time than now to initiate decisive action: **1... $\mathbb{A}xa2!!$  2. $\mathbb{B}c2$**  There is no hope in 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{B}xb2+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{A}a8+$ ; 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa2$   $\mathbb{W}e2!$  and 3... $\mathbb{A}a8+$ ; or 2. $\mathbb{W}xa2$   $\mathbb{W}xe4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2+$  4. $\mathbb{W}xb2$   $\mathbb{A}a8+$  and Black comes out a piece ahead. **2... $\mathbb{B}xb2+$**  Even stronger was 2... $\mathbb{A}a1+!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$   $\mathbb{A}a8+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}a3$ . **3. $\mathbb{B}xb2$   $\mathbb{W}a3$  4. $\mathbb{W}b3$**  Desperation, because the king flaps slowly in the breeze on 4. $\mathbb{B}xb7$   $\mathbb{W}a1+$  or 4. $\mathbb{B}a2$   $\mathbb{W}b4+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$ . **4... $\mathbb{B}xb2$  5. $\mathbb{W}xb2$   $\mathbb{W}e3$  0-1** The extra pawn and naked white king decide.



FCM 5.4  
**Horowitz-Flohr**  
 USA-Soviet Union radio match 1945

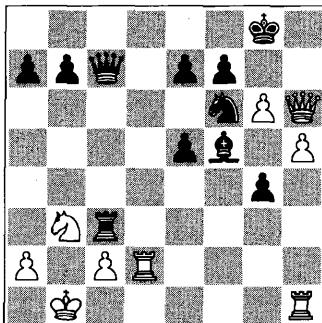


...e4 hitting the queen was the only try to justify Black's fractured position, but the American uncorked the stronger threat

**1. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{B}xg2+$**

The key point is the winning fork after 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2. $\mathbb{W}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ .

**2. $\mathbb{W}xg2$   $\mathbb{W}xf5$  3. $\mathbb{B}d8+$   $\mathbb{B}xd8$  4. $\mathbb{B}xd8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5. $\mathbb{W}g3$  1-0.**



FCM 5.5  
Lobron-Miles  
Biel 1986



With both kings under siege, White's extra exchange is less important than who comes first. Being tied to c2 would be woeful for White, but a formidable EST forces Black to cash in there at the wrong time:

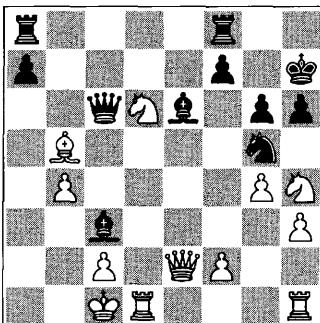
**1.♖hd1**

Threatening back rank mate.

**1...♕xc2+**

Blocking the d-file cedes a deadly check on h7 after 1...♕d7 2.♖xd7! Black could try 1...fxg6 to avoid the coming blow on g6, but then the white rook returns to the h-file with crushing effect: 2.hxg6 ♕xc2+ 3.♖xc2 ♕xc2 4.♖h1! with a stock mate on h8.

**2.♖xc2 ♕xc2 3.gxf7+ ♕xf7 4.♖g6#** Picking off the ♕c2. **1-0.**



FCM 5.6  
Blatny-Deng Kong Liang  
Hawaii 1998

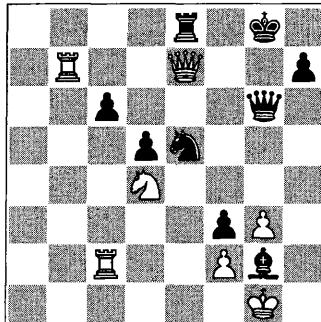


A quick look at the relative king positions tells the story: something has gone horribly wrong for White here. Black cuts right to the chase with the whimsical **1...a5** **2.♕xc6 axb4!**, proving again that mate is worth more than the queen. **0-1.**

FCM 5.7

**Curt Hansen-Hillarp Persson**

Malmö/Copenhagen 2004



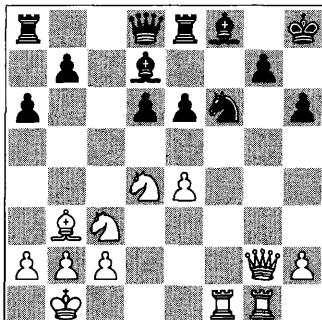
White can't afford to dally as he could even lose after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c7?$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$ . A deadly EST joining one more piece to battle pushes his attack over the top: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  Hoping to evict the white queen. Clearly, on 1...  $\mathbb{B}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$  wins, while on 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h3$  comes the breakthrough 2.  $\mathbb{B}xc6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  (3...  $\mathbb{W}xh6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xe8+$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$  and 5.  $\mathbb{W}xe8$ . 1...  $h5!$ ? may be Black's best chance. 2.  $\mathbb{B}b8!$  with the elegant conclusion 2...  $\mathbb{B}xb8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe5+$ . 1-0.

◆ ◆

FCM 5.8

**Spassky-Petrosian**

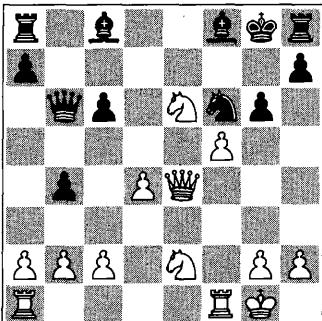
Moscow 1969



Attacking the Sicilian requires gusto!

**1.e5! dx<sub>e</sub>5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$**  A forceful attacking EST dislodging the lynchpin of Black's defense, the  $\mathbb{Q}f6$ . **2...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$**  Otherwise mate crashes through on g7 or g8: 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ ? 3.  $\mathbb{B}xf8+$ !  $\mathbb{B}xf8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$ ; 2...  $exd4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{B}e7$  (3...  $gxf6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{W}g6!$  with stock mate on h7 or g8. **3.  $\mathbb{W}g6 exd4$**  All roads lead to mate or worse: 3...  $\mathbb{W}h4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}h3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$  followed by  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ , with  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ ,  $\mathbb{B}xf8+$ , and  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$  coming; 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xf4$   $exf4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f3!!$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}eg5!$  **4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5! hxg5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xh5+ \mathbb{Q}g8$  6.  $\mathbb{W}f7+ \mathbb{Q}h7$  7.  $\mathbb{B}f3 e5$  8.  $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ .**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 5.9

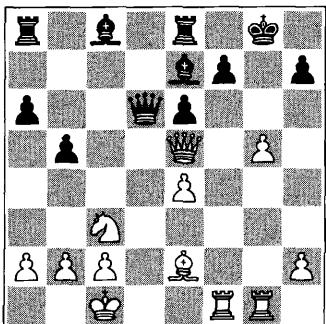
**Sutovsky-Grosar**

Pula 2000



Black can resist the attack in lines such as 1.  $\mathbb{W}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$  4.  $g4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  7.  $\mathbb{W}xg4$   $\mathbb{W}b5$ , but White has no intention of moving the queen with a much stronger attacking option at hand:

**1. fxg6!  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f5!$  1-0.** On 4...  $\mathbb{W}b7$  White has a pleasant choice of mates: 5.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#$ , or 5.  $\mathbb{W}f7+$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$  6.  $gxf7\#$ .



FCM 5.10

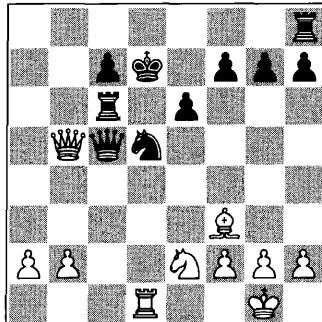
**Ujtumen-Miagmarsuren**

Mongolia 1975



Black relishes a complex Sicilian ending, but White has other ideas: **1. g6!! fxg6** A sinking feeling for Black; if 1...  $\mathbb{W}xe5$  2.  $gxf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ ; or 1...  $hxg6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h5 e5$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+!$   $fxg6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$  and 5.  $\mathbb{W}xe8$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$  as in the game. **2.  $\mathbb{W}h5!$**  No trade! The sudden onslaught against Black's weak points g6, h7, f7 is unbearable. **2... e5** 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $hxg6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ , mating. **3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7!$**  The crowning idea! This important stock shot forces a winning breakthrough on h7. **3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+ \mathbb{Q}f8$  (4...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  1-0.** After 5...  $\mathbb{W}xg6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xg6$ , there is no good answer to the tremendous threats  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  and  $\mathbb{Q}d5$ .

FCM 5.11  
**Ziatdinov-Shabalov**  
 Toronto 1998

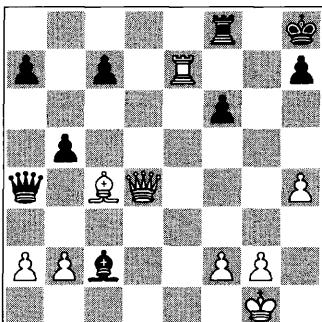


Black tries to buy one more tempo to consolidate his extra material with ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ , but he doesn't get it, thanks to an EST:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$   $\mathbb{W}xb5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xc6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d7$  1-0.**

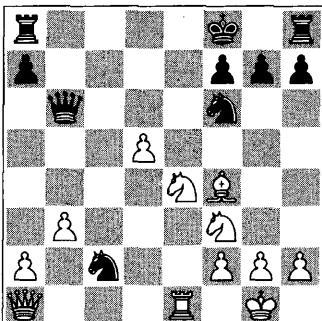
◆ ◆

FCM 5.12  
**Littlewood-Roth**  
 Havana 1966



Black's frantic ... $b5$  was understandable but naive, allowing the deadly EST **1. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$** , with a stock mate on f6 after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  or 1.... $\mathbb{W}b4$  2. $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$ .

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 5.13

Ni Hua-Zhao Jun

Yongchuan 2003



White is bent on attacking the black king, but will he have enough wood? A devastating EST shows that all is in order:

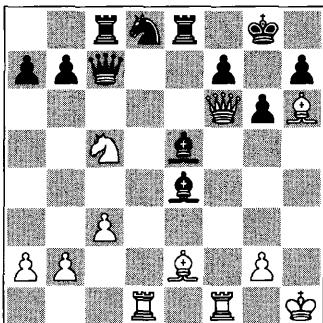
**1.♘xf6!! ♖d8**

Long lines lead to Black's demise: 1...♝xa1 2.♗d7+; 1...♛xf6 2.♛xf6 gxf6 3.♕h6+ ♜g8 4.♗h4! with a winning edge; 1...gxf6 2.♕h6+ ♜g8 3.♖e4!; 1...♛d8 2.♜e8+! ♛xe8 3.♕d6+ ♛e7 4.♕xe7+ ♜xe7 5.♕e5+ mating soon.

**2.♘e5!!**

A second profound EST decides the battle. Amazingly, there is no answer to 3.♗ed7+.

**2...♛xf6** (2...♝b7 3.♗ed7+ ♜xd7 4.♜e8# was the point) **3.♗d7+ ♜xd7 4.♛xf6 ♜xe1** (or 4...gxf6 5.♕h6+ and ♜e8#) **5.♛c6 1-0** on 5...♜e7 6.♛c8+ and 7.♕d6+. A classy display of selection, calculation, and board sight; i.e., COMPUTER EYES.



FCM 5.14

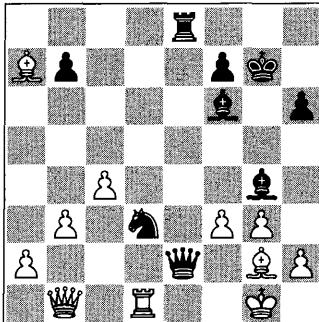
Beyer-Wade

New Zealand 1940



Black chose a catastrophic way to try address White's threat on g7, falling for the EST **1.♘xe4! ♕xf6 2.♘xf6+ ♜h8** when the final point was the 100% FORCING surprise move **3.♕g7+! ♜xg7 4.♘xe8+ 1-0**.

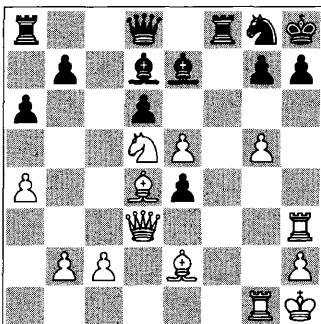
FCM 5.15  
**Azmaiparashvili-Lastin**  
 Tripoli 2004



The probability that a threat can be ignored, in favor of something better, certainly increases when one has a strong initiative. So Black eschews 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$  (though the EST 2... $\mathbb{Q}b4!$  would still suffice), preferring the neater counter threat 1... $\mathbb{Q}e1!$  2. $\mathbb{E}xe1$   $\mathbb{W}xe1+$  3. $\mathbb{W}xe1$   $\mathbb{E}xe1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{E}a1!$  0-1. It's all over on 5. $f.xg4$   $\mathbb{E}xa2+$ .



FCM 5.16  
**Tukmakov-Panno**  
 Buenos Aires 1970



White allowed ... $fxe4$  attacking rook and queen, diabolically assessing that the coming attack on h7 and g7 is worth more than the lady! He could start a promising attack with 1. $\mathbb{E}xh7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2. $\mathbb{W}xe4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  3. $\mathbb{W}h4+$ , but there is even better:

**1.e6!!  $exd3$**

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  comes the dashing refutation 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ , mating soon.

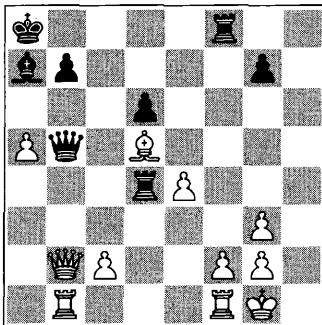
**2. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$**

Sadly forced! On 2... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{E}xh7\#$ , or 2... $h6$  3. $gxh6$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  4. $\mathbb{E}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5. $\mathbb{E}xg7\#$ . On 2... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  either capture wins; I invite the reader to exercise his or her COMPUTER EYES and work out the variations.

**3. $gxh6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4. $\mathbb{E}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5. $\mathbb{E}gxg7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  6. $\mathbb{E}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  7. $\mathbb{E}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  8. $\mathbb{E}h8\#$ .**

## B) Momentum-Changing Equal or Stronger Threats

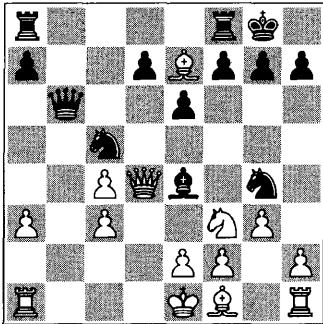
These are critical positions in which an EST alters the course of the game. In some cases, the apparent defender may suddenly TURN THE TABLES and launch a decisive blow:



FCM 5.17  
**NN-Rossolimo**  
Paris 1957



Black is three(!) pawns down and can't defend b7, but the Franco-American attacking genius uncorks the mind-blowing EST 1... $\mathbb{Q}d1$  threatening mate in two! Preposterously, there is no way out: 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb7+$  (2. $\mathbb{Q}xb5 \mathbb{Q}xf2+ 3.\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}h8\#$ ) 2... $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3.c4 There is no solace in 3. $\mathbb{Q}bx1$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ , or 3. $\mathbb{Q}fxd1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$  and ... $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ . 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  (not 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf2+?$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$ ) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  If 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+ 5.\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ , but now comes a stock double-rook mate: 4... $\mathbb{Q}fxf1+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}h1\#$ .

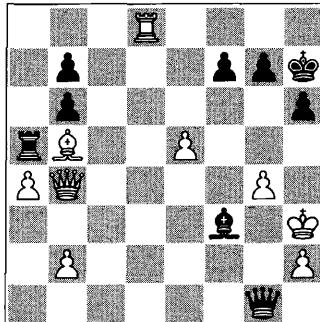


FCM 5.18  
**Van Wely-Seirawan**  
Wijk aan Zee 1995



White has provoked a tactical crisis to justify his risky underdevelopment. Black is ready with a punishing attack: 1... $\mathbb{Q}b2!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}d1$  Forced! 2... $\mathbb{Q}b3!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  (or the appealing double check 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f3\#!$ ) 5... $\mathbb{Q}a1+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  and Black won the ending 0-1.

FCM 5.19  
**Forintos-Tomovic**  
 Budapest 1957



White's king looks much more imperiled, but his 'spite checks' prove decisive!

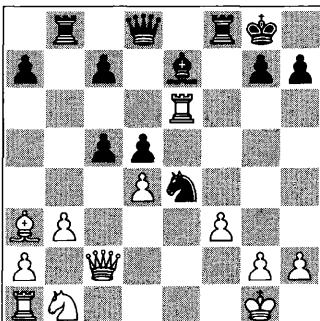
1.  $\mathbb{Q}d3+$  (or also 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+!$  with the same idea) 1...  $g6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$   
 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+ \mathbb{Q}h8$

Black undoubtedly saw these moves and expected a perpetual, but White delved one forcing move deeper:

5.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}h7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+!$  Ouch! 6...  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ .



FCM 5.20  
**Tkach-James Anderson**  
 Watertown 1996

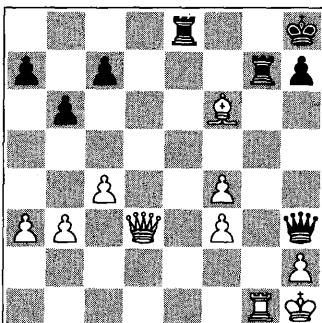


Black seems to be under pressure, but takes the helm with a cool forcing EST exposing White's vulnerability:

1. ...  $\mathbb{Q}d6!!$  (not 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ ) 2.  $fxe4$

The dual threats ...  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  and ...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  are tremendous. Clearly losing are 2.  $dxc5$  (or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$ ) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xh2+!$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e1+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$ ; and 2.  $g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  3.  $dxc5$  (3.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}e3+$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}e8--$ ) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3+!$  5.  $hxg3$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#$ .

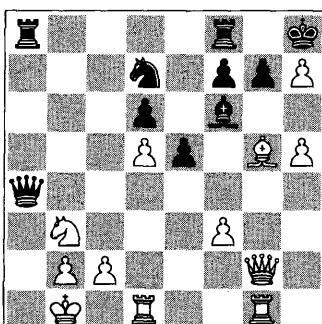
2. ...  $\mathbb{Q}xh2+!$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e1+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}f1$  with mate coming. 0-1.



FCM 5.21  
Uhlmann-Dely  
Budapest 1962



Some EST's turn the tables much more abruptly. White was no doubt feeling very cocky about the threat on g7 when down dropped the stock double rook mate 1... $\mathbb{W}g2+$  2. $\mathbb{H}xg2$   $\mathbb{H}e1+$  0-1



FCM 5.22  
Sax-Gallagher  
Baden 1999



With g7 falling, Black appears ready to fold, but COMPUTER EYES see a different picture:

1... $\mathbb{Q}c5!!$  2. $\mathbb{H}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}a2+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}xb3+$  4. $cxb3$   $\mathbb{H}fc8+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}a5+!!$

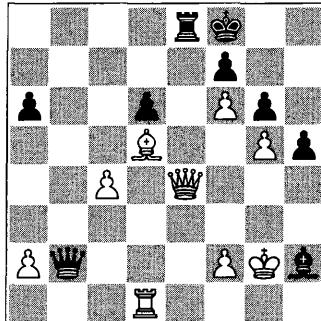
The amazing point. Black wants much more than the approximately equal ending after 5... $\mathbb{W}xb2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}xg2$ .

6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}b6+!$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

Not 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{W}b4+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  (8. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{W}f4#$ ) 8... $\mathbb{W}f4+$  9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}d4+$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{H}c2+$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}e3+$ , or 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}b4+!$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}f4+$ .

7... $\mathbb{H}c2+$  8. $\mathbb{H}d2$   $\mathbb{H}xd2+$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{W}d4+$  10. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  (or 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}xb2+$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}d4+)$  10... $\mathbb{H}c8+$  11. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}d3+$  12. $\mathbb{Q}a2$   $\mathbb{H}a8\#$ . An impressive display of brute force calculation and the power of the EST to turn the game.

FCM 5.23  
**Filippov-Van Wely**  
 Tripoli 2004



In a murky tableau White uses an EST to expose the Achilles' heel of Black's position on e7:

**1.  $\mathbb{H}b1!$   $\mathbb{W}d2$**

1...  $\mathbb{H}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{H}xb2$  wins a piece, while 1...  $\mathbb{W}e5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$   $\mathbb{A}xe5$  3.  $\mathbb{H}b7$  wins f7 and more.

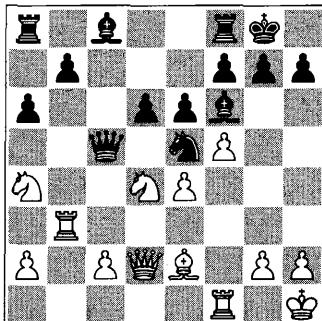
**2.  $\mathbb{H}b8!!$**

The nasty point is 2...  $\mathbb{H}xb8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e7+$  and mate, but Black's forced reply only forestalls the invasion.

2...  $\mathbb{A}e5$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  (on 4...  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ , 5.  $\mathbb{W}b7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}c8+$  mates shortly) 5.  $\mathbb{W}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  6.  $\mathbb{W}a7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  (6...  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ ) 7.  $\mathbb{W}b8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e8+ 1-0$ . Opposite colored bishops favor the attacker as seen here – the black bishop was a bystander.



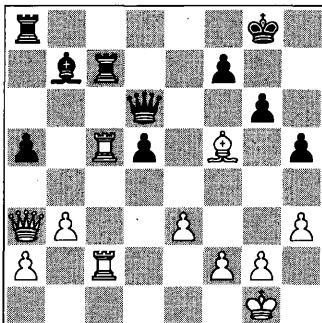
FCM 5.24  
**Matov-Fischer**  
 Vinkovci 1968



White wants to execute a rook lift and attack the king after 1...  $\mathbb{W}c7$  2.  $\mathbb{R}h3$ , but Black prefers to demonstrate a forced win with a momentum-changing EST: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

**2.  $\mathbb{W}d3$**  Also dropping lumber are 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$ .

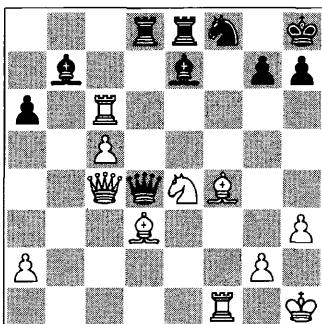
**2...  $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $b5$  0-1** A nice array of winning double attacks.



FCM 5.25  
Van der Sterren-  
Gildardo Garcia  
Reykjavik 1994



Both sides may have aimed for this position; Black, because he wins after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}d3??$   $\mathbb{Q}ac8$ , and White, because he saw through the position with the haymaker 1.  $\mathbb{E}xa5!$   $\mathbb{W}xa3$  2.  $\mathbb{E}xa3$   $\mathbb{E}xa3$  (or 2...  $\mathbb{E}xc2$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xa8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xa8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  winning) 3.  $\mathbb{E}xc7$   $gxf5$  4.  $\mathbb{E}xb7$   $\mathbb{E}xa2$  5.  $\mathbb{E}b4$  1-0.



FCM 5.26  
Gulko-Ardaman  
Hawaii 1998



One can hardly fault Black for expecting his threats to prevail, but a magical EST clarifies all in White's favor, showing the COMPUTER EYES that separate elite GM's from the pack:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}d6!!$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$**

White keeps the exchange on 1...  $\mathbb{E}xd6$  2.  $cxd6$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xc4$ .

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4!$**

The EST 2...  $\mathbb{E}xc6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$  lets White calmly leave a whole rook hanging!

**2...  $\mathbb{E}xd6$**

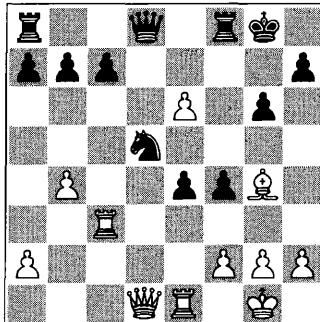
If now 2...  $\mathbb{E}xd6$  3.  $cxd6$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  4.  $dxe7$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  and  $\mathbb{E}f8+$  is strongest.

**3.  $\mathbb{E}xd6$**

A 'hook-up' theme rescues the material decisively.

**3...  $\mathbb{E}c8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  5.  $\mathbb{E}xa6$   $\mathbb{E}xc5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  1-0.**

FCM 5.27  
**Yedidia-Edelman**  
 Parsippany 1998



In a topical theoretical line, the New England IM made an important discovery: a momentum-turning EST that puts Black out of business.

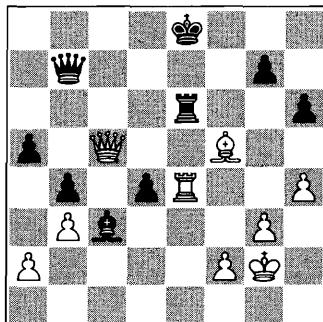
**1.e7!! ♜xe7**

Clearly the only move.

**2.♗b3+ ♕g7 3.♖d1 ♗e8 4.♕xc7 1-0.** The attack against the exposed king ( $\mathbb{W}c3+$  and  $\mathbb{A}e6+$ ) and the seventh rank is too strong.

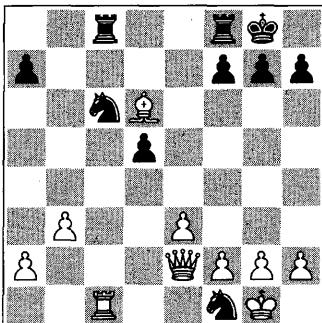


FCM 5.28  
**Karpov-Kasparov (variation)**  
 Moscow 1985



In this wild variation from a World Championship match, the clever pin of the  $\mathbb{A}e4$  doesn't save Black due to an interpolating EST:

**1.♗c4! ♜xe4 2.♗g8+ skewering the queen after 2...♕e7 3.♗xg7+. 1-0.**



FCM 5.29  
Crisovan-Naef  
Lucerne 1953



Black's threats prove stronger in this tactical maelstrom:

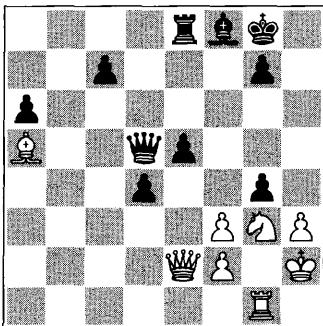
**1...♘d4! 2.♗b2**

Forking themes are White's undoing in the lines 2.exd4 ♜xc1 3.♗b2? ♘g3+! 4.♗xc1 ♘e2+; and 2.♗xf1 ♜xc1 3.♗xc1? ♘e2+.

**2...♜xc1 3.h3**

3.f3 generates another fork by the dancing knights: 3...♘xe3+ 4.♗f2 ♘d1+!

**3...♘e2+! 4.♔h1 ♘fg3+ 5.♔h2 ♜h1#.**



FCM 5.30  
Judit Polgar-Ivan Sokolov  
Hoogeveen 2003



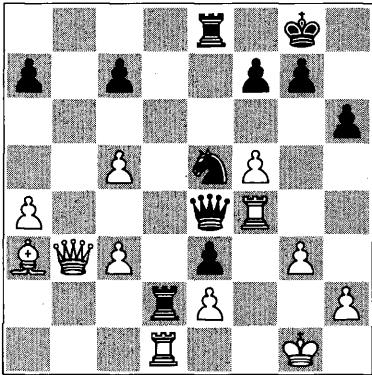
Black's counter threats look formidable, indeed, but a wonderfully inspired, calm EST reveals that he's on the ropes:

**1.♘e4!! ♜e6**

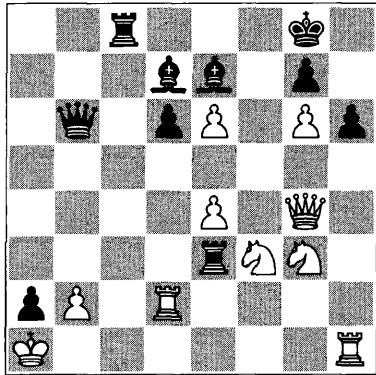
Black's position shrivels like a popped balloon after 1...♗xa5 2.♗c4+ ♔h8 3.♗xg4; 1...gxfs 2.♗xf3 ♗xa5? (2...♗f7 is more tenacious) 3.♗h5! ♜e6 4.♗g5; or 1...d3 (maybe best) 2.♗d2, picking off the g-pawn with a big edge (2...gxfs?? 3.♗f6+).

**2.♗xg4!** With a huge positional and slight material edge due to Black's vulnerable king and the mastery of the tremendous ♘e4 over Black's pawns; 2...♗xa5?? 3.♗c4; or 2...c5 3.♗d2 with a powerful blockade. **1-0.**

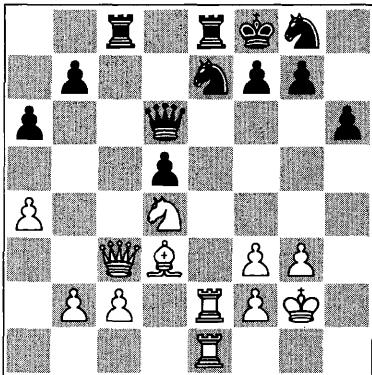
## Chapter 5 - Exercises



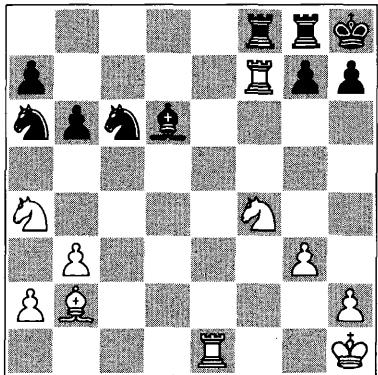
Ex 5.1 ■ Find the EST



Ex 5.2 ■ Who comes first?

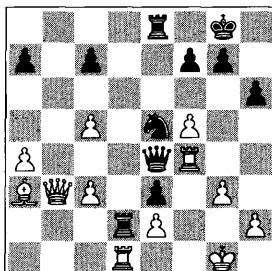


Ex 5.3 □ Should the queen move?

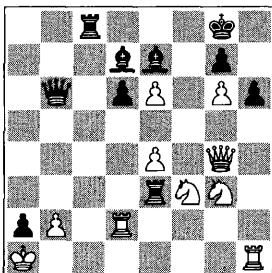


Ex 5.4 □ Is White forced to simplify?

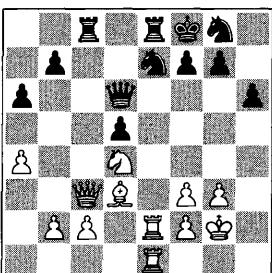
## Forcing Chess Moves



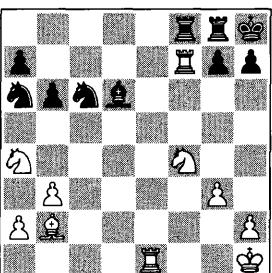
Ex 5.1 **Stier-Jarnuczak** Pinneberg 1994  
White's survival chances changed from slim to zero after the accurate EST 1... $\mathbb{E}xe2!!$  2. $\mathbb{E}xe4$  Otherwise 2... $\mathbb{W}g2\#$ ; or 2. $\mathbb{W}d5 \mathbb{E}e1+!$  2... $\mathbb{Q}f3+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{E}f2\#$  Or 3. $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{E}xh2\#$ .



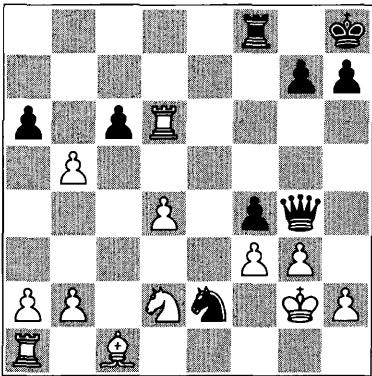
Ex 5.2 **Vydeslaver-Avrukh** Israel 2002  
At first blush the threat  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  looks decisive, but Black finds an impressive resource 'reminding' White that his king is in fact more exposed: 1... $\mathbb{E}ec3!!$  2. $bxc3$  2. $exd7$  leads to mate after 2... $\mathbb{E}c1+$  3. $\mathbb{E}xc1 \mathbb{E}xc1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xa2 \mathbb{W}a6+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b3 \mathbb{W}c4+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}a3 \mathbb{W}a1\#$ ; while b2 falls on 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  (or 2. $\mathbb{E}dd1$ )  $\mathbb{E}c2$ , and the black attack is too strong after 2. $e5 \mathbb{E}c1+$  3. $\mathbb{E}xc1 \mathbb{E}xc1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}a2 \mathbb{W}a5+$ . 2... $\mathbb{E}b8$  3. $\mathbb{E}xa2 \mathbb{W}b3!$  4. $\mathbb{E}c1 \mathbb{E}xe6!$  winning the queen for paltry compensation. 0-1.



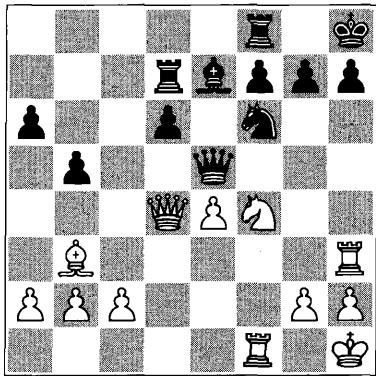
Ex 5.3 **Emms-Lars Bo Hansen** Esbjerg 2000  
The 'routine' ... $\mathbb{E}c8$  was greeted by the not-so-routine EST 1. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$  cashing in on White's pressure: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  Mate on g7 was threatened, and 1... $\mathbb{W}g6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xe7 \mathbb{Q}xe7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe7!$  or 1... $\mathbb{W}f6$  2. $\mathbb{W}xf6 gxf6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  stank. 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$  d4 The same fate befalls 2... $\mathbb{E}cd8$ . 3. $\mathbb{E}xe8+$   $\mathbb{E}xe8$  4. $\mathbb{E}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  5. $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  6. $\mathbb{W}xb7$  1-0.



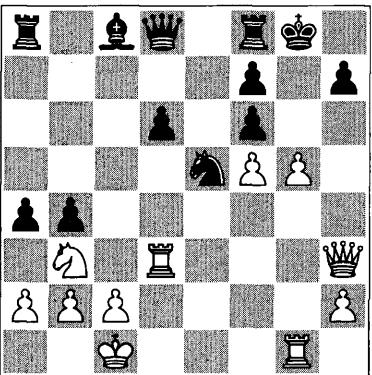
Ex 5.4 **Furman-Witkowski**  
Polanica Zdroj 1967  
As in the prior position, Black relies on the 'normal'  $\mathbb{E}f8$  to ease the pressure in this queenless middlegame, but COMPUTER EYES notice that the critical moment has arrived with the EST 1. $\mathbb{E}e4!$ , mopping up with the stock threat 1... $\mathbb{E}xf7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$   $hxg6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$ , or 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$   $\mathbb{E}xg7$  3. $\mathbb{E}xf8+$  1-0.



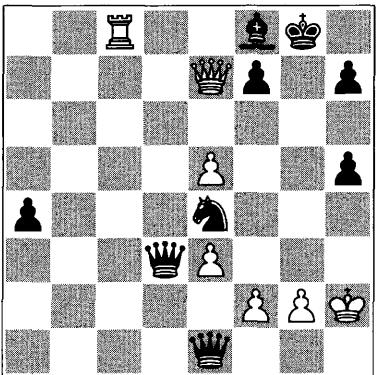
Ex 5.5 ■ Should Black retreat?



Ex 5.6 □ Should White exchange?

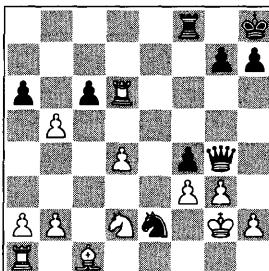


Ex 5.7 □ Don't give Black time



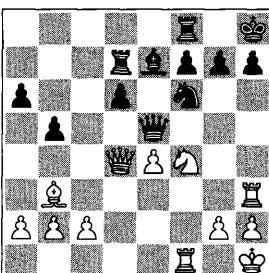
Ex 5.8 ■ Who comes first?

## Forcing Chess Moves



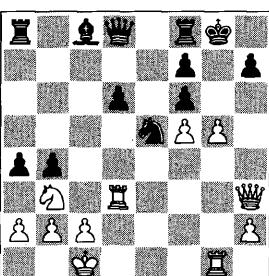
### Ex 5.5 Ljubojevic-Nunn Szirak 1987

White hopes to flounder on with g4 and  $\mathbb{Q}e4$ , but the shocking ATTACKING EST **1...fxg3!! 2.fxg4**  $\mathbb{B}f2+$  **3.Qh3**  $\mathbb{B}xh2\#$  retires that notion. In high-level play, the hours of technical work saved by such forcing moves are invaluable, conserving precious energy for the next battle.



### Ex 5.6 Wade-Boxall Middleton-on-Sea 1953

**1.Qxf7 1-0** A knockout punch from left field. The threat  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$  costs Black decisive material.



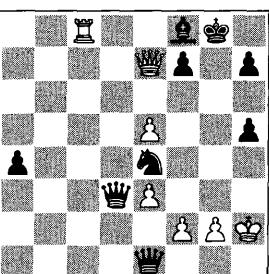
### Ex 5.7 Kengis-Nevednichy Moscow 1979

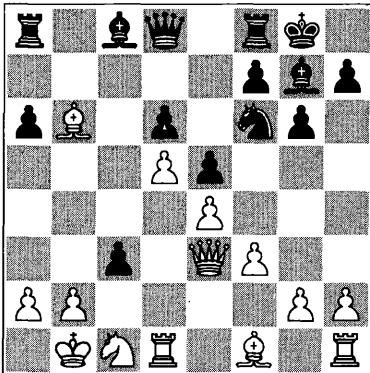
The sharp Latvian has already sacked a piece, and  $1.gxf6+??$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  **2.Wh6**  $\mathbb{W}xf6$  doesn't cut it. But he can create a threat that outweighs all others: **1.Wh6!**  $\mathbb{Q}xd3+$  **1...Qh8** **2.Bh3**  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  **3.g6!**  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  (or **3...Qxg6** **4.Wxg6!**) **4.Wxh7#.** **2.Qb1** Not clear is **2.Qd2?!**  $\mathbb{W}b6$  **3.Qg2**  $\mathbb{W}f2+!$  **4.Qxf2**  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  **5.gxf6**  $\mathbb{Q}e4+$  and **6...Qxf6**, and **2.cxd3??**  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  **3.g6**  $\mathbb{W}fxg6$  **4.fxg6**  $\mathbb{W}c7+$  **5.Qb1**  $\mathbb{W}g7$  even loses! **2...Qh8** **2...fxg5** **3.f6** and Black has to give the queen. **3.g6 1-0** The threats against h7 and g7 are too much (**3...fxg6** **4.fxg6**  $\mathbb{W}e7$  **5.g7+**).

### Ex 5.8 Mikhalkishin-Topalovic

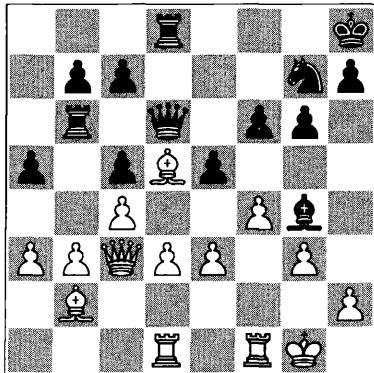
Varazdin 2003

Black calmly stares down the barrel of a gun and demonstrates with BRUTE FORCE ANALYSIS that his threats prevail: **1...Wh1+!** **2.Qxh1**  $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$  **3.Qg1** Or **3.Qh2**  $\mathbb{Q}g4+$  **4.Qh3**  $\mathbb{W}xe3+$  **5.Qh4**  $\mathbb{W}h6$  or also **5...We1+** **6.Qxh5**  $\mathbb{W}xe5+$ . **3...Wb1+!** **4.Qh2** **4.Qxf2**  $\mathbb{W}f5+$ . **4...Qg4+** **5.Qg3**  $\mathbb{W}e1+$  **6.Qh3** Not **6.Qf4**  $\mathbb{W}xe3+$  **7.Qf5**  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$  **8.Qf6**  $\mathbb{W}f4\#.$  **6...Wh1+ 7.Qg3**  $\mathbb{W}h2+$  **8.Qf3**  $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$  **9.Qe4**  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  **10.Wg5** **h6 0-1.**

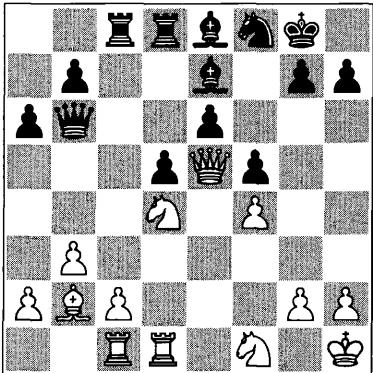




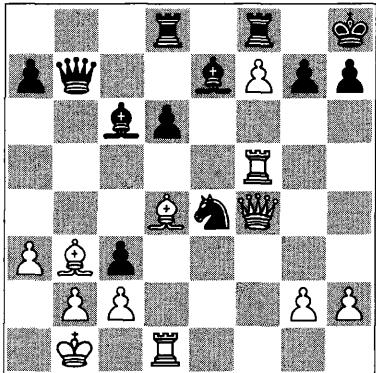
Ex 5.9 ■ Should the queen move?



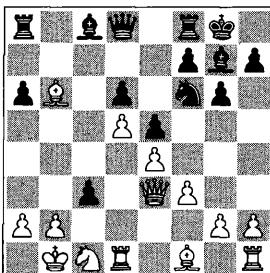
Ex 5.10 □ Defend or attack?



Ex 5.11 □ Black can defend – or can he?



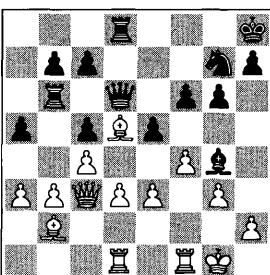
Ex 5.12 ■ Defend or attack?



### Ex 5.9 Novosibirsk (city)-Saratov (city)

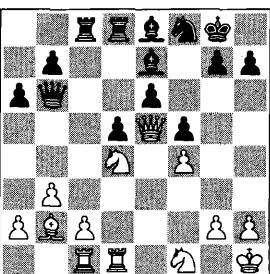
correspondence game, 1961

A grasp of the power of EST's allows one to avoid the sin of 'knee-jerk' defensive responses and look for fresh possibilities in every position. 1... $\mathbb{Q}b8!!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{E}xb2+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $c2!$  Threatening to mate or make a queen. 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  Or 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $cxd1\mathbb{Q}+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$ . 4... $cxd1\mathbb{Q}+!$  0-1. A beautiful UNDERPROMOTION/FORK TRICK.



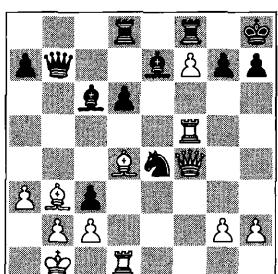
### Ex 5.10 Onischuk-Adianto Beijing 2000

Black is under huge pressure, but why protect the rook when concrete analysis shows a winning breakthrough right now? 1. $fxe5$   $fxe5$  2. $\mathbb{W}xe5!$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  On 3... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f7$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$   $\mathbb{E}xg7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$  mates. 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$   $\mathbb{Q}e2$  The point is 4... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  (or 4... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ ), with mate hanging as well as the  $\mathbb{Q}b6$ . 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  1-0.



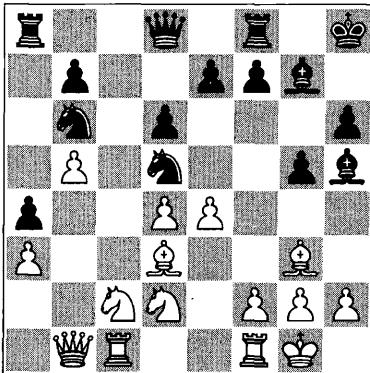
### Ex 5.11 Puljek Salai-Stanec Porec 1994

Black is obviously counting on the defensive EST 1. $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$ , but White sees deeper with his own EST 2. $\mathbb{Q}h6+!$  engendering the stock mate 2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ .

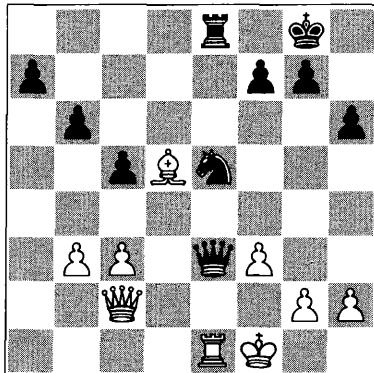


### Ex 5.12 Fischer-Geller Skopje 1967

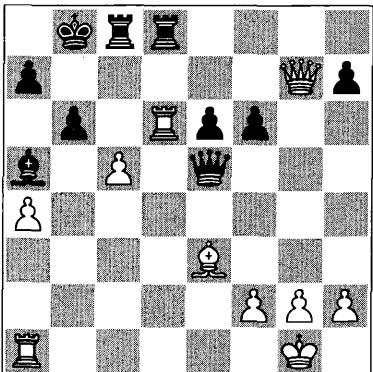
Black has no prospects of defending his besieged king; e.g. 1... $\mathbb{Q}f6??$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  winning. But with the counterattacking EST 1... $\mathbb{Q}a4!$  he declares that he can do something even better: come first! 2. $\mathbb{W}g4$  Scary is 2. $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4. $\mathbb{W}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ ) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  4. $\mathbb{W}f5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5. $\mathbb{W}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$ , but the king slips away via f7-e8. 2... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$  Now this move serves only to gain the winning tempo: 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb3!$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{Q}a2+!$  and stock mate on b2. 0-1.



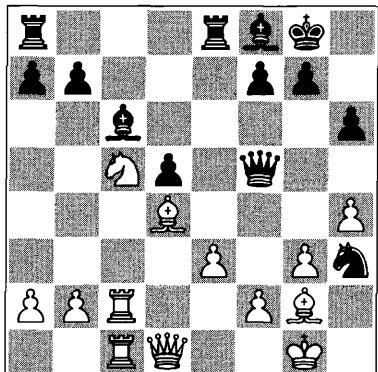
Ex 5.13 ■ Should the knight retreat?



Ex 5.14 ■ Should the queen retreat?

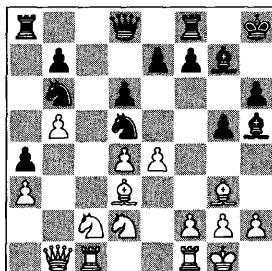


Ex 5.15 □ Is there an ST to Black's EST?



Ex 5.16 □ How to defend f2?

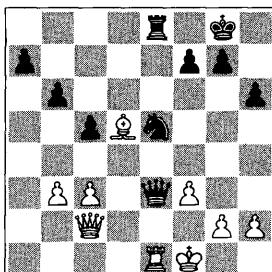
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 5.13 Balashov-Lanka

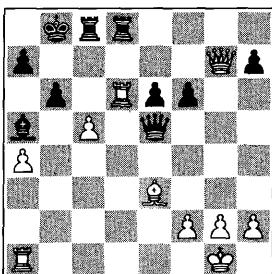
Naberezhnie Chelni 1988

The ‘normal’ e4 meets an embarrassing reply: the momentum-changing EST 1... $\mathbb{Q}e2$  Oops. 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  Or 2.exd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  with a winning pawn-up position. 2... $\mathbb{Q}c3$  Followed by a fork on e2. **0-1**.



### Ex 5.14 Simutowe-Ivan Sokolov

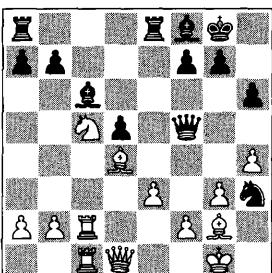
Tripoli 2004  
Black didn’t enter this position to turn back now, but rather to press the attack decisively with the EST 1... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$  with the monster threats 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe1\#$  and 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh2\#$ . 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$  and White resigned after 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ , though even a bit better is 2... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$ , when White still can’t escape the fork 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$  **0-1**.



### Ex 5.15 Alexander Karpov-Ovetchkin

Smolensk 2000

Quite modern-looking was Karpov’s stroke of genius 1. $\mathbb{Q}f4!!$ , employing sensational tactics to convert the initiative. 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  Or the winning discovery 1... $\mathbb{Q}xa1+$  2. $\mathbb{Q}d1+!$  **2.c6! 1-0** Black must dump a rook with 2... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$  to avoid mate on b7!



### Ex 5.16 Zhou Jianchao-Malyshewa

Moscow 2004

Black made a serious miscalculation in planting her knight on h3 as White now forces her to execute her ‘threat’: 1. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  3.e4 Trapping the queen on an open board! 3... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xc5!$  White justifiably wants more than 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ . 4... $\mathbb{Q}a4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  **1-0**.

# Chapter 6 - Quiet Forcing Moves

## Study Material

In the last two chapters, we dazzled your eyes with shocking surprise moves, then taught them to reject automatic defensive responses by first examining aggressive counterpunching forcing moves (EST's). In this chapter, we will ask your computer eyes to overcome a very different kind of HUMAN BIAS! When we start to realize the power of FORCING MOVES, we develop the important habit of looking at all the loud forcing moves, no matter how ridiculous they appear. We have shed our bias enough to know that these 'crazy' moves often win! The problem is this: **sometimes the strongest forcing move is not the stunning sacrifice, but instead the move that appears too 'quiet' to human eyes**, until brute force analysis shows that it actually creates winning threats!

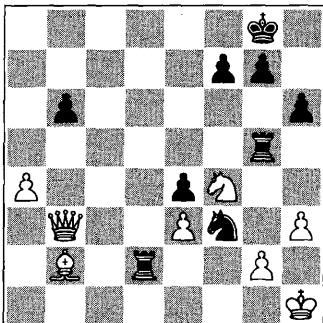
Here is the paradox: 'quiet' forcing moves are not really quiet at all! It is only our human instinct to categorize and describe things, which makes them seem 'quiet'. These 'creepers' are just so different from the checks, captures, invasions, and sacrifices which we have learned to look for when attacking. In order to train our COMPUTER EYES to overcome the bias toward 'loud' attacking moves, we need to remember the definition of a forcing move: a move which LIMITS THE OPPONENT'S OPTIONS. QUIET FORCING MOVES are COUNTERINTUITIVE until we understand their hidden threats. But computer eyes strive for greater objectivity and creativity, by seeking to find and calculate hidden forcing options, before we categorize and reject them.

In this chapter, you will discover many positions in which an innocuous-looking quiet move proved to be the MOST FORCING MOVE on the board, and in fact the only way to justify the attack. If you sense during a game that your attack may be winning, but can't find the final forcing move to make it work, I suggest that you remember to try the quiet forcing option.

In order to train your COMPUTER EYES to find these 'silent killers', we will examine two types in this chapter:

**A) Quiet Key Moves:** These are quiet-looking moves which reveal themselves as 'the winning shot' once their impact has sunk in.

**B) Quiet Connectors** are decisive quiet moves tucked in the middle of more 'violent' forcing sequences. Since they disrupt the flow of prior 'loud' attacking moves, they are easily overlooked by both attacker and defender. Among the nicest chess moves ever played was the following stunning quiet connector, which had to be foreseen many moves earlier (see next page):



FCM 6.1

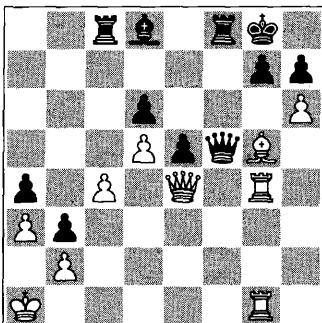
**Sunye Neto-Kasparov  
(variation)**

Dortmund 1982



1... $\mathbb{B}dxg2!!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2 \mathbb{B}g3!!$ , and 3... $\mathbb{B}xh3\#$  can only be averted by allowing the stock mate 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{B}g1\#$ .

#### A) Quiet Key Moves



FCM 6.2

**Nunn-Curt Hansen**

Naestved 1985



Black had the 'big moves' covered, but understandably missed a ridiculously strong little bombshell:

1. $\mathbb{Q}f6!!$

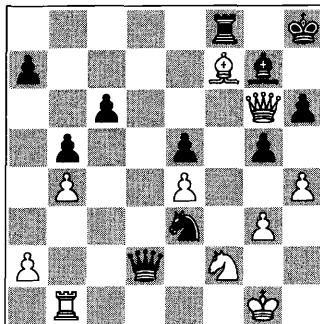
Forcing instant resignation.

1... $\mathbb{W}xe4$

Or 1... $\mathbb{W}xf6$  2. $\mathbb{B}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{B}xh7\#$ ; 1... $\mathbb{B}xf6$  2. $\mathbb{B}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3. $\mathbb{B}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4. $\mathbb{B}1g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5. $\mathbb{W}xf5$ ; best is the pathetic 1... $\mathbb{W}xg4$  as was actually played by Hansen.

2. $\mathbb{B}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{B}g8\#$ .

FCM 6.3  
**Ponomariov-Radjabov**  
 Wijk aan Zee 2003



White's bid for counterplay is squashed by a little move underscoring the dominance of Black's invading forces:

**1... $\mathbb{W}e2!$**

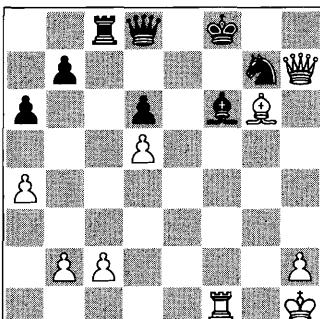
The 'slow' threat ... $\mathbb{W}f3-g2$  is unstoppable.

**2. $\mathbb{W}h5 g4 0-1.$**



An important type of quiet forcing move, familiar from stock mating positions, is the QUIET PREEMPTIVE MOVE sealing off the king's escape in the midst of the attack:

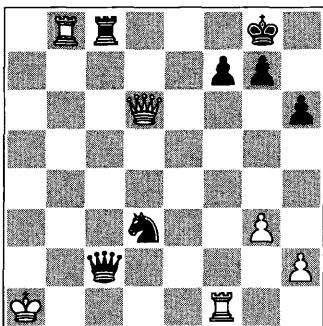
FCM 6.4  
**Almasi-De la Riva Aguado**  
 Pamplona 2001/02



The subtle **1. $\mathbb{H}e1!$**  forces mate, since **1... $\mathbb{A}e5$  2. $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{K}e7$  3. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$**  is no help.

## Forcing Chess Moves

In another crucial version of the quiet key move, the attacker's king takes a crucial 'time out', tucking himself away safely, in order to quash essential counterplay before launching the final attack:



FCM 6.5

**Enders-Knaak**

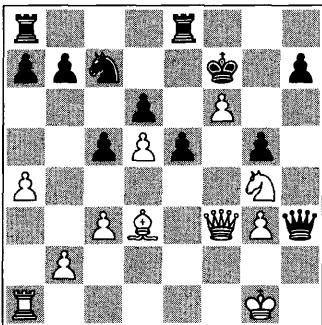
Germany Bundesliga 1999/00



White's shaky defense rests on the pin of the black rook, but after 1... $\mathbb{Q}h7!$  he runs out of tricks, e.g. 2. $\mathbb{R}xc8$   $\mathbb{W}b2\#$ , or 2. $\mathbb{R}fb1$   $\mathbb{W}a4+$ . 2. $\mathbb{W}b6$   $\mathbb{R}c4!$  0-1. 3. $\mathbb{R}a8$   $\mathbb{R}b4!$  does the trick. Even more forcing was 2... $\mathbb{W}a4+$  3. $\mathbb{R}b1$   $\mathbb{R}c3$ .



On other occasions the 'quiet king move' is employed not only to forestall counterplay, but to initiate direct threats:



FCM 6.6

**Vaisser-Degraeve**

Val d'Isere 2004



1. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$

Not only threatening 2. $\mathbb{R}h1$ , but guarding g3 to free up the white queen. Black is forced to push the panic button.

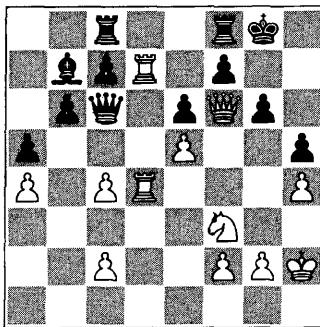
1... $e4$  (2... $\mathbb{W}h5$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$ ) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $h5$  3. $\mathbb{W}f5!$

With the tremendous threats 4. $\mathbb{W}g6+$  or 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ .

3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (3... $\mathbb{R}xe4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$  wins the queen) 4. $\mathbb{W}h7!$   $\mathbb{R}xe4$  5. $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  7. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ .

Rarer still in middlegames is the case where the opponent is so stymied by a powerful bind, that the king himself becomes the executioner, playing a leading role in the attack:

FCM 6.7  
**Short-Timman**  
Tilburg 1991



In this awful-looking predicament, Black actually has a legitimate plan to extricate himself with ... $\mathbb{Q}ce8$  and ... $\mathbb{R}c8$ , while White's obvious attacking tries  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  and  $g4$  are held in check by Black's a8-h1 diagonal battery. But a fantastic flight of fancy shows that Black's liberation mission is a tad too slow:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}g3!!$**

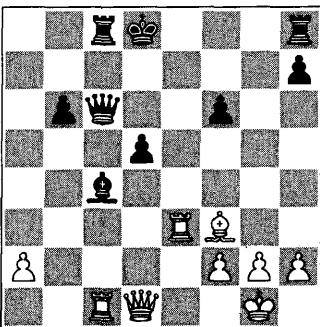
One white piece is at liberty to exploit the weak dark squares!

1... $\mathbb{Q}ce8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$  and Black resigned in view of 3... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  3... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4. $\mathbb{W}xg6+!$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h6$  1-0.

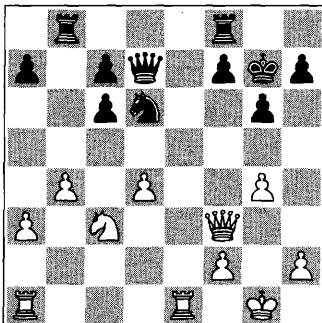


When the opponent faces very strong positional pressure, one well-placed quiet move may set the pot to boiling, cooking his proverbial goose:

FCM 6.8  
**Svidler-Chernyshov**  
Voronezh 2003



Premature is 1. $\mathbb{Q}xc4?$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}c1$ , but simply 1. $\mathbb{Q}ec3!$  (threat: 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ ) was quietly irresistible: 1... $b5$  and now 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$  as well as 2.a4!  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.axb5  $\mathbb{W}xb5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  wins.



FCM 6.9

Hertan-Shipman

Connecticut 1987



An unassuming push, exchanging Black's c6 weakness, suddenly unearths deeper flaws in the enemy camp:

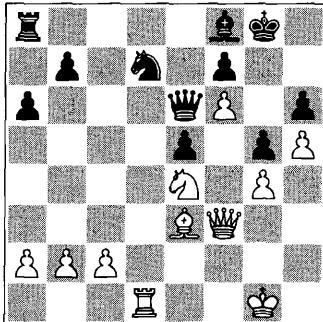
**1.d5!!**

A barrage of tactics seems to fall from a clear blue sky. The primary point is 1...cxd5 2.♘xd5 threatening the stock mate ♜f6 and ♘e7; when 2...f6 allows 3.♗e7+, or 2...♘e8 3.♗c3+ ♘h6 4.g5+. Black can try and hold with the exchange sacrifice 1...♝b6 2.♘a4 cxd5!?, or scrounge:

**1...♘b5 2.dxc6 ♘d4 3.♗f4 ♘xc6**

In the endgame after 3...♝d6 4.♗xd6 cxd6 5.c7 ♞bc8 6.♗e7! ♘c6 7.♗ae1! White is also clearly better.

**4.♗ad1 ♛c8.** But the position is wrecked and he resigned after **5.♘d5 f5 6.g5 ♞b7 7.♗c4 1-0.**



FCM 6.10

Mortensen-Maninang

Lucerne 1982



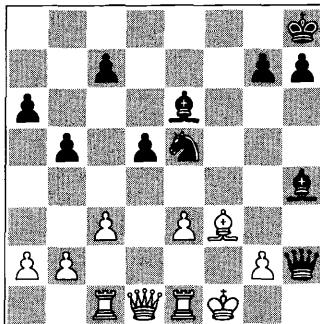
Master insight recognizes that a 'quiet' exchange of queens may be the strongest attacking idea when the enemy queen is the lynchpin of his defenses: after **1.♕f5! ♛xf5**

**2.gxf5**, Black should be put to sleep rather than enduring the loss of the exchange (2...♝d8 3.♗b6) or the imprisonment of all his pieces after 2...♝b8 3.♗d8. **1-0.**

Not just the queen, but any piece crucial to the defense, may be the target of a 'QUIET' EXCHANGING OPERATION:

FCM 6.11  
**Almasi-Ivan Sokolov**

Wijk aan Zee 1995

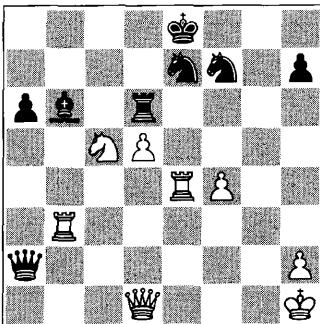


White surely considered the 'loud' forcing moves ... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ , ... $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ , ... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ , and ... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ ; but a 'softer model' may have escaped his radar:

**1... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$**  launches a mating attack with 2.... $\mathbb{Q}h1+$  and 3... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ . **0-1.**

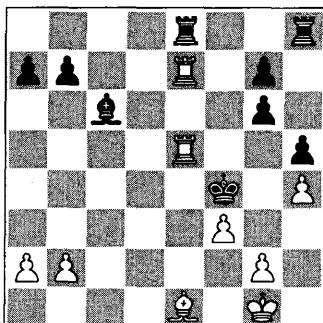


FCM 6.12  
**Anand-Short**  
Merida 2001



COMPUTER EYES reveal that contrary to appearances, 'quiet forcing shots' aren't quiet at all! IT'S NOT HOW THEY LOOK, BUT WHAT THEY DO, THAT COUNTS! In this exceptionally treacherous position, the strongest forcing move proved to be a modest creeper:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$**  After 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$  White mates soon, e.g. 4... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ . **2. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$  1-0.** The bishop is overloaded after **2... $\mathbb{Q}a5$** , see **3. $\mathbb{Q}xe7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ .**



FCM 6.13

Perez Perez-Cobo Arteaga

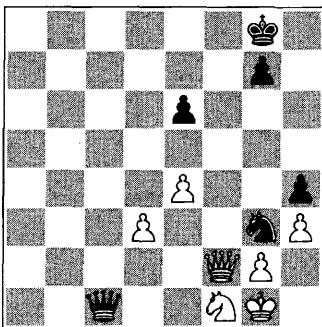
Cuba 1965



The black king's holiday was cut short by the quiet key move **1...Qh2!** Faster and prettier than **1.Qd2+ Qg3 2.Qg5+ Qxh4 3.Qh2! 1...Rxe7 2.Qg3#**.



A final important variety of the quiet key move is that which creates a ZUGZWANG position, in which the enemy has no viable moves and must implode. This idea is of course quite critical in endings (we will see many more ENDGAME FORCING MOVES in Chapter 9):



FCM 6.14

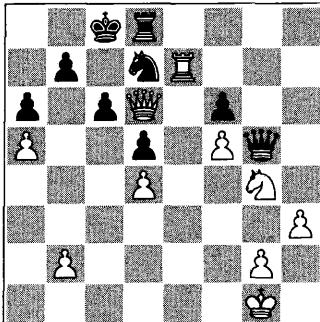
Hector-Miladinovic

Malmö 1998



It's all over after **1...e5!**, fixing White's center pawns, since after **2.Qf3 Qe1!** White can't retreat with **3.Qf2? Qe2+**, leaving only **3.d4 exd4 4.e5 Qxf1+ 5.Qxf1 Qxf1 6.Qxf1 Qf7 0-1**.

FCM 6.15  
**Dean-Shabalov**  
Philadelphia 1999



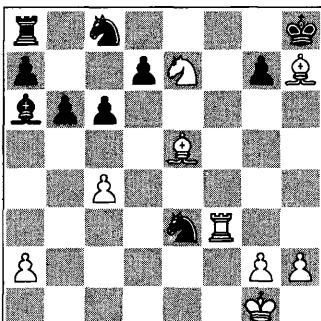
In more complex positions, zugzwangs are scarcer but far from unknown. White was on the verge of a huge giant-killing but only drew after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ . A deeper analysis might have shown that Black is almost out of viable moves, since c7, d7, and f6 must be held, and ...  $\mathbb{W}xf5$  could be met by  $\mathbb{Q}h6-f7$ . Such logic yields the constructive passing move 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h2!$  stopping future checks; 1...  $\mathbb{W}h4$  2.  $\mathbb{M}f7$   $\mathbb{W}g5$  (or 2...  $\mathbb{W}h5$  3.  $\mathbb{M}xd7!$   $\mathbb{M}xd7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xd7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+)$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}xf5$  (not 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}c7\#$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$  (4...  $\mathbb{M}xd7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f8+!$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ .

### B) Quiet Connectors

These are tricky, decisive 'quiet' moves in the midst of an 'active' forcing sequence.

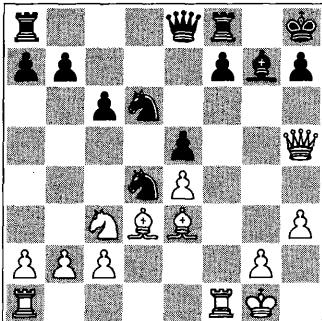
#### B1) Sealing off the King's Escape Square:

FCM 6.16  
**Spassky-Hübner**  
Munich 1979



Spassky caps a delightful attacking game by corralling the king with the quiet crushers 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g6!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f7!$  CORRIDOR MATE on the h-file is unavoidable. 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  3.  $\mathbb{M}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  4.  $\mathbb{M}xh6\#$ .

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 6.17

**Fischer-Benko**

New York 1963



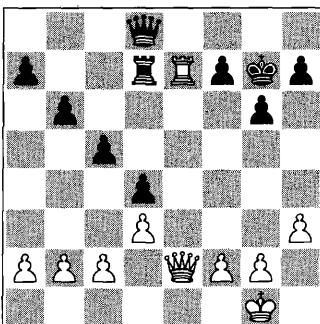
Here is another famous case where White took a quiet 'time out' to seal the fate of Black's king:

**1. ♜xd4! exd4**

Against the direct attack 2.e5 Benko had prepared the fine reply 2...f5! offering a queen trade, but there was no answer to:

**2. ♜f6!!**

... when 2...♜xf6 3.e5 is mate. Black must resign after 2...♝g8 3.e5 h6 4.♞e2 (Stronger than 4.♜xd6 ♛xe5!), with 5.♜xd6 to follow, as knight moves allow 5.♛f5. **1-0.**



FCM 6.18

**Kwilecki-Roslinski**

Poznan 1954



In this elegant stock example, a silent but deadly threat forces Black to 'self-seal' his own escape square e7:

**1. ♛e5+ ♜f8**

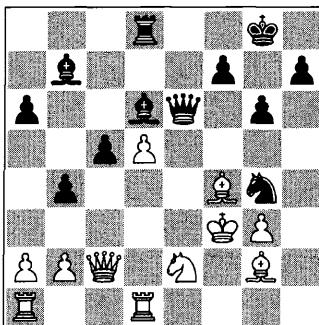
Not 1...♝g8 2.♞e8+ or 1...♝h6 2.♛f4+.

**2. ♜f6!** (attacking f7) **2...♛xe7 3.♛h8#.**

**B2) Bringing up the Reserves**

These 'quiet connector' forcing moves take a moment in the midst of the battle, to bring up more troops with lethal impact:

FCM 6.19  
**Cifuentes Parada-Zviagintsev**  
 Wijk aan Zee 1995

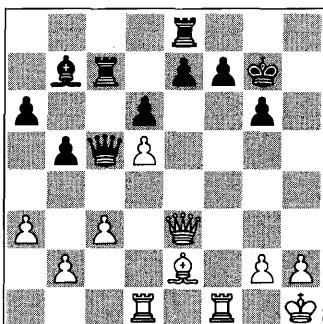


Not so convincing is 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd5+?$  2. $\mathbb{R}xd5\ \mathbb{Q}xd5+$  3. $\mathbb{W}e4$ , so Black quietly mobilizes the reserves:

1... $\mathbb{E}e8!$  2. $\mathbb{W}c4$  (2. $\mathbb{W}d3\ \mathbb{Q}xd5+$  3. $\mathbb{W}xd5\ \mathbb{W}xe2\#$ ) 2... $\mathbb{W}e3+!!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe3\ \mathbb{W}xe3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg4\ \mathbb{Q}c8+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  (5. $\mathbb{Q}h4\ \mathbb{Q}e7\#$ ) 5... $\mathbb{h}6+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xh6\ \mathbb{E}e5!$  A final quiet forcing move seals the king's g5 escape; 7... $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$  follows. **0-1.**



FCM 6.20  
**McDonnell-Roiter**  
 Northampton 2004

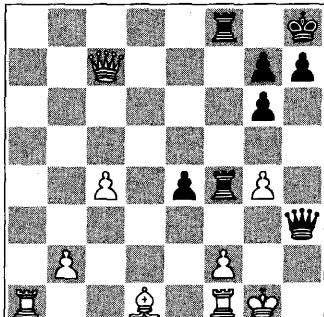


White's explosive incursion rests on a quiet connector, bringing a key new attacker to bear:

1. $\mathbb{B}xf7+!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2. $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$   $\mathbb{W}f2$

The only way to stave off mate after 4. $\mathbb{W}xg6+$  (5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ ).

4. $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5. $\mathbb{W}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$  **1-0.** The end is at hand after 6... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  7. $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  8. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$  with mate in three.

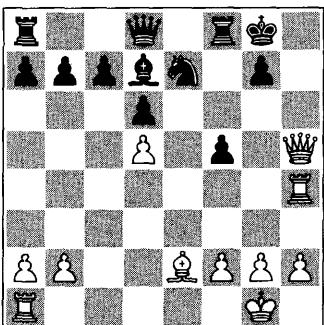


FCM 6.21  
Oliff-Keogh  
Dublin 1964



**1... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ ! 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  2.fxg3  $\mathbb{R}xf1+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{R}8f2+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{R}h1\#$**  is a stock double rook mate. But now Black took a draw after 2... $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ , missing a chance to add decisive fuel to the fire: **2...e3!! 3. $\mathbb{R}a3$**  There is no stopping Black's next two moves. If 3.f3  $\mathbb{Q}h3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{R}xg4+!$  5.fxg4  $\mathbb{R}xf1\#$ . **3... $\mathbb{Q}h3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{R}xf2!$  5. $\mathbb{R}xf2\#$ .**

### B3) Other Quiet Connectors



FCM 6.22  
Yukhtman-Yasevich  
Uzbekistan 1949



Jacob Yukhtman became the terror of the New York chess scene after he emigrated from the former Soviet Union in the early 1970's. Here Black was ready for 1. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  when White's men don't coordinate. Instead came a fantastic quiet connector:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2. $\mathbb{R}h6!$**

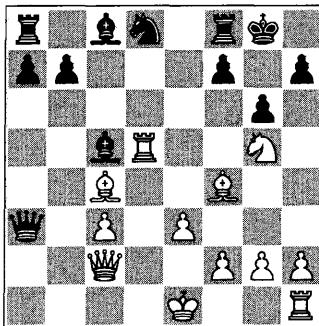
No wonder Jacob matched Tal blow for blow in his youth! White is lining up his ducks so that now 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$  looks monstrous.

**2... $\mathbb{R}g8$**

What else? If 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$   $\mathbb{R}f7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ .

**3. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{R}f6+!$   $gxf6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ .** COMPUTER EYES extraordinaire! Such difficult quiet moves require creative SELECTION, paired with crisp brute force calculation.

FCM 6.23  
**Portisch-Berger**  
 Amsterdam 1964

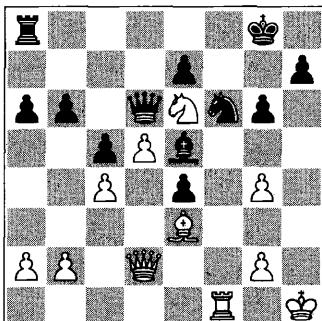


**1.♕xh7! ♔xh7** (if 1...♛a1+ 2.♗d1!) **2.♖h5+ ♔g7** (or 2...♔g8 3.♛xg6#) **3.♘e5+**  
**f6 4.♗g5!** Optically ‘quiet’, but in fact the breakthrough on g6 spells instant death. If  
 4...♔f5 5.♛xf5 Black has only a few checks. **1-0.**



Your COMPUTER EYES must learn to shed human bias to find the following quiet connector, almost as routinely as you would consider a check or capture, as we have studied a very similar STOCK idea:

FCM 6.24  
**Graf-Wurm**  
 Augsburg 1953



**1.♕xc5!**

White begins with a LOUD line-opening sacrifice.

**1...bxc5 2.♗h6 ♔d7**

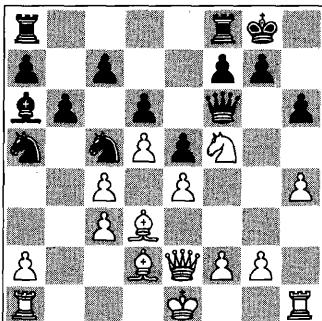
Forced to stop mate on both f8 and g7. If 2...♔f7, 3.♛xh7+ ♔e8 4.♛h8+ wins.

**3.♗f7!**

Not a check or capture, but this ‘soft landing’ couldn’t pack more force. We noted in Chapter 2 the theme of sacrificing on f7 in order to break through on h7 with the queen.

**3...♔xf7 4.♛xh7+ ♔e8** (4...♔f6 5.♛g7#) **5.♛xg6#.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 6.25

Kruger-Iskov

Dortmund 1978



In another version of the quiet connector, a move which shuns the 'flow' of captures upsets Black's defenses:

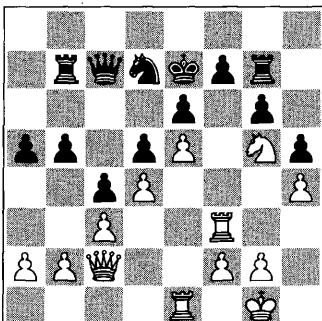
**1.♕g5! hxg5 2.hxg5 ♜xd3+ 3.♔f1!**

Now the STOCK CORRIDOR MATE is on. Also good was 3.♗xd3 ♗xg5 4.♗h3 f6, when White mates from the other side with 5.♘e7+ ♔f7 6.♗e6+ ♔e8 7.♘c6#.

3...♗xg5 4.♗h5! ♗xh5 (4...f6 5.♘e7#) 5.♘e7+! ♔h7 6.♗xh5#.



Some quiet connector forcing moves are based on positional factors, initiating such a powerful breakthrough that even 'slow' threats can't be dealt with. As always, COMPUTER EYES must do their best to back up such ideas with brute force calculation:



FCM 6.26

Berelovich-Yusupov

Germany Bundesliga 2002/03

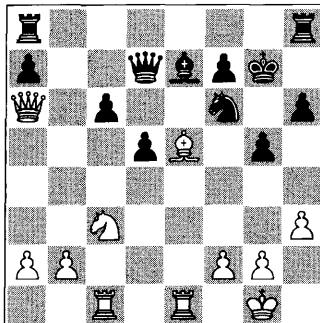


**1.♗xf7+!! ♗xf7 2.♗xg6!**

The extra rook is powerless to stave off White's initiative.

2...♗f8 (or 2...♗f4 3.♗g7+ ♔e8 4.♘xe6) 3.♗h7+! ♔e8 4.♗xh5+ ♔e7 5.♗h7+ ♔e8 6.♗g6+ ♔e7 7.♗xe6+ ♕d8 8.♗xd5 1-0. 9.♘e6+ wins.

FCM 6.27  
**Kobalia-Ghaem Maghami**  
Stepanakert 2004



**1.♕xd5! cxd5 2.♗c6! ♖d8**

Or 2...♖ac8 3.♗xf6!. White's initiative remains strong after the most stubborn 2...♗f5! 3.g4 ♗g6 4.♔c3! ♔d8 5.♗b7 ♖d3! 6.♗e7! ♔xe7 7.♗xe7 ♔g8 8.♔xf6, e.g. 8...♗xh3? 9.♔d7!.

**3.♔d4!**

The key for human eyes was to notice this little FORCING RETREAT, decisively turning up the heat with the threat 4.♗xe7.

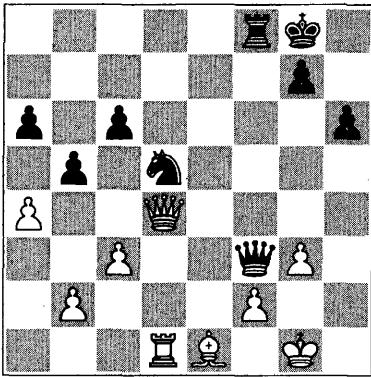
**3...♖c8**

On 3...♗e8 4.♗xe7 ♗xe7 5.♗xf6! is strongest, with a mating attack.

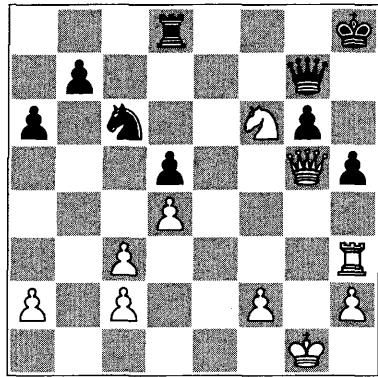
**4.♗xc8 ♖xc8 5.♗xc8 ♖xc8 6.♗xe7** and White won the endgame **1-0**.



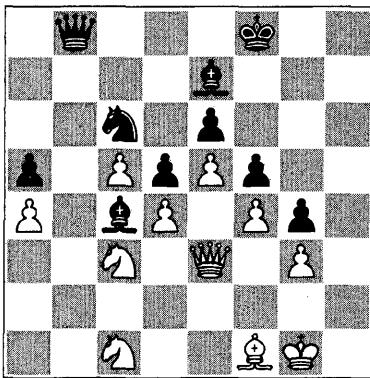
## Chapter 6 - Exercises



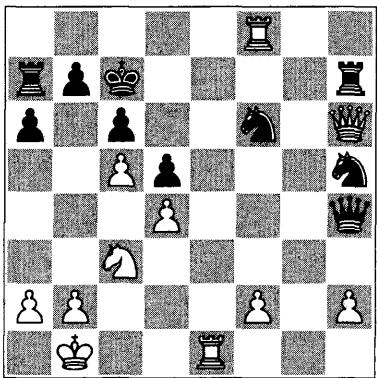
Ex 6.1 ■ Creep your way to the white king



Ex 6.2 □ Will the g-file pin save Black?

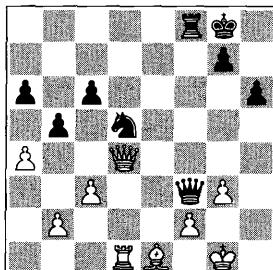


Ex 6.3 ■ Find the quiet connector



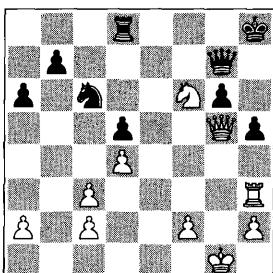
Ex 6.4 □ Should the queen retreat?

## Forcing Chess Moves



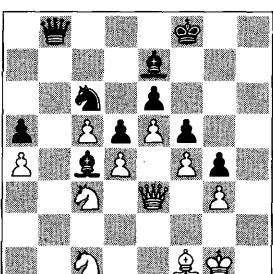
### Ex 6.1 Leko-Svidler Dortmund 1998

**1...Qe3 2.fxe3 We2 0-1** The ‘creeping’ queen move threatening 3...Qf1# is key, in place of the loud but ineffective 2...Qf1+ 3.Qh2 Qe2+ 3.Qh3 Qf5 4.Qd8+ Qh7 5.Qd3. Now 3.Qd2 Qxd1+ or 3.Qf2 Qxf2+ 4.Qh1 Qxg3 win easily.



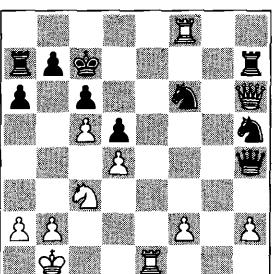
### Ex 6.2 Sakaev-Kurajica Istanbul 2003

What’s left of Black’s defense rests solely on the g-file pin after 1.Qxh5? gxh5 2.Qxh5+ Qg8, which is dispatched in a jiffy with **1.Qf1!** when the immediate threat is 2.Qxh5+! and stock mate on h7. **1-0**.



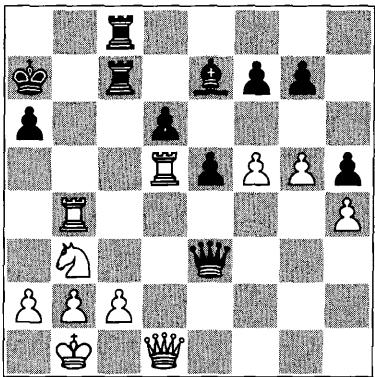
### Ex 6.3 Laria-Ortega Cuba 1953

After **1...Qxd4 2.Qxd4** (on 2.Qxc4, 2...Qxc5! threatens ...Qf3+), the point was the magnificent quiet connector **2...Wa7** with the transparent threat of ...Qxc5 winning the queen, and the far deeper and more insidious idea **3.Qd3** (queen moves meet the same demise) **3...Qxd3 4.Qxd3 Qxc5+ 5.Qg2 Qh7!** mating on h3!. Even Fritz would have to be proud of the tremendous BOARD SIGHT shown by the computer-eye maneuver ...Wa7-h7-h3! **0-1**.

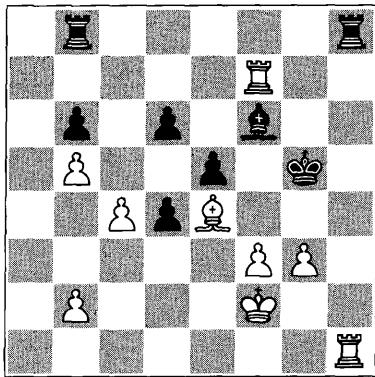


### Ex 6.4 Milov-Luther Merida 2003

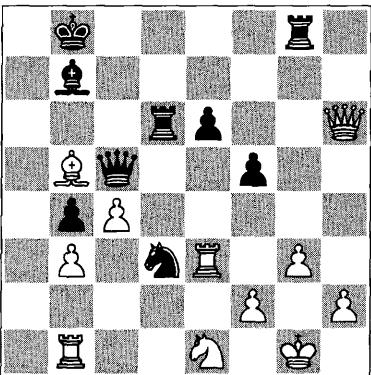
White uncorks a tremendous QUIET KEY MOVE which also qualifies as an EST: **1.Qa4!! Qxh6** No great improvement is 1...Qxd4 2.Qxh7+! Qxh7 3.Qe7# or 1...b5 2.cxb6+ Qb7 3.bxa7 Qxa7 4.Qxh7+! Qxh7 5.Qf7+ and 6.Qe8+. **2.Qb6! Wh3 3.Qe7+ Qd7 4.Qc8#.**



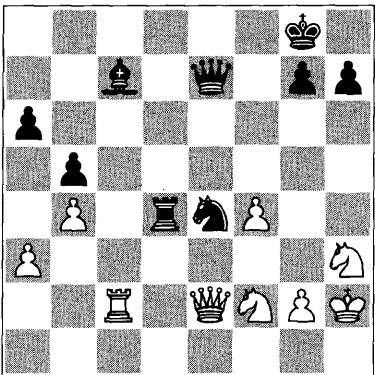
Ex 6.5  Force your way  
to the black king



Ex 6.6  Is White forced  
to exchange?

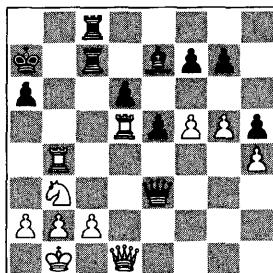


Ex 6.7  Find the  
quiet connector



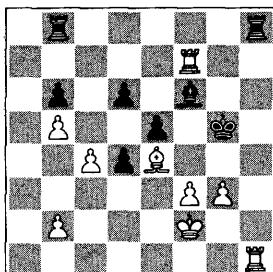
Ex 6.8  Disrupt  
the black forces

## Forcing Chess Moves



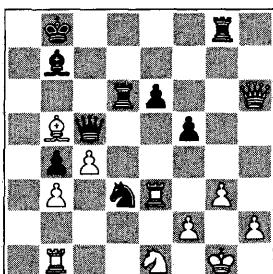
### Ex 6.5 Ljubojevic-Portisch Lucerne 1982

It looks like a two-edged battle, but a couple of forcing quiet key moves reveal the salient feature of the position: Black's exposed king. 1.  $\mathbb{W}f1!$  A bombshell threatening both king (2.  $\mathbb{W}xa6+! \mathbb{Q}xa6$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xa5\#$ ) and queen (2.  $\mathbb{R}d3!$ ) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  Woefully, Black must vacate the a7 square for his queen! 2.  $\mathbb{R}a5!$  He wants bigger game than just the a-pawn. Now 3.  $\mathbb{W}xa6+$   $\mathbb{R}a7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xc8\#$  looms. 2...  $\mathbb{R}a7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h1+! 1-0.$



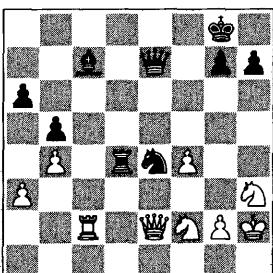
### Ex 6.6 Kolarov-Franz Erfurt 1955

Seemingly White must try to grind out a difficult ending, but the inspired key creeper 1.  $\mathbb{R}h4!$  exploits the awkwardness of Black's bishop, which can only be protected by 1...  $\mathbb{B}bf8$  (not 1...  $\mathbb{R}xh4$  2.  $\mathbb{g}xh4+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xf6$  or 1...  $\mathbb{R}hf8$  2.  $\mathbb{R}g4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  3.  $\mathbb{R}h7\#$ ), setting up the petit combination 2.  $\mathbb{R}g4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  3.  $\mathbb{R}g6+$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{R}xf6$   $\mathbb{R}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{R}h4+$  1-0.



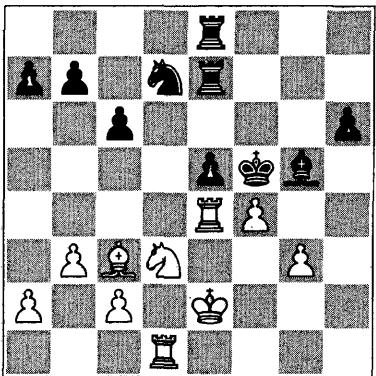
### Ex 6.7 Zakharstov-Lastin Krasnoyarsk 2003

Quite elegant and precise was the quiet connector 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{e}5!$  Prying the white queen from the defense of the  $\mathbb{R}e3$ , after which mate looms on f2: 3.  $\mathbb{W}h7$   $\mathbb{R}d2+$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f1$   $\mathbb{W}xe3!$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xg8+$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  0-1.

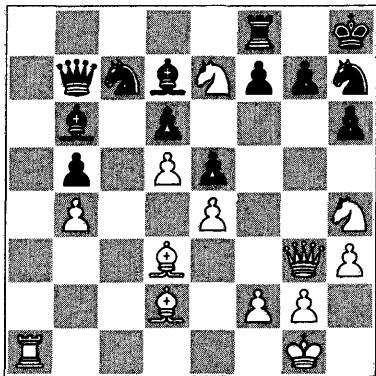


### Ex 6.8 Emanuel Lasker-Edward Lasker (variation) New York 1924

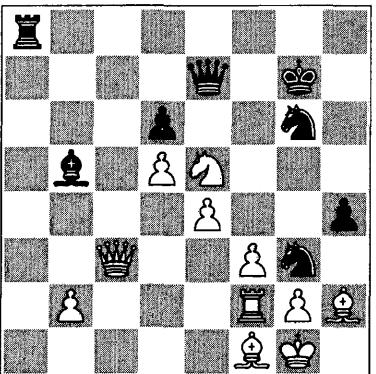
Black looks active but has too many unanchored pieces, and a little nudge upends the apple cart: 1.  $\mathbb{W}e3!$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  2.  $\mathbb{R}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{R}xe4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe4!$  A neat stock fork trick. 4...  $\mathbb{W}xe4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$  1-0.



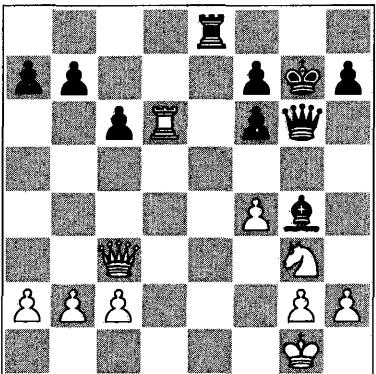
Ex 6.9  Find the quiet connector



Ex 6.10  Find the soft spot

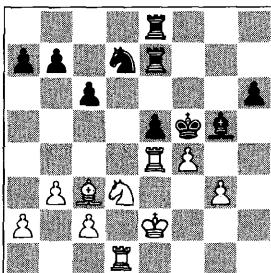


Ex 6.11  Another pawn for White?



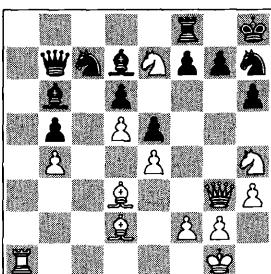
Ex 6.12  Is f6 sufficiently defended?

## Forcing Chess Moves



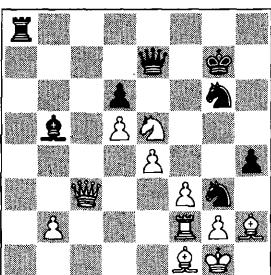
### Ex 6.9 Smyslov-Oll Rostov-on-Don 1993

A superior feat of COMPUTER EYES was the weirdly passive-looking quiet connector **1.g4+ ♕xe4 2.♕f2+ ♕xf4 3.♗g1**, suddenly entombing the wayward rex with the problem-like variations **3...♔h4 4.♔d2#** and **3...e4 4.♗h3# 1-0**.



### Ex 6.10 Leko-Kamsky Wijk aan Zee 2006

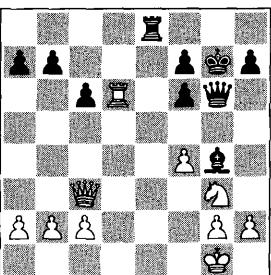
White could proceed in good positional style with **1.♘hf5 ♘xf5 2.♘xf5 ♘e8 3.♘xb5 ♘xf2+ 4.♘xf2 ♘xb5 5.♖a8**, but **5...♗hf6!** with the counterthreat **6...♗xe4+** makes things messy. Instead, Leko finds a strange-looking quiet forcing key: **1.♗f3!** With the monstrous smothered mate threat **2.♗xf7! ♘xf7 3.♗hg6#**. **1...♗f6** Much worse would be **1...♗e8 2.♗hf5** or **1...♗g5?? 2.♗xg5 hxg5 3.♗h5** with a corridor mate. **2.♗xh6 ♘a8!** And instead **3.♖f1 ♘ce8 4.♖c1** as in the game, Leko now recommends **3.♗xg7+ ♘xg7 4.♗hf5+ ♘xf5 5.♗xf5+ ♘f8 6.♗xa8+ ♘xa8 7.♗xd6** with four pawns and a strong position for the piece. **1-0**.



### Ex 6.11 Borik-Kachiani

Germany Bundesliga 1996/97

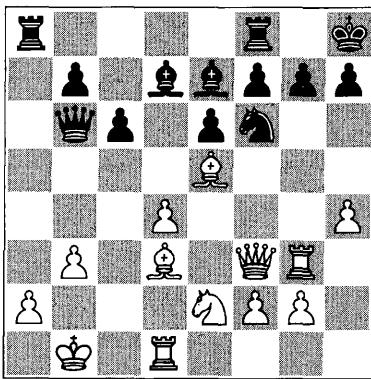
White's intended 'tactical solution' **1.♗xe5** falls victim to the quiet stinger **1...dxe5! 2.♗xb5 ♘a1+ 3.♗f1 ♘a7!** Pinning the defender and paralyzing his prey on f1. Even more forcing, by the way, was **3...♗xf1! 4.♗xf1 ♘a7+ 5.♗f2 ♘a1+** and mate. **0-1**.



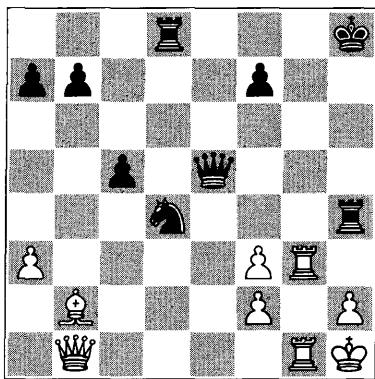
### Ex 6.12 Chigorin-Janowski (variation)

Paris 1900

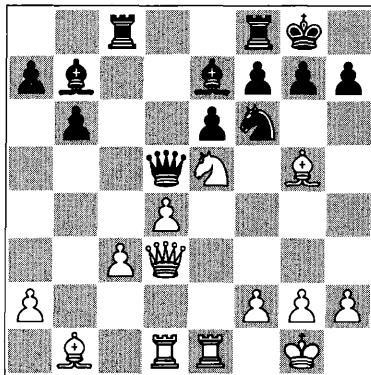
White perceives that the black bishop must guard the d1-h5 diagonal against a fork trick, and finds the little move that topples his resistance: **1.h3!** **♗e6** On **1...♗c8** (or **1...♗e2 2.♔f2!**), the stock motif **2.♗xf6! ♘xf6 3.♗h5+** wins the queen, but now comes **2.f5! ♘xf5 3.♗xf6! ♘xf6 4.♗h5+ 1-0**.



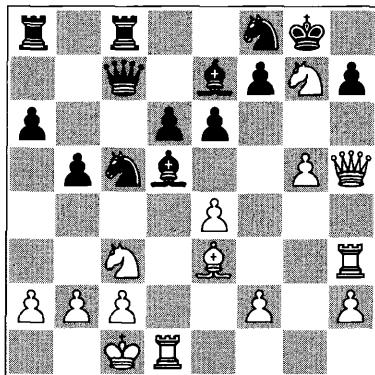
Ex 6.13  Round off with  
a quiet move



Ex 6.14  Find the  
quiet killer

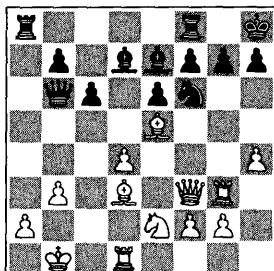


Ex 6.15  Find a solution  
to Black's EST

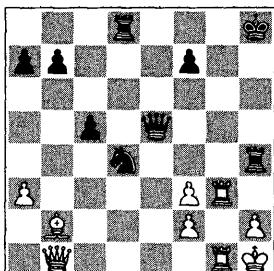


Ex 6.16  Find a quiet  
forcing move

## Forcing Chess Moves



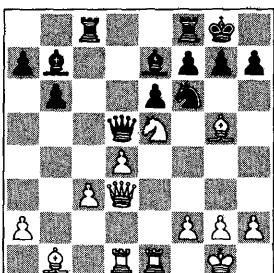
**Ex 6.13 Radulov-Soderborg** Helsinki 1961  
After 1.  $\mathbb{B}xg7!$   $\mathbb{K}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}g4+$   $\mathbb{K}h8$  The ‘loud’ 3.  $\mathbb{B}g5?$   $\mathbb{B}g8$  allows Black to defend, but due to the comical paralysis of the black knight, White quietly proceeds with 3.  $\mathbb{W}h5!$  (or 3.  $\mathbb{W}e4!$ ) 1-0.



**Ex 6.14 Ivan Sokolov-Kasparov**

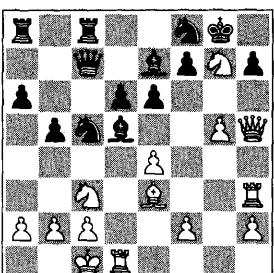
Wijk aan Zee 1999

In certain positions there is no defense against a deliberate quiet build-up of the attack. That’s the case here, regarding the irresistible plan of tripling on the g-file: 1.  $\mathbb{W}f1!$   $\mathbb{W}e6$  Black scrambles to avoid a winning invasion on g8, but he cannot guard g7 as well. 2.  $\mathbb{W}g2$   $f6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h3!$  1-0. The double mate threat is curtains.



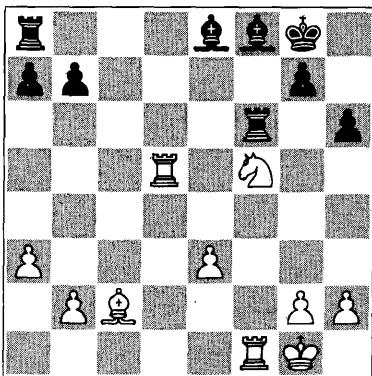
**Ex 6.15 Polugaevsky-Khasin** Moscow 1961

White absorbs the intended counter-blow 1.  $\mathbb{W}h3!$   $\mathbb{B}xc3!$  with the quiet connector 2.  $f3!$  after which his threats are golden; not only mate on h7 but also 2...  $h6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xf6!$   $\mathbb{B}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{B}e4$  1-0.

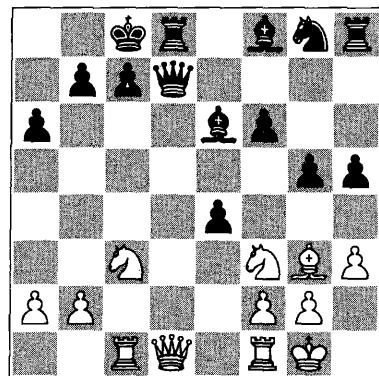


**Ex 6.16 Fedorov-Lanka** Pula 1997

In the midst of a very ‘loud’ position, White discovers a beautiful quiet forcing move: 1.  $\mathbb{W}h6!!$  With the winning threat 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$ . 1...  $e5$  Or 1...  $f5$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}e8#$ ) 4.  $gxf6$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}g1$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{W}xg6$  7.  $\mathbb{B}g3$ . 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  Not 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5??$   $\mathbb{Q}b3+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}xc2#!$  2...  $\mathbb{Q}ce6$  3.  $exd5$   $b4$  4.  $dxe6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  6.  $gxf6$  1-0.

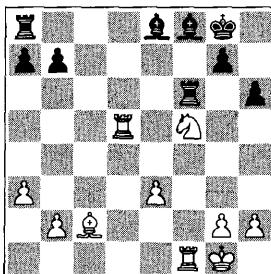


Ex 6.17  Find the  
quiet connector



Ex 6.18  Who comes first?

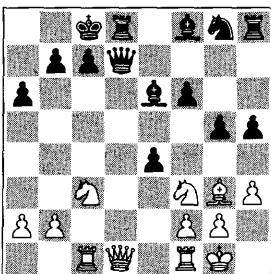
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 6.17 Andrei Sokolov-Apicella

Val d'Isere 2004

Black needs only a tempo to get in ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  and ... $\mathbb{M}e8$  with a very compact defensive position, but a profound quiet connector makes White's initiative tell:  
**1. $\mathbb{Q}xh6+!! \mathbb{Q}xh6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b3!! \mathbb{Q}f7$**  There is no good answer to the threatened discovery!  $\mathbb{M}d8+$  is menaced and king moves allow 2... $\mathbb{M}xf8$ . If 2... $\mathbb{M}b6$  3. $\mathbb{M}b5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4. $\mathbb{M}xb6 axb6$  5. $\mathbb{M}xf8$ . **3. $\mathbb{M}xf7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4. $\mathbb{M}d8+ 1-0$ .** Terrifically alert COMPUTER EYES!



### Ex 6.18 Krivonosov-Grants Soviet Union 1972

Black seems secure with an enemy piece and a queen exchange hanging, but after the quiet key bombshell **1. $\mathbb{Q}a4$**  it's over before he even knows what hit him:  
**1... $\mathbb{W}xd1$**  Other tries are equally hopeless: 1... $\mathbb{W}e7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3. $\mathbb{M}xc7 \mathbb{M}xd1$  (3... $\mathbb{W}xc7$  4. $\mathbb{W}xd8+$ ) 4. $\mathbb{M}xe7+$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  5. $\mathbb{M}xe6 \mathbb{M}xf1+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf1 exf3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  8. $\mathbb{M}e8$ ; or 1... $\mathbb{Q}b8$  2. $\mathbb{M}xc7$  – see the game.  
**2. $\mathbb{M}xc7+$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3. $\mathbb{M}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$**  On 3... $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  comes the stock mate 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ . **4. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ .**

# Chapter 7 - Forcing Retreats

## Study Material

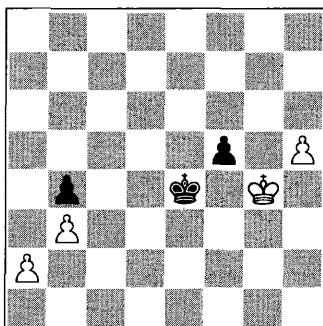
We now turn our attention to one of the most obvious forms of HUMAN BIAS in analyzing forcing moves. When attacking, it is in our nature to assume that 'forward moves' must be the most aggressive and best. The power of language to influence our thinking may cause us to fall into a dangerous trap. After all, when we think about improving human society, we speak of 'moving forward!' Shouldn't it be the same when we want to improve our attacking chances?

Since your COMPUTER EYES have already weathered a few battles to overcome human bias, I think that you know the answer by now: the truth of a chess position is not always what seems 'natural'. 'Backward', **retreating moves often prove to be objectively the strongest forcing attacking moves!**

There can be several reasons for this. Sometimes a temporary retreat enables a piece to come forward again to a better attacking square. In other instances, the retreating piece opens up key attacking lanes for fellow chessmen. Some retreats actually make a winning direct threat. Finally, the backpedaling piece may slow down the opponent's threats just long enough to secure time to allow the attack to succeed. This special type of DEFENSIVE FORCING MOVE will be covered in Chapter 9.

Computers have an easy life! For them, a backward move is just another brute force option to be analyzed to death. Thus, they have no special problem finding the best attacking move in this position:

FCM 7.1  
**Kmoch-Van Scheltinga**  
**(variation)**  
Amsterdam 1936



**1.♔h3!!**

Both sides promote after 1.♔g5 f4 or 1.♔g3 ♔e3! 2.h6 f4+ 3.♔g2 ♔e2!

## Forcing Chess Moves

1...f4 (or 1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ ) 2.h6 f3 3.h7 f2 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$

The point! White kills the f-pawn's advance.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e3$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  1-0.

FORCING RETREATS may be usefully divided into several types as outlined above:

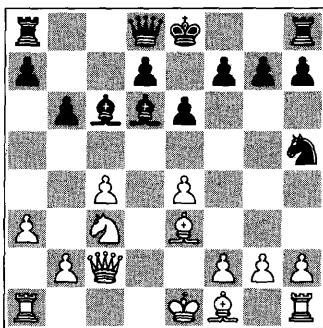
**A) Direct Threats**, in which the retreating piece itself creates a forcing threat which proves decisive.

**B) Repositioning Maneuvers**, temporary retreats which enable a piece to come forward again to a more effective attacking square.

**C) Indirect Threats**, forcing retreats in which the retreating piece vacates a key line or square, enabling other pieces to execute a winning idea. They become even more effective when the retreating piece also creates a direct threat, in addition to uncovering an indirect one.

### A) Direct Threats

Here the retreating piece itself creates a winning threat.



FCM 7.2

Christiansen-Karpov

Wijk aan Zee 1993



You can bet your bottom dollar that the champ was pretty embarrassed by the clock-stopping forcing retreat:

1. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$  Attacking two pieces! 1-0.

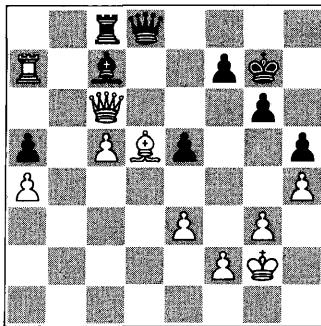
COMPUTER EYES should make two mental notes:

First, that retreating right back where you came from may be the strongest attacking move in the changed position!

Second, that retreats often dramatically INCREASE the scope of the backpedaling unit.

It is well-known that opposite-colored bishops are often an asset when attacking the enemy king, since the defender's bishop can't guard squares attacked by its opposite number.

FCM 7.3  
**Flohr-Stoltz**  
Warsaw 1935



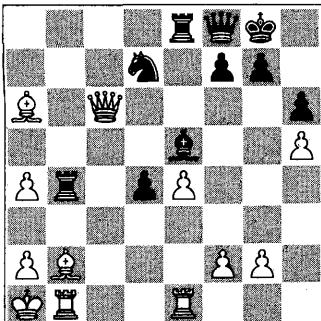
Here, White alertly finds such a weak spot in the enemy camp:

**1.♘xf7! ♜xf7 2.♖a6! 1-0.**

The g6 pawn collapses after this forcing retreat ( $2\dots\mathbb{Q}g8 3.\mathbb{W}d7+$  with mate in three) and Black's hopes die with it. Stoltz tried the clever  $2\dots\mathbb{Q}d6!$ , but lost anyway after  $3.\mathbb{W}d5+ \mathbb{Q}g7 4.\mathbb{R}xd6$  etc.



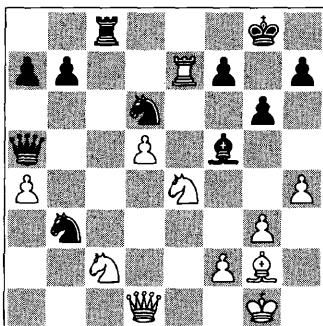
FCM 7.4  
**Bischoff-Bacrot**  
Havana 1998



White may have thought he could wrest the initiative, but his COMPUTER EYES clearly failed him as he missed the instantly crushing retreat **1...♞b8! 2.♕a8 ♖xa4 0-1.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

Some forcing retreats exploit a hanging piece that has become lost in the enemy camp:



FCM 7.5

**Tkachiev-Ye Jiangchuan**

Shanghai 2001

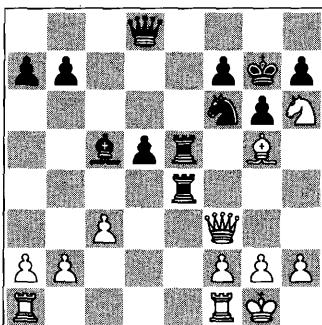


**1... ♕xe4! 2. ♕xe4 ♖d8!**

Even stronger was 2... ♔f8! with the same motif, and now if 3. ♜e5 ♖c3!.

**3. ♜e5 ♖f6!**

Forcing the absurd weakening move **4.f4**, when after **4... ♔c4** White might just as well resign before putting the rook on the silly g5 square, e.g. 5. ♜g5 h6 6. ♜g4 ♔e3 7. ♔xe3 ♜c1. **0-1**.



FCM 7.6

**Tal-Benko**

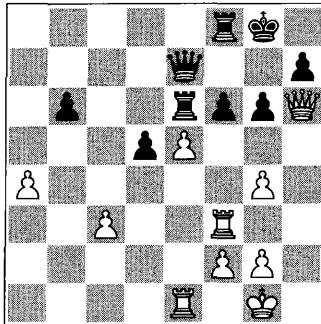
Skopje 1972



Black's centralized forces look impressive, but White gets in there first with an ugly-looking retreating punch:

**1. ♜xf6+! ♖xf6 2. ♔g4! 1-0**, as the exchange goes after 2... ♖xf3 3. gxf3 ♜g5 4. fxe4, leaving White with a favorable endgame.

FCM 7.7  
**Short-Vaganian**  
Riga 1995



Black is poised to regain the pawn neatly with ... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ , but Short finds a new target:

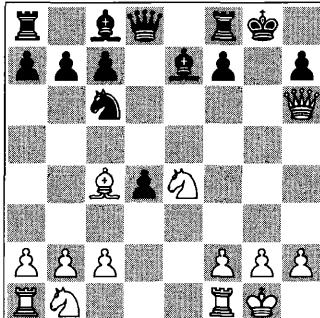
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}d2!$**

Retaining the pawn decisively against any of Black's three defensive tries. On 1... $\mathbb{R}d8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ ; or 1... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  (2... $\mathbb{Q}xe1+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ ) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ . 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  (3... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ ) 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$  **1-0.**

Knowledge of ending principles plays a key role in evaluating these lines; not just the pawn plus, but also White's huge advantage in king shelter, dooms Black in such major piece positions.

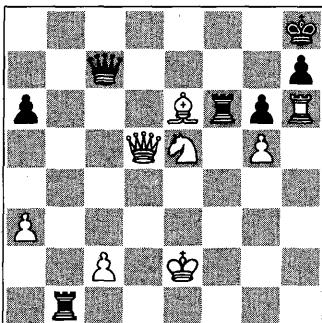


FCM 7.8  
**Goldstein-Tomilin**  
Soviet Union 1965



A well-known STOCK FORCING RETREAT involves redeploying the bishop from the a2-g8 diagonal to the also dangerous b1-h7 one (or vice versa!). To knock out the defense 1. $\mathbb{B}d3$   $f5!$ , the 'self-blocking' sacrifice 1. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2. $\mathbb{B}d3!$  was devised, as on 2... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  comes the stock mate-in-four 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ . **1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 7.9

**Smirnov-Zakharstov**

Krasnoyarsk 2003

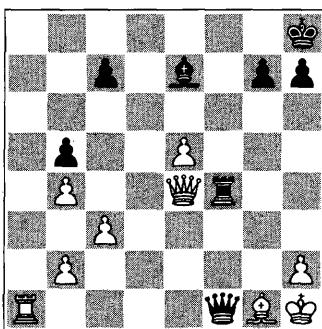


White has no stomach for the messy-looking 1.gxf6  $\mathbb{Q}xc2+$ , although 2. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}e4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$  turns out pretty clear. But Smirnov feints forward in order to initiate a crushing stock attack from h1!

1. $\mathbb{W}a8+$   $\mathbb{B}b8$  2. $\mathbb{B}xh7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3. $\mathbb{W}h1+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$ .



Another example highlights the queen's particular proclivity for powerful forcing retreats:



FCM 7.10

**Monticelli-Horowitz**

Syracuse 1934



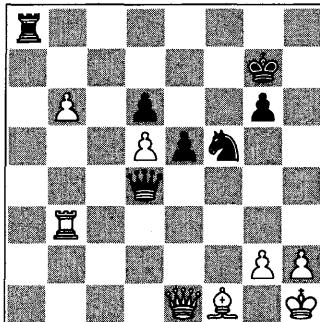
1... $\mathbb{W}xa1$

The distinguished American IM played the tragic 1... $\mathbb{B}xe4??$

2. $\mathbb{W}xf4$   $\mathbb{W}a8+$  0-1.

COMPUTER EYES remind us to include all the squares on the board in our calculations – a function of good BOARD SIGHT, along with the ability to accurately visualize where the pieces are, and what they can do, in each position during calculation.

FCM 7.11  
**Karpov-Taimanov**  
Leningrad 1977



Black's forward thrust sets the stage for a lethal retreat, directly threatening mate:

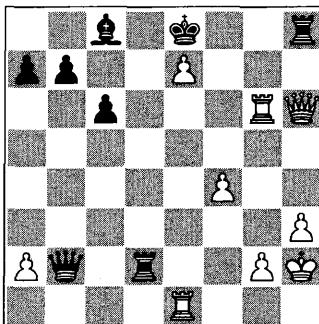
**1...♜a1! 2.♝b1**

Allows an ingenious shot, but not much better was 2.♛e2, e.g. 2...♚xd5 3.♜b5 (3.♜b2 ♜e3; 3.♜f3 ♜d4) 3...♛e4! 4.♛f2 ♛d3!.

**2...♝g3+! 3.hxg3 ♜a8! 0-1.** The opening of the h-file culminates in a stock corridor mate after 4...♜h8.



FCM 7.12  
**Maroczy-Romih**  
San Remo 1930

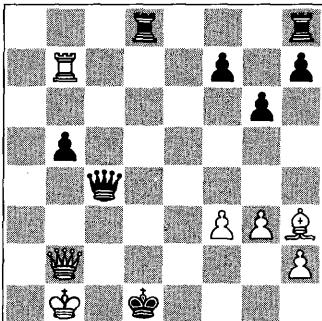


Black's counterplay is extraordinarily close to winning, as 1.♛g5?? falls to 1...♜xh3+ 2.♚g1 ♛d4+, while 1.♝g8+? ♜xg8 2.♛h5+ ♚d7 3.e8♛+ ♜xe8 4.♛xe8+ ♖c7 lets the king slip away. But White turns the game with a marvelous forcing retreat:

**1.♛h5!!**

Now the threatened double check on g8 decides, e.g. 1...♜d7 2.e8♛+ ♜xe8 3.♛h7+ and mate, or 1...♜xg2+ 2.♜xg2+ check! 2...♜xh5 3.♜xb2.

**1...♜xh5 2.♜g8+ ♖d7 3.e8♛+ ♖c7 4.♛xh5 1-0.**



FCM 7.13

Kasparov-Topalov

Wijk aan Zee 1999



Black is playing for mate himself with ... $\mathbb{W}d3+$ , but Kasparov's impeccable COMPUTER EYES gave him the rare ability to flatly out-calculate world class GM's:

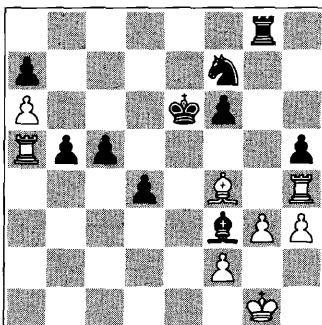
1. $\mathbb{Q}f1!! \mathbb{H}d2$

Otherwise it's mate after 1... $\mathbb{W}xf1$  2. $\mathbb{W}c2+$   $\mathbb{Q}e1$  3. $\mathbb{H}e7+$  or 1... $\mathbb{W}e6$  2. $\mathbb{W}c1\#$ .

2. $\mathbb{H}d7!! \mathbb{H}xd7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{B}xc4$  4. $\mathbb{W}xh8$  1-0.

### B) Repositioning Maneuvers

In these crucial maneuvers, a piece retreats in order to threaten to come forward to a stronger attacking square. This motif is especially important for knights, which often utilize strategic retreats in order to access key target squares, but any piece (except, of course, the pawn) may utilize repositioning play.



FCM 7.14

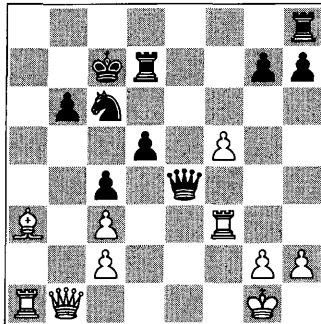
Ryakovsky-Paschall

Boston 1997



If a chess move can be called 'humorous', it would have to hold a paradox like the tremendous attacking move 1... $\mathbb{Q}h8!!$  0-1, the only way for the knight to gain clean access to the decisive g6 square, trapping the  $\mathbb{H}h4$ .

FCM 7.15  
**Fischer-Darga**  
 West Berlin exhibition game, 1960



A blistering reorganization puts the finger on Black's vulnerability:

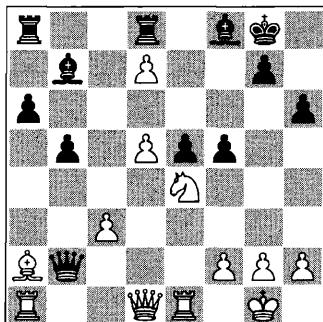
**1.♗c1! ♖e1+**

Black is quite lost on 1...♝e5 2.♗e3! ♖xf5 3.♗b5 (threatening 4.♗xe5! ♖xe5 5.♗a7+) 3...♝hd8 4.♗a7+ ♖d6 5.♗a3+ ♖e6 6.♗xb6+ ♖f7 7.♗xd8 ♗xa7 8.♗f8+ ♖g6 9.♗g3+ ♗g4 10.♗d6+ ♖g5 11.♗c1+, or 1...♝b8 2.♗f4+ ♗e5 3.♗e1! ♗e7 4.♗g3 (4...♖xf5 5.♗g5).

**2.♗f1 ♖xc3 3.♗f4+ ♖b7 4.♗b5 1-0.** The threat 5.♗a6# is decisive.



FCM 7.16  
**Kasparov-Leko**  
 Linares 2001



COMPUTER EYES find a savvy knight dance, which breaks up Black's center and launches a winning kingside invasion:

**1.d6+ ♖h8 2.♗c5! ♖c6 3.♗d3! ♖xc3 4.♗xe5**

From its killer outpost the knight paralyzes Black's forces!

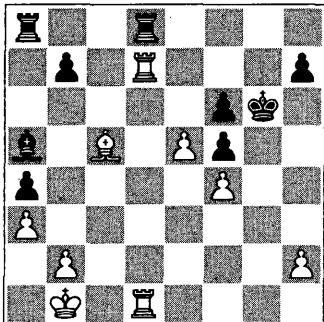
**4...♗e4 (4...♗b7 5.♗h5) 5.♗f7+ ♖h7 6.♗g5+**

Winning the exchange should not satisfy White's attacking lust.

**6...♗h8 (6...♗g6 7.♗xe4 fxe4 8.♗d5 ♖h7 9.♗xa8 ♗xa8 10.♗c1+—) 7.♗xe4 fxe4**

**8.♗d5 ♖h7 9.♗g8+ ♖g6 10.♗f7+ ♖f6 11.♗d5 1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



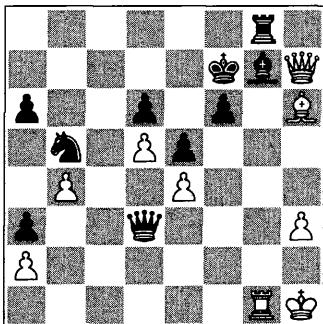
FCM 7.17  
**Polugaevsky-Szilagyi**  
Moscow 1960



**1.  $\mathbb{R}g1+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$**

Confining the black king to the risky h-file corridor sets the stage for an elegant rook repositioning maneuver:

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+$   $\mathbb{R}xf8$  (or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xh7\#$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{R}d3$  1-0.**



FCM 7.18  
**Tyomkin-Yezersky**  
Beer-Sheva 2000

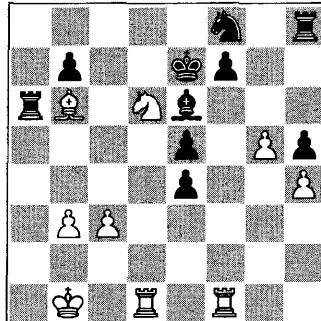


Black relies on the defensive resource 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7?$   $\mathbb{W}f3+$  2.  $\mathbb{R}g2$   $\mathbb{W}xg2+!$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{H}xg7+$  winning, but despite the extra piece, he has no answer to the following repositioning shot:

**1.  $\mathbb{W}f5!$**

With the lethal threat 2.  $\mathbb{W}d7+$ . Since 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}e6+$  mates, Black has nothing better than the desperate try 1...  $\mathbb{W}xe4+$ , but soon resigns after the 'video replay' 2.  $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f5!$  1-0.

FCM 7.19  
**Hever-Siklaj**  
 Hungary 1975



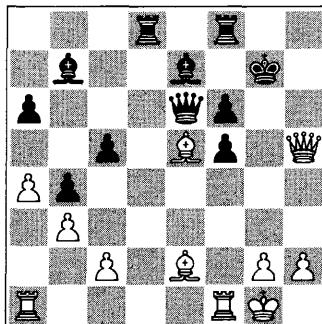
In this beautiful example, White finds an unusual knight repositioning maneuver ending in an ideal mate:

**1.  $\mathbb{K}xf7+!! \mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#.$**



Far from unknown is the following type of repositioning maneuver, in which a series of checks allows the queen to RETREAT with tempo to a more effective distant attacking post:

FCM 7.20  
**Voitsekhovsky-Landa**  
 St Petersburg 1998



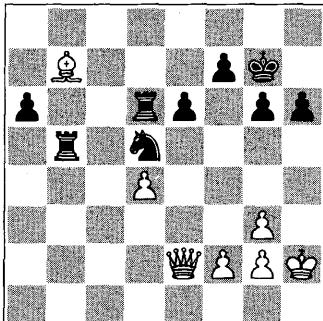
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#)$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h4+!$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h3+!$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$   
 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$**

The point of all these backward checks was to allow this powerful capture with tempo, irresistibly threatening 6.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+.$

**5...fxe5**

No cause for celebration was 5...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+ \mathbb{Q}f7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h5+ \mathbb{Q}xh5$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5+ \mathbb{Q}f8$   
 9.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+ \mathbb{Q}f7$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#.$

**6.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+ \mathbb{Q}xg5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  1-0.**



FCM 7.21

**Cameron-Millstone**

correspondence game, 2003



A deeply calculated repositioning sacrifice results in a surprise mating net:

**1... $\mathbb{E}xb7!!$  2. $\mathbb{W}e5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6!$  3. $\mathbb{W}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}g4+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h4$**

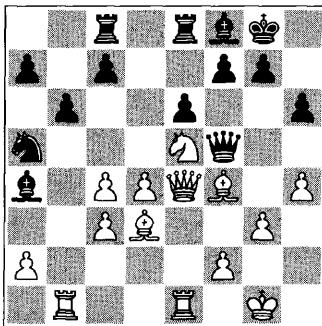
The white queen is a goner in the pretty variations 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{B}b1$  6.g4 (6. $\mathbb{W}e5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  7.g4  $\mathbb{Q}xg4+$ ) 6... $\mathbb{B}h1+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ .

**5... $g5+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{B}b1$  7. $\mathbb{W}e5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  0-1.**

A tough one for unwary 'HUMAN' EYES; the 'routine' interpolation 2... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  launched the winning attack.

### C) Indirect Forcing Retreats

In the next examples, an accurate retreating shot uncovers a decisive threat by another piece or pieces.



FCM 7.22

**Filguth-De la Garza**

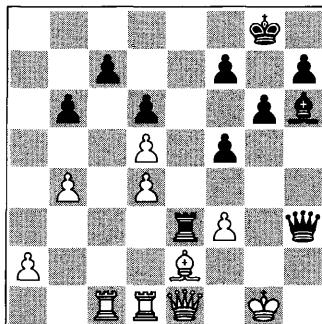
Mexico 1980



Are your COMPUTER EYES sufficiently trained to find the wondrous shot **1. $\mathbb{W}h1!!$**  and the two brute force variations that make it the strongest attacking move on the board? On **1... $\mathbb{W}h5$  2.g4!** the h-pawn is guarded, while on **1... $\mathbb{W}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$**  the queen breaks through to h7 after 2...hxg5 3.hxg5. **1-0.**

What gives many indirect forcing retreats their pop is not only the threat they uncover, but the secondary intentions of the backpedaling piece:

FCM 7.23  
**Zagorskis-Sadler**  
 Elista 1998



**1...♝e4! 2.♝c3**

The mighty stock mating threat 2.fxe4 ♜e3+ 3.♛f2 ♜g3+ allows Black's rook to re-position decisively.

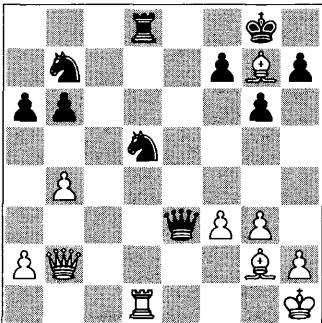
**2...♝h4 3.f4**

What else? The king is still too exposed on 3.♜xh4 ♜xh4.

**3...♜h1+ 4.♚f2 ♜h2+ 5.♚e3 ♜e4+** and 6...♜xf4+ wins. **0-1.**



FCM 7.24  
**Vilela-Spiridonov**  
 Varna 1977

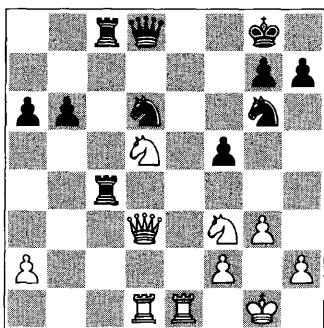


In an unusual twist, the retreating piece cuts off the bishop's support in a shocking manner, while indirectly setting up back rank threats:

**1...♝f6!! 0-1.** After 2.♜xd8+ (on other rook moves simply 2...♝xg7) 2...♝xd8, the mating threat 3...♜e1+ swallows the ♜g7.

## Forcing Chess Moves

In the next two examples, a forcing retreat combines a direct threat with the indirect unleashing of a powerful battery:



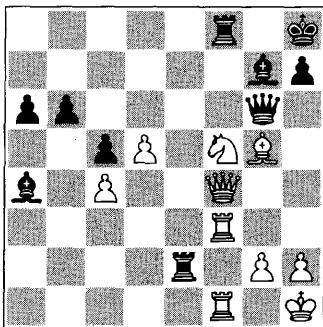
FCM 7.25

**Magerramov-Panchenko**

Bad Wörishofen 1994



Swift and decisive was the 'back-attack' 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e3!$   $\mathbb{H}4c6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd8+$   $\mathbb{H}xd8$   
4.  $\mathbb{H}xd8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  5.  $\mathbb{H}e8+$  1-0.



FCM 7.26

**Christiansen-Nunn**

San Francisco 1995



White unleashed a devastating battery with a surprise retreat:

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h4!$   $\mathbb{W}h5$

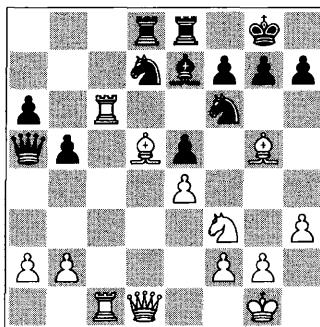
The best try. 1...  $\mathbb{H}xf4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ ; 1...  $\mathbb{W}c2$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{H}1f7\#$ ;  
and 1...  $\mathbb{W}e8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xf8+$   $\mathbb{W}xf8$  4.  $\mathbb{H}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{H}f1$ , all lose outright.

2.  $\mathbb{W}xf8+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$

Now Christiansen got a winning position (though he later blundered and drew) with the brilliant 4.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  (4...  $\mathbb{W}xh6$  5.  $\mathbb{H}1f7\#$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{H}1f6+$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $hxg6$  7.  $h4$ , but simpler was 4.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  (4...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  5.  $\mathbb{H}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ , emerging with a full extra piece. 1-0.

In some instances, the indirect forcing retreat vacates a key square, rather than a key line:

FCM 7.27  
**Tal-Unzicker**  
Stockholm 1960/61



The point of **1.  $\mathbb{Q}d2!$**  was to forcefully give the knight access to g5 after **1...  $\mathbb{b}4$ .** Similar is **1...  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$**  while **1...  $\mathbb{Q}a4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b3!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$**  allows the stock fork trick **3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ .**

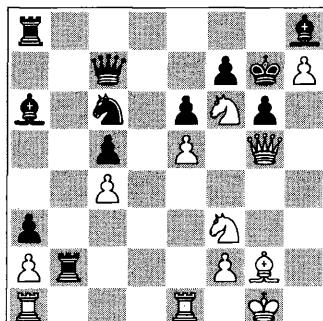
**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b3+ \mathbb{Q}f8$**

**3...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h4+$**  is a free ticket to an execution.

**4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  1-0.** **4...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xb4+$**  finishes nicely.



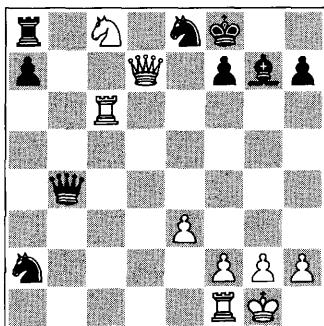
FCM 7.28  
**Ajanski-Popov**  
Boras 1980



The forcing pullback **1.  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$**  not only menaces **2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$** , but after the forced **1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$**  (**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$**  is a stock mate), allows White to stuff the vacated square with the blow **2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

Here, the forcing retreat takes the form of a winning diversion sacrifice:



FCM 7.29

Dreev-Svidler

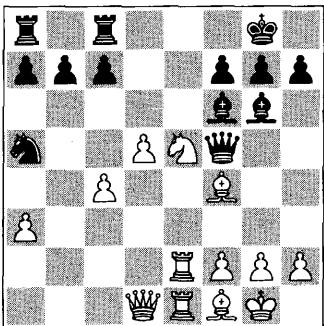
Halkidiki 2002



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$**

The black queen is diverted from the crucial e7 square, but on 2...  $\mathbb{Q}a3$  simply 3.  $\mathbb{H}e4$ ! repositions the rook decisively (3...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}d8+$ ).

**2.  $\mathbb{W}e7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$  1-0.**



FCM 7.30

Karpov-Portisch

Lucerne 1982



Here, a perfect marriage of direct and indirect threats seals the deal:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}d2!$**

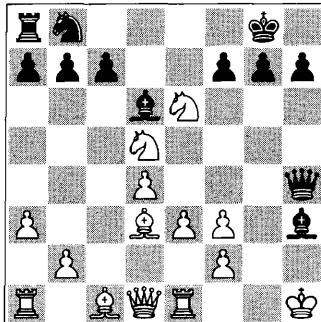
With monster threats on both sides of the board: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  and 2. g4!

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$**

On 1... b6, just 2. g4  $\mathbb{W}c2$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xc2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  5.  $\mathbb{H}xc2$  wins.

**2. g4! 1-0.** Black has nothing after 2...  $\mathbb{W}c2$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xc2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  5.  $\mathbb{H}e3$ .

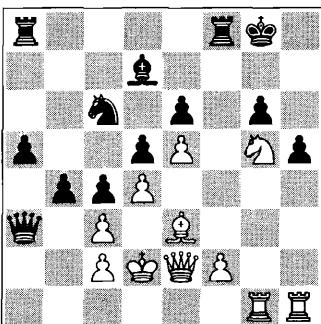
FCM 7.31  
**Van Wely-Acs**  
Hoogeveen 2002



The only accurate retreating discovery **1...Qf5+!!** forced mate after **2.Qg1 Wh2+** **3.Qf1 Qg3!** (**4.fxg3 Qh3#**), by knocking out the defense **4.Qc2 (4.Qe2 Wh1#)** **Qxd3+ 5.Qxd3 Wxf2#.**



FCM 7.32  
**Bacrot-Vaisser**  
Aix les Bains 2003



The deadly accurate forcing retreat **1.Qe4!** not only uncovered brutal threats against g6/h5, but also quashed the flight attempt **1...Qf7 2.Qf3+ Qe8 3.Qd6+ Qe7 4.Qg5+.**

**1...dxe4**

If **1...bxc3+ 2.Qxc3 Qf7** (after **2...Qf5 3.Qxh5! Qe8** Black is crushed with **4.Qxf5! exf5 5.Qf3) 3.Qxg6!** is simplest. Running away doesn't help: **3...Qe8 4.Qxh5 Qd8 5.Qh6 Qe8 6.Qxd5!+-.**

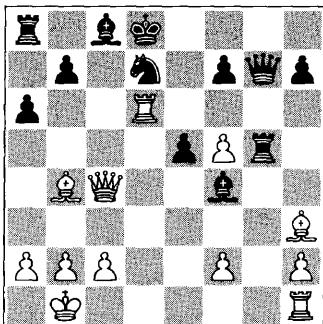
**2.Wxh5 Qxf2+**

The only try to prolong resistance. On **2...Qf7, 3.Qxg6+ Qe7 4.Qg5+ mates.**

**3.Qxf2 Wxc3+ 4.Qd1 Wf3+ 5.Qxf3 exf3 6.Qxg6+ Qf7 7.Qf6+ Qe7 (7...Qg7 8.Qg1+ Qh7 9.Qe3 and 10.Qh6#) 8.Qh7+ Qd8 9.Qf8+ Qe8 10.Qh4+ 1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

In our final example, the forcing 'defensive' retreat is just a surprise ploy to gain the needed tempo to drive home a mating attack:



FCM 7.33

**Shirov-Topalov**

Wijk aan Zee 2001

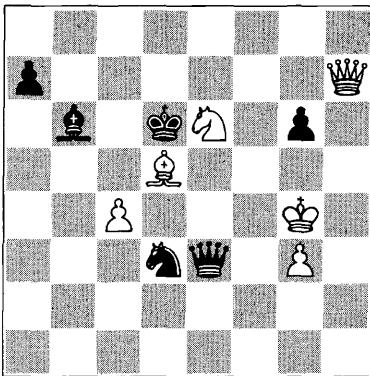


**1.f6! ♜g1+ 2.♕f1!**

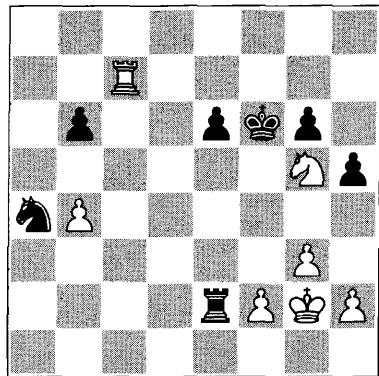
Black only banked on 2.♖xg1 ♜xg1+ 3.♕f1 when he may be able to hold with 3...a5! 4.♗c5 ♜a6.

**2...♜g6 3.♗a5+ ♜e8 4.♖e6+ fxe6 (4...♝f8 5.♗b4+) 5.♖xe6+ ♜f8 6.♗b4+ ♜c5 7.♗xc5#.**

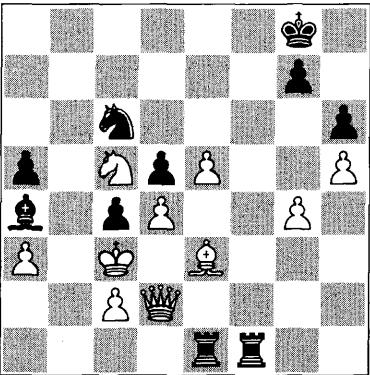
## Chapter 7 - Exercises



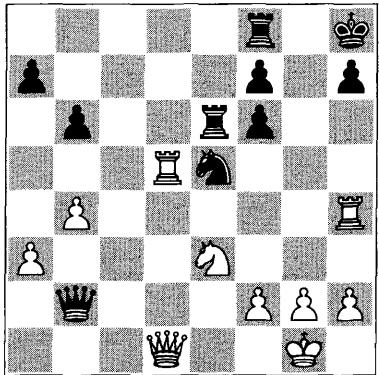
Ex 7.1 ■ Find  
the forcing retreat



Ex 7.2 □ Will Black escape?

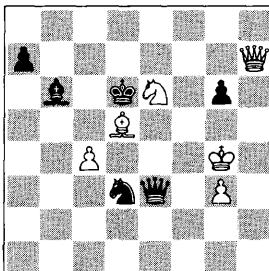


Ex 7.3 ■ Find the decisive  
reinforcement



Ex 7.4 □ Drive away  
the defender

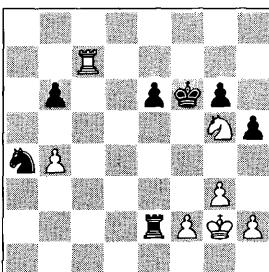
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 7.1 Chernyshov-Kabanov (modified)

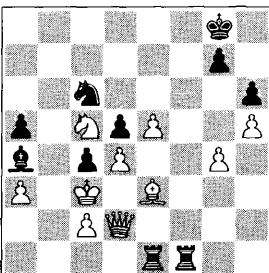
Tomsk 2006

Black snared the white king with the direct forcing retreat **1...Qf2+ 2.Qh4 Qxe6! 3.Qxe6 Qd8+ 0-1.**



### Ex 7.2 Smyslov-Benko Monte Carlo 1969

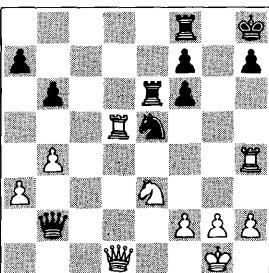
Black stakes his defenses on K activity with ...Qf6, but the profound little retreat **1.Qf1!** indirectly initiates a mating net after **1...Bb2 2.f4 Qf5 3.h3! 1-0.**



### Ex 7.3 Gergely Szabo-Apicella

Bucharest 2000

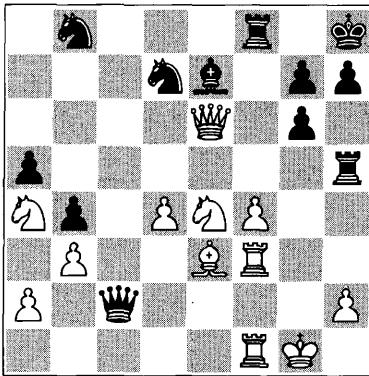
All reasonable roads led to mate after the bone-crushing repositioning harpoon **1...Qa7! 2.Qg2 2.Qb3 Qb5+ 3.Qb2 Bb1+ 4.Qa2 Bxb3+ 5.cxb3 cxb3#; 2.Qxa4 Qb5+ 3.Qb2 Bb1+ 4.Qa2 Ba1+ 5.Qb2 Bfb1#.** **2...Qb5+ 3.Qd2 Bd1+ 4.Qe2 Qc3#.**



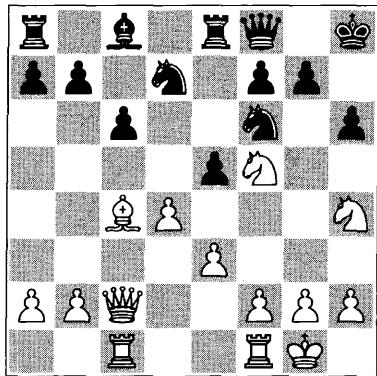
### Ex 7.4 Shulman-Khalifman

Khanty-Mansiysk 2005

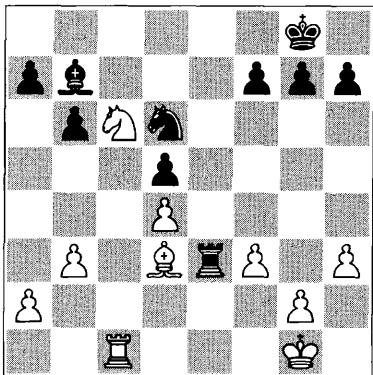
Black's defense of h7 is based on **1.Wh5 Bb1+**, but this device was easily derailed by the diversionary forcing retreat **1.Bd2! Wa3 2.Wh5 1-0.**



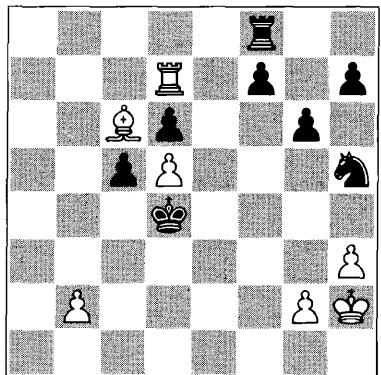
Ex 7.5  Forward or backward?



Ex 7.6  Find the forcing retreat

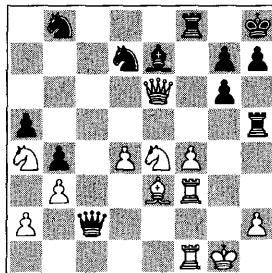


Ex 7.7  Defend and attack



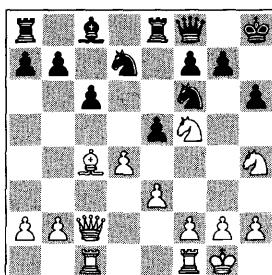
Ex 7.8  What to do about the active rook?

## Forcing Chess Moves



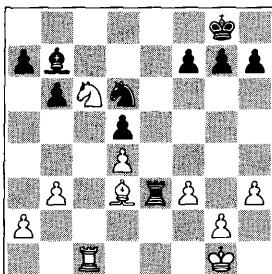
### Ex 7.5 Ye Jiangchuan-Gulko Seattle 2001

The direct forcing retreat **1.¤f2!** not only had the decided advantage of stopping ....¤xh2#, but also refuted the intended defense **1...¤c8** On **1...¤d3,** **2.¤g3!?** ¤h4! **3.¤d2** is not clear after the brilliant **3...¤e5!! 4.dxe5 ¤xe3+ 5.¤ff2 ¤xg3 6.hxg3 ¤xg3+ 7.¤f1 h5.** More convincing is **2.¤g5!** ¤xg5 **3.fxg5 ¤g8** and another forcing retreat: **4.¤b2** and **¤c4.** **2.¤xe7 ¤e8 3.¤c2!** A brisk EST finishes the job. **1-0.**



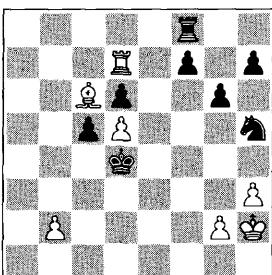
### Ex 7.6 Kopeč-Condie Troon 1980

The tough American IM played the routine **1.¤b3?**, but COMPUTER EYES find the unusual direct-attacking retreat **1.¤g6+!! f x g 6 2.¤h4!** when Black must give up material to avoid the stock self-blocking smothered mate **2...¤d6** (not **2...¤b4 3.¤xg6+ ¤h7 4.¤f8+ ¤h8 5.¤h7+! ¤xh7 6.¤g6#**) **3.¤xg6+ ¤h7 4.¤xe5+ ¤e4** (**4...¤h8 5.¤f7+**) **5.¤xe4+ g 6 6.f4** with a winning advantage. **1-0.**



### Ex 7.7 Belikov-Baramidze Dortmund 2003

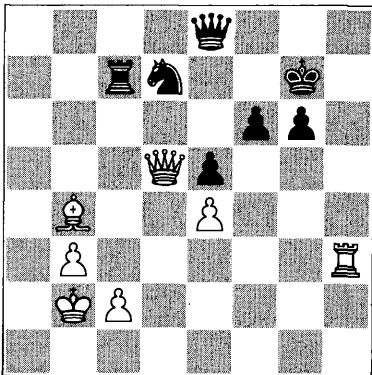
The indirect forcing retreat **1.¤e5!** shut the gate on Black's rook while opening the sluices for White's **1...f5 1...f6 2.¤f2!** wins. **2.¤f2 f 4 3.¤c7 1-0.** **4.¤d7** is threatened, and on **3...¤c8 4.¤c6!**.



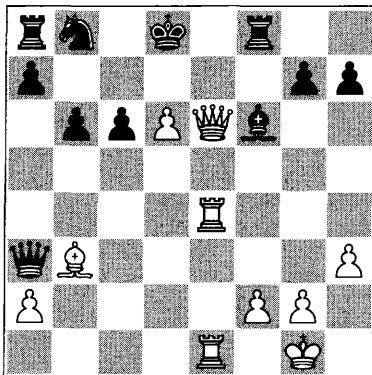
### Ex 7.8 Uhlmann-Fischer

Palma de Mallorca 1970

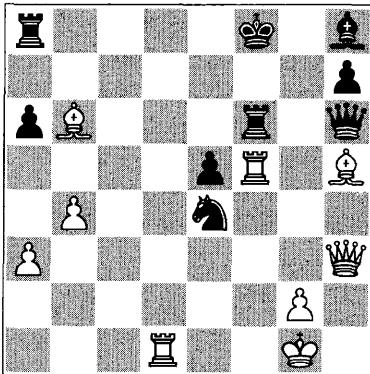
Two directly forcing retreats extinguish White's counterplay: **1...¤f6! 2.¤xd6 ¤e5! 0-1.**



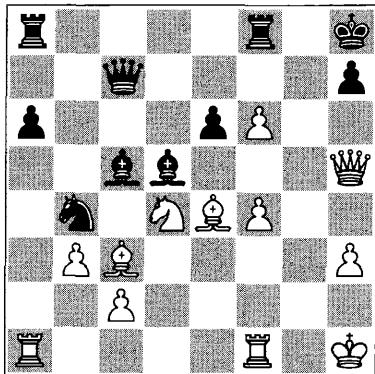
Ex 7.9  Find the decisive reinforcement



Ex 7.10  Find the decisive reinforcement

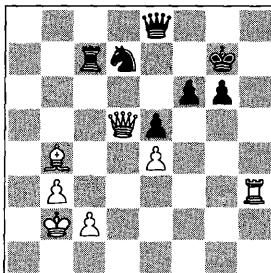


Ex 7.11  Harass  
the defenders



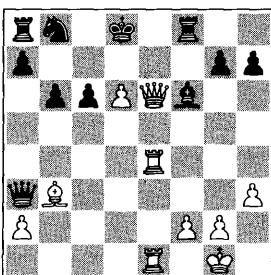
Ex 7.12  Which diagonal  
decides?

## Forcing Chess Moves



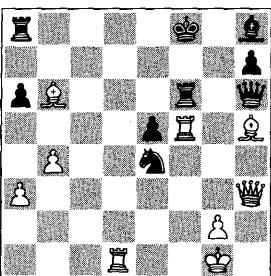
### Ex 7.9 Vorobiov-Rublevsky Moscow 2002

The insidious repositioning riposte **1.♕d2!**, threatening **2.♕h6+** and **3.♕f8#**, quickly overwhelmed Black's defenses after **1...g5** (on **1...Qb8** or **1...Qb6**, **2.♕h6+ ♕h8 3.♕g5+! ♕g7 4.♕xf6+ ♕xf6 5.♕d6+** gets it done) **2.♕d6! ♜c8 2...♛c8 3.♛e7+ ♛g8 4.♛e6+ ♛g7 5.♛xg5! ♜xc2+ 6.♛b1 wins. 3.♛xg5! ♜xg5 4.♛h6+ ♛f7** The bare king's last dance. **5.♛h7+ ♛e6 5...♛f8 6.♛f3+ 6.♛h6+ ♛f6 7.♛f5+ 1-0.**



### Ex 7.10 Makarichev-Alburt Ashkhabad 1978

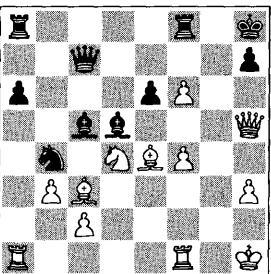
White crowned a decisive attack with the elegant re-positioning maneuver **1.♕d1!** **1.♕f4** is also lethal: **1...Qd7 2.Qxf6 gxf6 3.Qe7+ Qc8 4.Qe6** picking up the bishop. **1...Wa6** If **1...Qd7 2.Qe8+! Qxe8 3.Qxe8#**. **2.Qg4 Qb7 3.Qe8+! 1-0.**



### Ex 7.11 Vallejo Pons-Karjakin

Dos Hermanas 2003

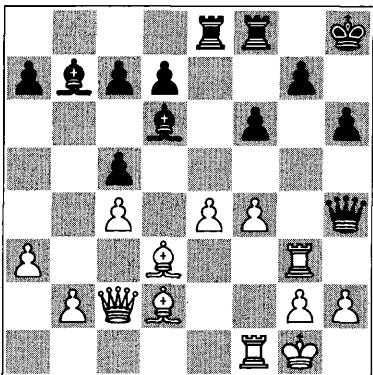
A pair of sharp direct withdrawing threats make short work of Black's scattered army: **1.♕e3! ♜g7 2.♕f3! ♜c3** The stage is now set for the forward dagger thrust **3.♕h6!**, winning the queen. **1-0.**



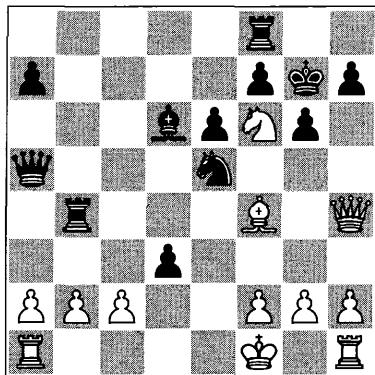
### Ex 7.12 Tolush-Kotov (variation)

Moscow 1945

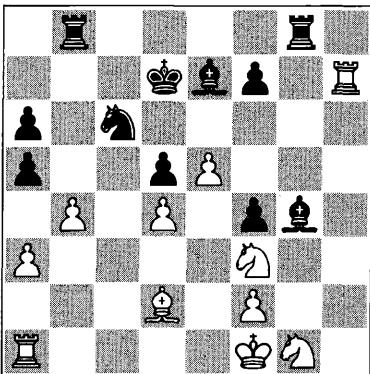
White mustn't wait a moment to unleash the power of the dark-squared ♜ with **1.f7!!** since on **1...Qxe4+** he has the decisive indirect forcing retreat **2.Qf3+! 1-0.**



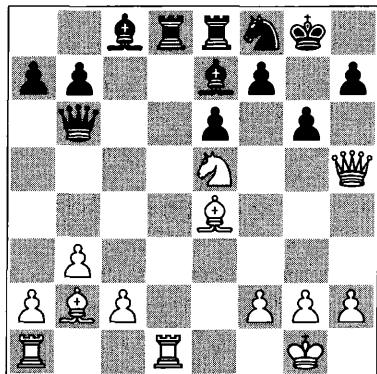
Ex 7.13 ■ An active queen?



Ex 7.14 ■ Catch  
the black king

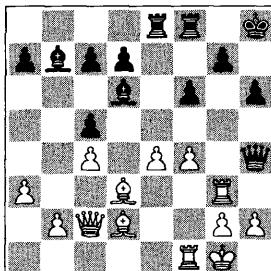


Ex 7.15 ■ Reculer pour  
mieux sauter

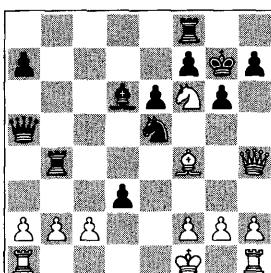


Ex 7.16 ■ Time for a stock  
mate threat?

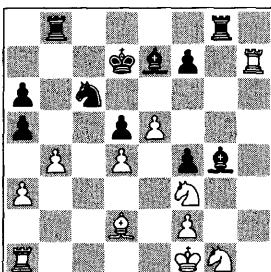
## Forcing Chess Moves



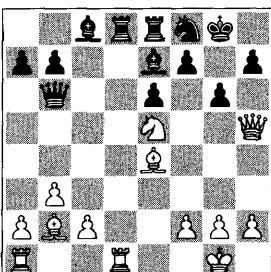
**Ex 7.13 Christiansen-Zhu Chen** Seattle 2001  
 A precise retreat carries a deadly indirect threat to snare the black ♕: 1.♕d1! Sealing off the queen's escape route in the line 1...♕xe4 2.♕xe4 ♜xe4 3.♖h3! 1...f5 2.e5 ♔e7 3.♔e1! A second indirect forcing retreat sets up a winning discovery. 3...♕d8 4.♖xg7 1-0.



**Ex 7.14 Kubanek-Kopriva** Prague 1955  
 In this curious demonstration, the queen jumps in, only to retreat back to where she came from with decisive effect! 1.♕h6+! Mistaken is the seductive 1.♘h5+? gxh5 2.♕g5+ ♔h8 3.♕f6+ ♔g8 4.♕h6 ♜g4. 1...♔xf6 2.♕h4+!! Marvelous! The direct forcing retreat leads to a stock mate after 2...♔g7 3.♔h6+ and 4.♕f6, while scarcely better is 2...♕f5 3.♕g5+ ♔e4 4.♔e1+ ♔d5 5.♖xe5+ 1-0.



**Ex 7.15 Dvoiris-Kortchnoi** Beer-Sheva 2004  
 Deceptively powerful was the repositioning shot 1...♔f5! when Black makes hay on the b1-h7 diagonal after 2.♖h6 ♔d3+ 3.♔e1 (3.♘e2 axb4) 3...♘xd4; or 2.♖h1 ♔e4 (threatening 3...♘xd4), while 2.♖xf7 ♔e6! created a winning material and positional edge. 0-1.



**Ex 7.16 Tal-Filip (variation)** Moscow 1967  
 The tremendous and thematic repositioning retreat 1.♘g4!! envisions the stock mate 1...gxh5 (or 1...f5) 2.♘h6#. No help is 1...f6 2.♗xf6!, or 1...♘d7 2.♗xg6! fxg6 (2...hxg6 3.♕h8#) 3.♘h6+ ♔f8 4.♕f3+ 1-0.

# Chapter 8 - Zwischenzugs

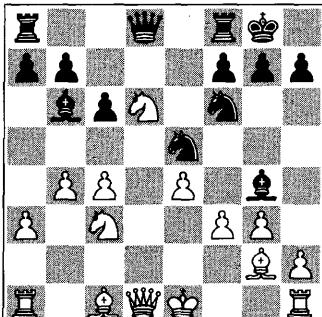
## Study Material

The ZWISCHENZUG, or ‘in-between forcing move’, has the reputation of being the most difficult tactic for strong players to find. Maybe the deepest form of HUMAN BIAS in chess calculation is the idea that when I capture your piece, you must recapture it and ‘even the score’. There are two good reasons why we all carry this natural assumption. The first is, of course, because it’s true probably 95% of the time! The second reason is because it saves time and trouble in analysis. When we calculate difficult variations, it makes life much easier if we assume that ‘routine’ trades are forced. Unfortunately, this isn’t always the case!

Your COMPUTER EYES have a difficult but amazing mission in this chapter: to become aware of the possibility that when your opponent takes your piece, you may have a much stronger move than retaking. Instead of recapturing right away, powerful computer eyes demand that you think a moment, to see if you have any other very forcing moves, which may even steal the game when the opponent least expects it.

ZWISCHENZUGS occur when one player rejects an ‘obvious, forced’ recapture in favor of a different forcing move, usually a check, mating threat or attack on the enemy queen. Like Chapter 5’s ‘equal or stronger threats’, they reject ‘knee-jerk’ defensive play, in favor of checking for stronger forcing moves. But in-between forcing moves differ from EST’s, in that the opponent has already carried out his capturing ‘threat’. The zwischenzug is really best categorized as a special type of SURPRISE FORCING MOVE. More than any other type of forcing move, it requires us to overcome the human bias toward routine, ‘normal’ play. When grandmasters miss a winning in-between forcing move, it is usually because they simply assume that the opponent must take back, and ‘forget’ about other options. In order for your computer eyes to master the power of the zwischenzug, you will have to work on creativity, and be willing to look ‘outside the box’ of normal play.

Now I will give you the real key to finding the winning zwischenzug, which luckily is the same central principle we have discussed throughout the book for improving your calculation: **ALWAYS EXAMINE THE MOST FORCING MOVES FIRST**. Once you have read this chapter and understand how in-between forcing moves work in master play, you will realize that **winning zwischenzugs are even more forcing than routine recaptures**, and thus should be examined first by discerning computer eyes!



FCM 8.1  
Singh-Sahu  
Kokhikode 1994



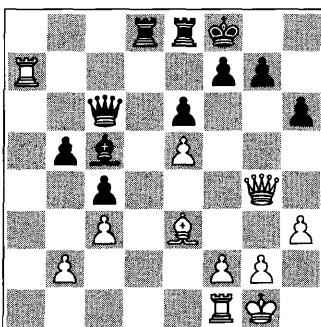
White is relying on the trick 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$  4.c5, to complete development with cxb6 and 0-0. Instead, after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ !! came the crushing zwischenzug 2... $\mathbb{Q}d4!!$ , exploiting the fork trick 3. $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ , when suddenly White can practically resign due to the threats on d6, c3 and f3.

This chapter examines five different types of zwischenzug:

- A) In-Between Checks
- B) In-Between Mate Threats
- C) In-Between Queen Attacks
- D) Promotion-Based Zwischenzugs
- E) Unusual Zwischenzugs

#### A) In-Between Checks

This is the most common type of zwischenzug. A routine recapture is replaced by a winning in-between forcing check leading to mate or gain of material.

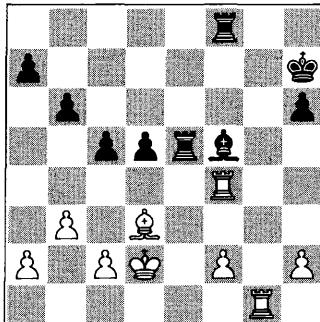


FCM 8.2  
Eingorn-Van Wely  
Halkidiki 2002



A diversionary forcing move to a unit guarding a piece may set the stage for a strong zwischenzug: 1. $\mathbb{W}f3!$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$  There was a mate threat on f7. 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{g}xf3$  1-0.

FCM 8.3  
**Miagmarsuren-Bisguier**  
Tallinn 1971



Here the diversion theme is aided by the f-file pin and pressure on the b1-h7 diagonal:

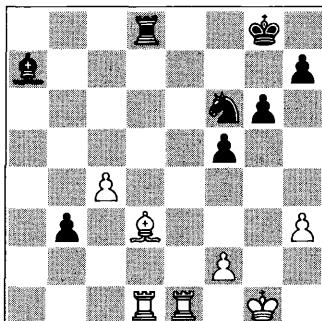
**1.  $\mathbb{H}e1!$   $\mathbb{H}xe1$**

Likewise, 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  2. $\mathbb{H}xf8$   $\mathbb{H}xe1$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  4. $\mathbb{H}f7+$  is hopeless.

**2.  $\mathbb{H}xf5!$  1-0** The in-between check 2... $\mathbb{H}xf5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5+$  steals a piece, while on 2... $\mathbb{H}fe8$  3. $\mathbb{H}e5+!$  decides.

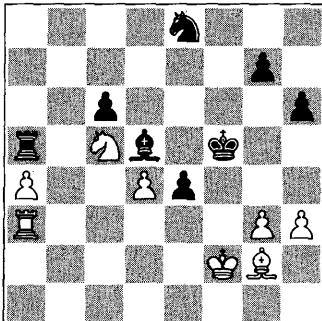


FCM 8.4  
**Nijboer-Bauer**  
Wijk aan Zee II 1999



Shown in one of its simplest forms here, the in-between check allows White to initiate discovered action on the d-file while picking off a vital pawn:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$   $\mathbb{H}xd1$  (or 1... $\mathbb{H}b8$  2. $\mathbb{H}b1$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xd1$**  and White nurses his edge to victory, e.g. 3...b2 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (tougher may be 5... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  6.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}e7$ ) 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ . **1-0.**



FCM 8.5

Alekhine-Tartakower

San Remo 1930



White is clearly better with his strong passed a-pawn, but 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  allows 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d6!$  and 2...  $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ . Alekhine found a PETIT COMBINAISON winning a pawn, based on an in-between check:

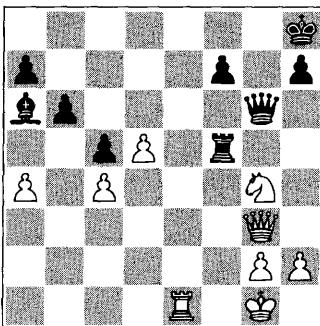
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4+!$**

Flipping the move order with 1.  $g4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  is also interesting, e.g. 2...  $\mathbb{R}xc5$  3.  $dxc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  4.  $a5$ .

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  2.  $g4+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$**

The point is 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ .

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$**  with good winning chances **1-0**.



FCM 8.6

Gligoric-Kavalek

Skopje 1972



A pair of zwischenzugs neatly conclude a winning attack:

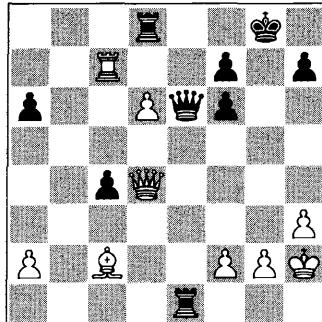
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}h6!$**

Cleverly exploiting the back rank on 1...  $\mathbb{W}xh6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ , while 1...  $\mathbb{R}f6$  (1...  $\mathbb{R}g5$  allows the fork trick 2.  $\mathbb{W}xg5!$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ ) allows 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h4+$   $\mathbb{W}h5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xf6+$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}h4+$   $\mathbb{W}h5$  7.  $\mathbb{W}f4+$   $\mathbb{W}g5$  8.  $\mathbb{W}xg5\#$ . White could also win with 1.  $d6!$  or by flipping the move order with 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ .

**1...  $\mathbb{W}xg3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8+!$**

Mopping up with the further in-between check 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5+!$  **1-0**.

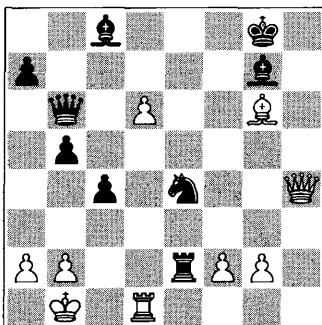
FCM 8.7  
**Tal-Geller**  
Riga 1958



Even 'hall-of-fame' tacticians have been tripped up by this elusive zwischenzug:  
**1.♕e7! ♜xe7 2.♗g4+! 1-0.**



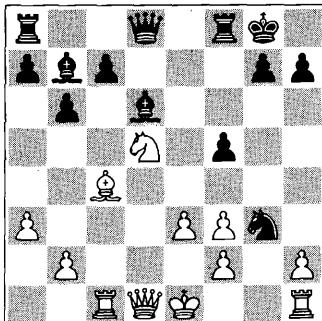
FCM 8.8  
**Reinderman-Mikhail Gurevich**  
Escaldes 1998



In-between checks play a special role in attacks against the enemy king, in which every forcing option must be considered with the utmost precision. White need not fathom the uncertainties of the recapture 1.♕xe4? when a little check first clarifies everything:

**1.♗h7+! ♜h8 (1...♝f7 2.♗e7#) 2.♗xe4+ ♜g8 3.♗d5+ ♜f8**  
On 3...♝e6 4.♗xe6+ ♜xe6 5.d7 ♜f6 6.d8♛+ wins.  
**4.♗f4+ ♜e8 5.♗f7+ ♜d8 6.♗g8+ ♜e8 7.♗xg7 1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

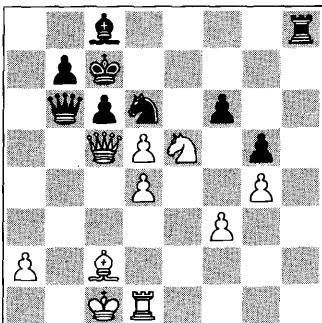


FCM 8.9  
**Johnston-Marshall**  
Chicago 1899



In a rare tactical lapse against a weaker player, the American tactical genius interpolated ... $\mathbb{Q}xg3??$  and got stung by a ‘zwisch’:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}e7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$   $hxg6$  3. $hxg3+$  and mate next 1-0.**



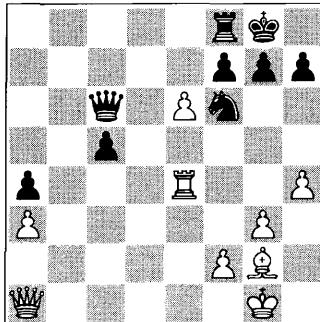
FCM 8.10  
**Timman-Lobron**  
Sarajevo 1984



Due to the often utterly forcing nature of checks, (remembering our introductory definition of a forcing move as one that LIMITS THE OPPONENT'S OPTIONS), even such high priorities as the recapture of a queen can sometimes be decisively delayed by discriminating COMPUTER EYES:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}xd6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d6+!$**  Delaying  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  for one more forcing move allows White to keep the extra piece. **1-0.**

FCM 8.11  
**Gheorghiu-Uhlmann**  
 Sofia 1967

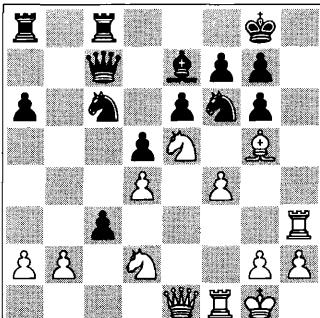


Black is relying on a so-called 'desperado' tactic, **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$**  Not 1...gxf6 2.  $\mathbb{R}g4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ . Both sides initiate a sort of suicide mission with the queen, trying to take down as many opposing units as possible before getting captured. Black wins after the routine recapture 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4??$  gxf6, but loses to the in-between checks **2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$**  when none of Black's significant units escape the pyre. **1-0.**

### B) In-Between Mate Threats

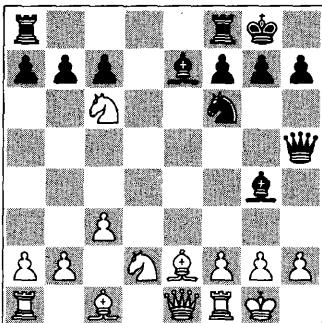
Decisive mate threats take the place of routine recaptures.

FCM 8.12  
**Pilaj-Lendwai**  
 Austria 2004/05



White has a very strong attack with the automatic recapture 1. bxc3, but COMPUTER EYES saw a chance to take the royal fortress now with the stock mate threat **1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6!!$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$**  (1...fxg6 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$  mates) **2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$**  (or 2...fxg6 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f3!$  with a corridor mate on h3) **3.  $\mathbb{Q}h4+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$**  A QUIET FORCING MOVE, with the twin mate threats 5.f5+ and 5.  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$ , finishes Black off. **4.... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5\#$ .**

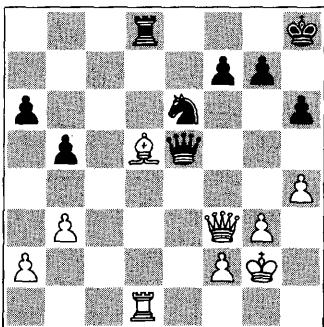
## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 8.13  
**Fischer-Byrne**  
New York 1966



How alert must our COMPUTER EYES be, when arguably the greatest human tactician ever captured a knight on c6, overlooking a winning in-between mate threat? **1...♝d6! 2.f4?!** (on 2.h3, 2...♝xe2 wins the exchange) **2....♝xe2 3.♝f2 ♝g4 0-1.** Black wins a rook due to the stock mate threat 4.♝xe2 ♜xh2+ 5.♚f1 ♜h1#.

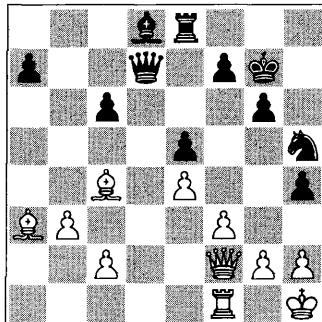


FCM 8.14  
**Bilek-Farago**  
Budapest 1973



With **1.♝xe6!** White had in mind not a rook trade, but a mating net after **1...♜xd1 2.♛a8+! ♚h7 3.♝xf7! h5 4.♛g8+ ♚h6 5.♛h8#.**

FCM 8.15  
**Nakamura-Kallio**  
Budapest 2002



Black is angling for the stock sacrifice 1... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$  2. $h\times g3$   $h\times g3$  3. $\mathbb{W}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  threatening a corridor mate, but White can barely hold with 4. $\mathbb{W}h3!$  (4. $\mathbb{W}f2?$   $\mathbb{W}d4!$ ) 4... $\mathbb{W}d8!$  (4... $\mathbb{H}h8?$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f8+!$ ) 5.f4  $\mathbb{H}h8$  6.fxe5. COMPUTER EYES then make the key deduction: he can FLIP THE MOVE ORDER and insert the winning zwischenzug:

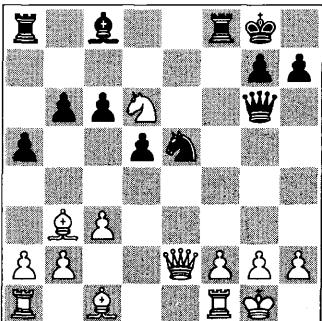
**1... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$  2. $h\times g3$   $\mathbb{Q}b6!!$**

Now 3. $\mathbb{W}e1$   $h\times g3$  4. $\mathbb{W}xg3$   $\mathbb{H}h8+$  wins the queen, so forced is:

**3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $h\times g3$  4. $\mathbb{W}e3$   $\mathbb{H}h8+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}e7!!$  0-1.** A monstrous SURPRISE FORCING MOVE! Black makes a new queen on 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$  7. $\mathbb{H}f2$   $g\times f2+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{H}h1+$ , or delivers stock mate after 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{H}h1+!$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}h4+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$ .

◆ ◆

FCM 8.16  
**Schonbauer-Despotovic**  
Yugoslavia 1974

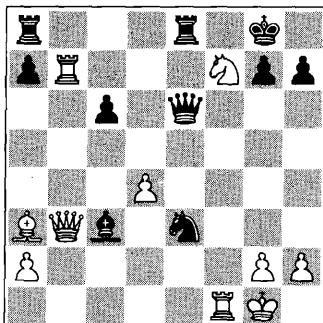


White has a defendable position after the 'normal' 1... $\mathbb{W}xd6$  2. $\mathbb{H}e1$ . What he fails to grasp is that the critical position has already arrived:

**1... $\mathbb{Q}f3+!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$**

The in-between mate threat wins at least the exchange (3. $\mathbb{H}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xg1$  4. $\mathbb{W}f1$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$ ) or more after **3.gxh3**  $\mathbb{W}xd6$  with the stock threat 4... $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$ . 0-1.

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 8.17  
**Lebedev-Gonak**  
Tulsk 1938



The zwischenzug is often a key link in a chain of variations:

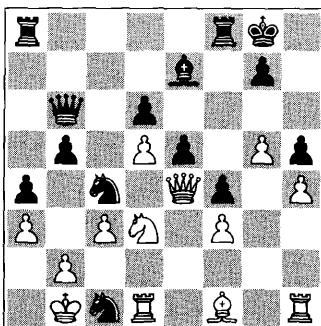
**1. ♜h6+! ♕h8!**

The first point is the stock back-rank diversion sac 1...gxh6 2.♖f8+! ♖xf8 3.♕xe6+.

**2. ♜f8+!! ♖xf8**

The beauty of the combination lies in the fact that Black now threatens mate on f1, but two critical in-between forcing moves finally swing the verdict:

**3. ♜xf8! ♖xf8!** Renewing the f1 mate threat, but finally, **4. ♜f7+!** picks off the loose queen or mates on the back row after 4...♖xf7 5.♖b8+. **1-0.**



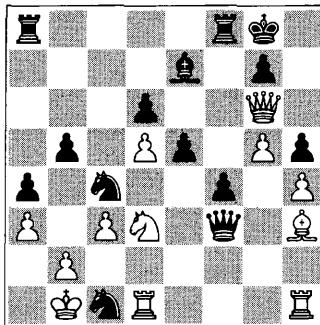
FCM 8.18  
**Luther-Arshak Petrosian**  
Schwerin 1999



We have seen earlier how one tempo may make the difference between a winning attack and defeat. It makes sense, then, that sometimes we have more important things to do than recapturing a piece:

**1. ♜h3!! ♕e3** The point is the in-between mate threat 1...♜xd3 2.♕e6+ ♔h8 3.♕g6! and 4.♕xh5#! A better defense is 2...♖f7! 3.♕f5! ♔f6! (3...♖f8 4.g6 ♔f6 5.gxf7+ ♖xf7 6.♕g6! ♖f2 7.♕xf7+ ♔h8 8.♕xh5#) 4.gxf6 ♖f2! when only COMPUTER EYES (à la

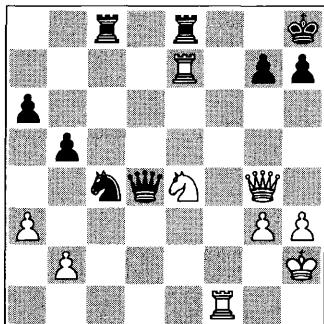
Fritz) foresee the mating lines 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  (or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ ? 6.  $f \times g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  (or 6...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}hg1+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g8+$  and mate) 7.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e8!+\mathbb{Q}c7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}c6+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  10.  $g8\mathbb{Q}+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}b7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$  or 12.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}d7+$  with mate soon. 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$

position after 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 

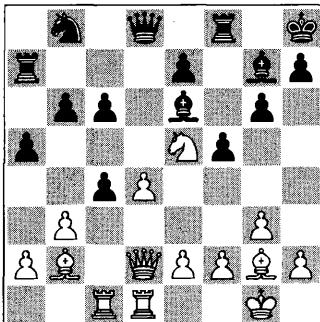
3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1?$  Winning was 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  (4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1?$  now meets with 4...  $e4!$  and 5...  $Qe5$ . Now White is threatening 5.  $\mathbb{Q}df1$ ) 4...  $Qe3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}de1$  with the decisive threat of 6.  $\mathbb{Q}h3!$  after which Black has to let go of h5. 3...  $Qe3?$  3...  $\mathbb{Q}f7!$  would have defended neatly to a draw. Now White is winning again. 4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}df1!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  1-0.

◆ ◆

FCM 8.19  
Kornfilt-Hukel  
correspondence game, 1964



The shot 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6!!$  threatens 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ , killing Black after 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xb2+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$ , or winning a whole rook via the in-between back rank mate threat 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8!$  1-0.



FCM 8.20

Wirthensohn-Lin Ta

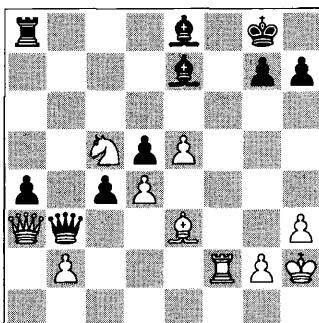
Novi Sad 1990



Black's last move ...dxc4 tried to ease his development woes after 1.♘xc4 ♘d5 or 1.bxc4 ♘xe5 and 2...♞d7. These designs were crushed by a 'zwisch':

**1.d5!** Winning the ♔e6 on account of the stock mate threat **1...cxd5 2.♘xg6+! ♖h6+ 3.♖h6+ ♔g8 4.♖xg7#.**

Even guarding g6 with 1...♔f7 allows some nice stock mates: 2.♖h6!! (anyway) 2...♘xh6 (2...♔g8 3.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 4.♘g4+ e5 5.♘xe5+ ♖f6 6.♘xf6+ ♔g8 7.♘h6#) 3.♘xf7+ ♔g8 4.♘xh6#. 1...♔f7 2.♖h6!! ♔f6! spoils the fun a little bit, but White wins easily with 3.dxc6.



FCM 8.21

Damjanovic-Lehmann

Beverwijk 1966

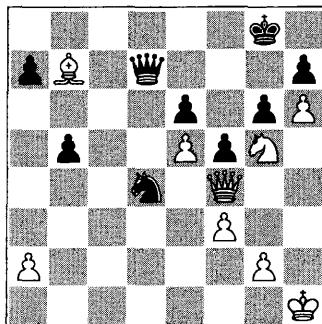


Seemingly lost, White reportedly created quite a stir in the tournament hall with a star swindle:

**1.♗g5!! ♖xa3 2.♗xe7!**, stealing a piece with the mate threat on f8. **1-0**. A better but insufficient try was 1...♘xc5 2.♖xc5 ♘f7 3.♗xf7! ♘xf7 4.♖xd5+ ♔g6 5.♖xa8 ♖xg5 6.♖e4! ♖xb2 7.h4+ ♔h5 8.♖xh7+ ♔g4 9.♖e4+ ♔h5 10.e6 ♖b8+ (10...a3 11.♖e5+ and 12.e7) 11.♖e5+ ♖xe5+ 12.dxe5 ♔g6 13.h5+ winning the race.

## C) In-Between Queen Attacks

FCM 8.22  
**Igor Ivanov-Rogers**  
Lucerne 1982



Black has relied on the zwischenzug **1...♘e2!** to save his loose knight, but it's hard to believe that this humble in-between queen attack leads to mate or win of the queen!

**2.♕e3**

Clearly the intended refutation **2.♕b4** (or **2.♕h4**) allows the mating sequence **2...♗d1+ 3.♔h2 ♗g1+ 4.♔h3 ♗h1#**.

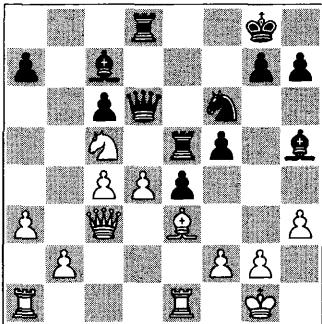
**2...♗g3+!**

White must have overlooked this lethal in-between check.

**3.♔g1 ♗d1+ 4.♔f2** (or the fork **4.♔h2 ♘f1+** bags the queen) **4...♗h1#**. A most unusual and beautiful mate!



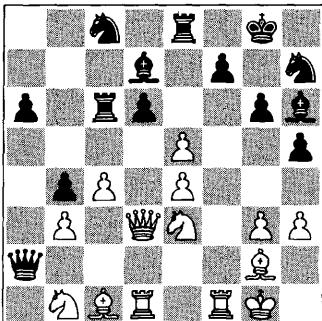
FCM 8.23  
**Shirov-Gelfand**  
Dortmund 2002



Black has played for imbalance with the exchange sacrifice ...♗xe5, hoping for counterplay after **1.dxe5 ♗xe5 2.♗xe5 ♘xe5**. Unfortunately, he comes up short after an intermediary queen hit:

**1.♘b7! ♗f8** (or **1...♗e7 2.dxe5 ♘xe5 3.♗b4**) **2.dxe5 ♕d3 3.♗b4 1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves

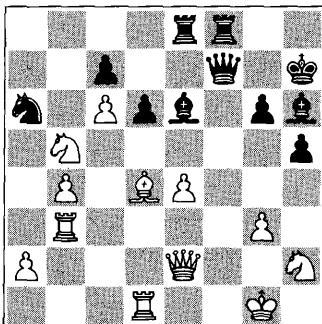


FCM 8.24  
**Atlas-Enders**  
Ptuj 1995



Black is playing for chaos in view of his ramshackle forces, but White cuts through it with an in-between queen attack:

**1.♕d5! ♜xc1 2.♕xb4! ♜b2 3.♕xc6 ♜h6 4.♕b8!** A novel forcing move wins another pawn and ends the nonsense. **1-0.**



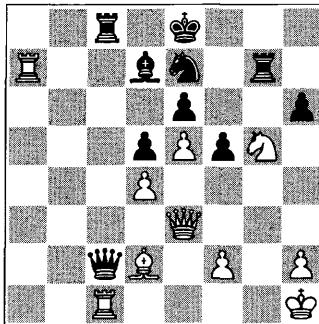
FCM 8.25  
**Ivanchuk-Ponomariov**  
Shenyang 2000



Bad is 1.♖f3 ♜e7 2.♕xd6 ♜xf3 3.♕xf3 ♜xd6, e.g. 4.♕xa6? ♜xg3+, but White can force Black to recapture with the pawn on d6 by playing ♖f3 as a zwischenzug on the second move:

**1.♕xd6! cxd6 2.♖f3! ♜e7 3.♕xa6 ♜xf3 4.♕xf3 ♜g4 5.♕d3 1-0.**

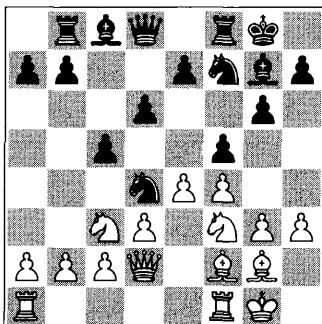
FCM 8.26  
**Muffang-Alekhine (variation)**  
 Paris 1923



In this classic example, the fantastic EST **1...f4!!** induces the winning in-between queen hit **2.♕xf4 ♜d3! 0-1**. Black also wins beautifully in the lines 2.♖xc2 fxe3 3.♗xc8+ ♜xc8! with a triple attack, or 2.♗e1 ♜g6! winning the knight due to the mate threat on g2.



FCM 8.27  
**Grigoriev-Panikovsky**  
 Kurgan 1972



Black could simply win a pawn with **1...♝xf3+** **2.♜xf3 fxe4** and **...♞h3**, but he decides to set a little trap first:

**1...fxe4!**

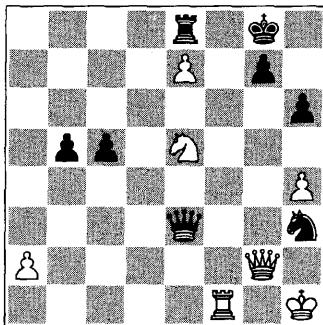
White takes the bait with the faulty zwischenzug **2.♝xd4??**, assuming that Black has let him escape with **2...cxd4?** **3.♝xe4**, but in fact he must resign after an in-between queen attack:

**2...e3!!** Winning a piece! Either capture on e3 allows the pawn fork **...cxd4**, and otherwise **3...exf2+** wins. **0-1**.

## Forcing Chess Moves

### D) Promotion-Based Zwischenzugs

As with other forcing moves, an advanced passed pawn increases the odds of success for an in-between move.

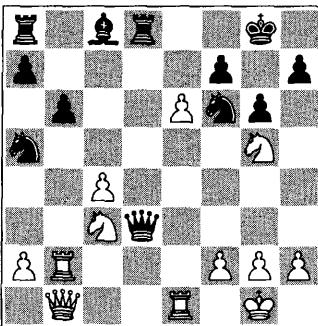


FCM 8.28  
**Gulko-Grigorian**  
Vilnius 1971



There is of course no time for 1.  $\mathbb{W}d5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}f8??$   $\mathbb{W}g1\#$ , but CHANGING THE MOVE ORDER leads to a happier result:

1.  $\mathbb{B}f8+!$   $\mathbb{B}xf8$  (or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g6\#$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{W}d5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{exf}8\mathbb{Q}+!$  More forcing than other (losing) promotions! It allows only one (bad) option: 3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}eg6\#$ .



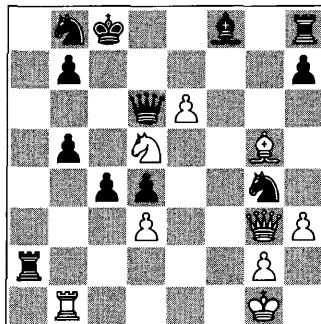
FCM 8.29  
**Conquest-Hracek**  
Germany Bundesliga 1996/97



Making a new queen can be an imposing brand of in-between move, more so since it often happens with check:

1.  $e7!$   $\mathbb{B}d7?$  The point is the promotion zwischenzug 1...  $\mathbb{W}xb1$  2.  $\mathbb{exd}8\mathbb{W}+$ , but there was another snag which Black could have prevented with 1...  $\mathbb{B}d4!:$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d5!$   $\mathbb{B}xd5$  (2...  $\mathbb{W}xb1$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+ \mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e8+$  (4.e8 $\mathbb{Q}+!?$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (4...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{B}xb1$ ) 3.  $e8\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{cx d5}$  1-0.

FCM 8.30  
**Spassky-Reshko**  
Leningrad 1959



White's attack is not for the faint-hearted; he's down a rook and knight, a queen trade is threatened, and inadequate is 1.  $\mathbb{W}xg4?$   $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ . Spassky shows why he was such a feared attacker in his prime:

**1.e7!**

Hanging queens can sometimes be ignored when the object is to replace them with stronger new ones!

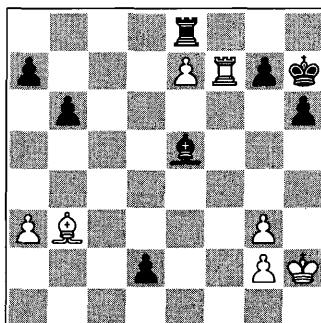
**1.... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$**

Loses outright, as does 1...  $\mathbb{W}xg3$  2. e8  $\mathbb{W}\#$ . The best try was 1...  $\mathbb{W}xg2+!$  returning all the material, but White should win with 2.  $\mathbb{W}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xg4+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xb5$  threatening 5.  $\mathbb{Q}b6+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{W}xd7$  7.  $\mathbb{B}xb7+$ ; on 4...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xd7!$  wins.

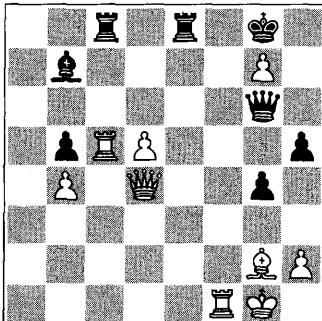
**2.  $\mathbb{W}xg4+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (2...  $\mathbb{W}d7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b6+)$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f5!$  winning, e.g. 5...  $\mathbb{B}e2$  6.  $\mathbb{B}xb5$  etc. **1-0**.**



FCM 8.31  
**Dückstein-Kaluanasaram**  
New Delhi 1961



The bishop's dance is quite funny and instructive, as is the in-between check enabling promotion. **1.  $\mathbb{Q}c2+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  2.  $\mathbb{B}f8+!$   $\mathbb{B}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b3+!$  1-0.**



FCM 8.32  
Dizdarevic-Atalik  
Sarajevo 2004



When a passer is bound for glory, there may be no need for niceties like pausing to recapture pieces:

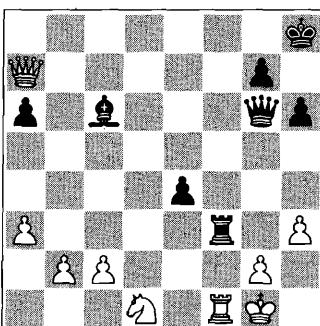
**1.d6! ♜xg2**

On 1...♜xc5, 2.d7! wins material, e.g. 2...♝cc8 3.♝xb7 ♜cd8 4.♝d5+.

**2.d7! ♜c6**

2...♝xf1 3.♝xc8 spells annihilation.

**3.dxc8♛ ♜xc8 4.♝f6 1-0.**



FCM 8.33  
Yudovich-Botvinnik  
(variation)

Moscow 1931

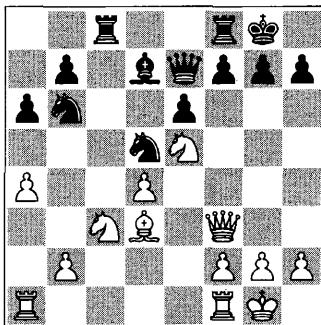


White is well-prepared for 1...♝xf1+ 2.♝xf1 e3 3.♝xe3 preventing mate on g2, but again by inverting the moves Black rams the passer through:

**1...e3!** and after **2.♝xf3** (**2.♝xe3 ♜xe3? 3.♝xe3 ♜xg2#**), not the routine recapture 2...♝xf3?? 3.♝xe3 but the zwischenzug **2...e2! 0-1**. The power of a double promotion threat (on d1 or e1) should be duly noted by COMPUTER EYES.

## E) Unusual Zwischenzugs

FCM 8.34  
**Hertan-Fang**  
 Watertown 1996



White won a pawn with a neat in-between capture:

**1.a5! ♜xc3 2.♕xb7!**

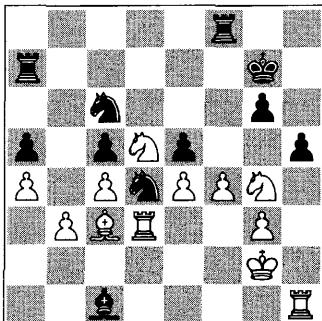
... and was able to win the ending after **2...♝b8 3.♛a7.**

I was not crazy enough to try the brave **3.♛xa6 ♜c8! 4.♝c6 ♛d6 5.♝xb8? ♜xa6 6.♝xa6.** A better chance may be **4.♝xh7+!** (instead of **4.♝c6)** **4...♚xh7 5.♛d3+** and **6.bxc3,** with great compensation for the piece, but the best of all is the immediate **3.♝c6!** winning.

**3...♝a8 4.♛xb6 ♜d5 5.♛c5 1-0.**

◆ ◆

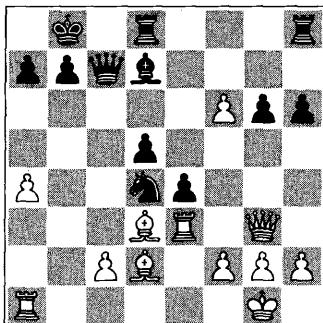
FCM 8.35  
**Petursson-Van Wely**  
 Reykjavik 1994



Crisp technique is a hallmark of GM COMPUTER EYES. Against strong opposition, precise tactics in winning positions eliminate a long and uncertain technical process.

**1.♝xe5! ♜xe5** when after the 'normal' **2.fxe5** he can still flail with **2...♝g5 or ...♝a3,** but the elegant zwischenzug **2.♜xd4!** completely blew up Black's position. **1-0.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 8.36

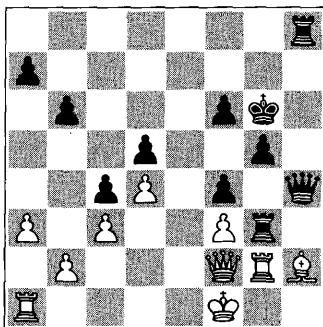
**Fischer-Schweber**

Buenos Aires 1970



An unsuspecting Black thought he was taking the initiative, until Fischer's unsurpassed COMPUTER EYES uncorked an amazing zwischenzug:

**1.  $\mathbb{H}xe4!! \mathbb{Q}xg3$  2.  $\mathbb{H}xd4!!$** , regaining the queen with 3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$ , when suddenly Black's proud center is reduced to dust, and White won rather easily with the strong f6 passer. **1-0**.



FCM 8.37

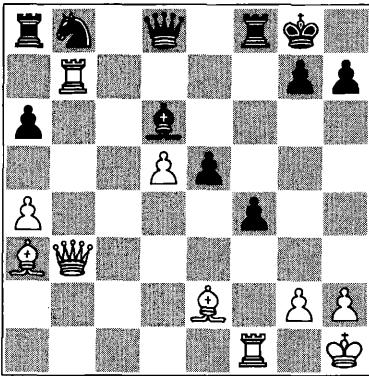
**De Firmian-Bronstein  
(variation)**

Oviedo (rapid) 1993

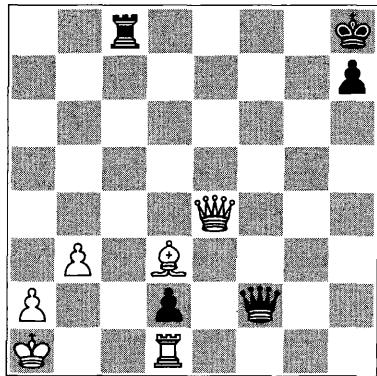


The justification of this key line of Black's attack was a sensational zwischenzug:  
**1...  $\mathbb{B}xg2!!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xh4 \mathbb{B}xh2!!$**  regaining the queen with a simple win, since 3.  $\mathbb{W}g4?$   $\mathbb{R}h1+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{B}8h2+$  5.  $\mathbb{W}g2 \mathbb{B}xg2+$  picks off a rook. **0-1**.

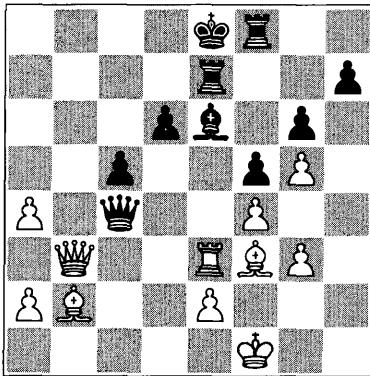
## Chapter 8 - Exercises



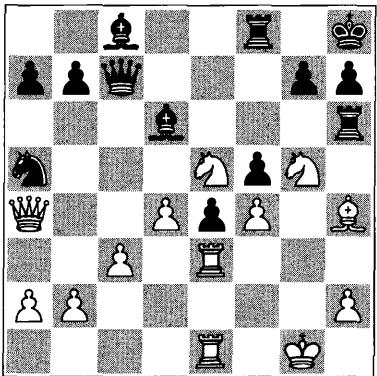
Ex 8.1  Time for  
a mating attack?



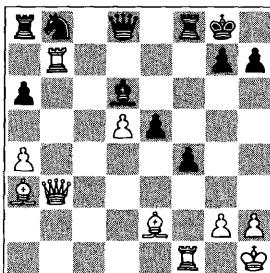
Ex 8.2  Who comes first?



Ex 8.3  Find the  
in-between check



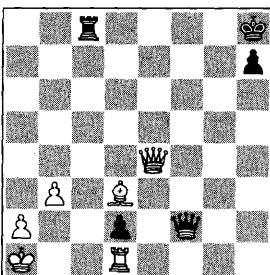
Ex 8.4  Find the  
in-between attack



**Ex 8.1 Jones-Aldrete Lobo**

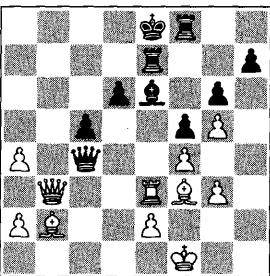
correspondence game, 2000

With the luxury of 'correspondence time' White discovered the marvelous in-between mate threat **1.  $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$** .  
 **$\mathbb{Q}xa3$**  Black is amazingly helpless, e.g. 1...  $\mathbb{H}f6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{H}h6$  (2...  $h6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g4$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  (3...  $g5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{W}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$   $\mathbb{W}xf8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$  and again the rook invasion is crushing. **2.  $\mathbb{Q}d3!!$**  Here it is! The light squares are indefensible as ...  $g6$  hangs mate on  $h7$ .  
**2...  $h6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g6$  1-0.**



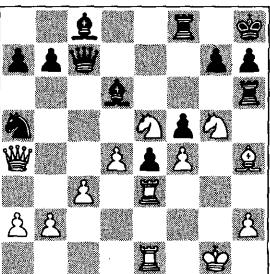
**Ex 8.2 Fernandez-Lommer** Venice 1967

White is relying on the attack against  $h7$  to save him after 1...  $\mathbb{A}c1+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$ , but a shock awaits him with the promotion-based zwischenzug **1...  $\mathbb{W}f6+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{A}c1+!$  3.  $\mathbb{A}xc1$   $\mathbb{W}a1+!!$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xa1$   $dxc1\mathbb{W}+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}c3#$ .**



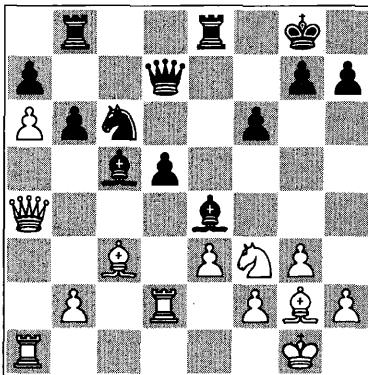
**Ex 8.3 Shirov-Bareev (variation)** Lvov 1990

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$**  Or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}b8+$   $\mathbb{A}c8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b6+$   $\mathbb{A}c7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{A}xf6$  5.  $\mathbb{A}e8\#$ . **2.  $\mathbb{A}xe6!$   $\mathbb{W}xb3$**  (2...  $\mathbb{W}xe6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$ ). Now the in-between check **3.  $\mathbb{A}xe7+!$**  wins a piece. **1-0.**

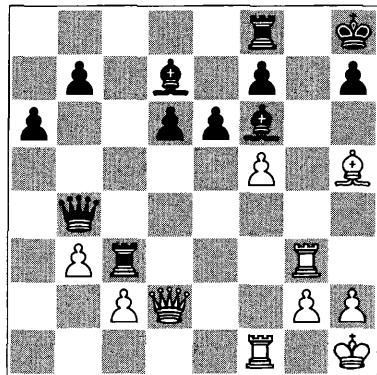


**Ex 8.4 Puschmann-Lengyel** Hungary 1971

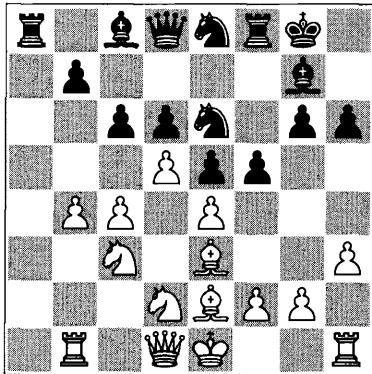
Completely devastating was the in-between queen attack **1.  $\mathbb{Q}gf7+!$   $\mathbb{A}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d8!$  1-0.**



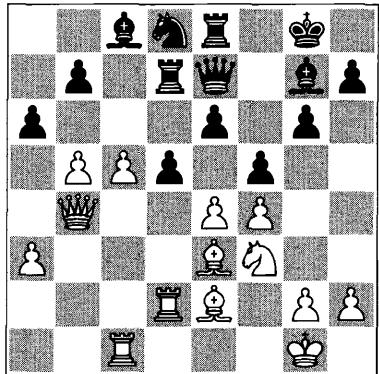
Ex 8.5  Find the  
in-between check



Ex 8.6  Block the defense

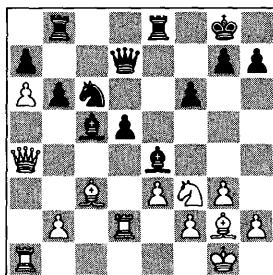


Ex 8.7  Can White  
win a piece?



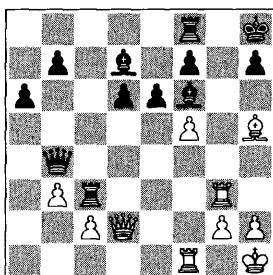
Ex 8.8  Can White  
win material?

## Forcing Chess Moves



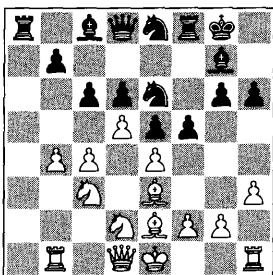
### Ex 8.5 Psakhis-Har Zvi Israel 2003

White neatly picks a pawn with the in-between check **1.♕e5!** **♔xe5** Or 1...fxe5 2.♗xe4. **2.♗xe4** The d-pawn is a goner and Black is busted. **2...♚xa4** 3.♗xd5+! 1-0.



### Ex 8.6 Tal-Platonov Dubna 1973

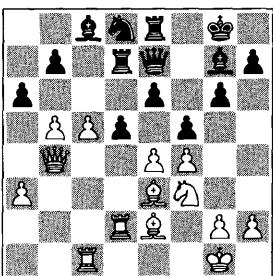
White has sacked a piece and must avoid the back-rank based shot 1.fxe6? ♜f3!! What follows is pure Tal magic: **1.♘h6 ♜xg3** Black appears OK after 2.hxg3 ♜g7, 2.♗xf8+ ♜g8 or 2.♗xf6+ ♜g7, but Tal had planned something else: **2.♗g6!!** An unbelievably strong in-between mate threat and, to my eyes, one of the most beautiful moves in chess history. **2...♜xg6** The twin h7-f8 mate threats can only be put off for one more turn. **3.fxg6 fxg6 4.♗xf8#**.



### Ex 8.7 Lars Bo Hansen-Nijboer

Wijk aan Zee 1995

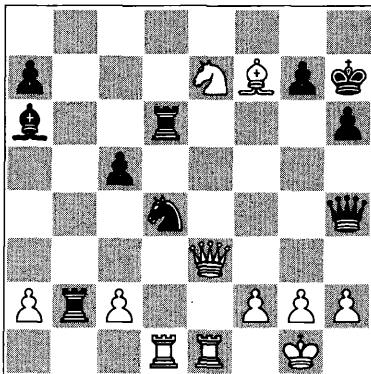
Black was no doubt mortified when the clever thematic idea of regaining the piece by **1.dxe6 f4** blew up in his face after the in-between queen attack **2.e7! ♜xe7 3.♗b6 1-0!**



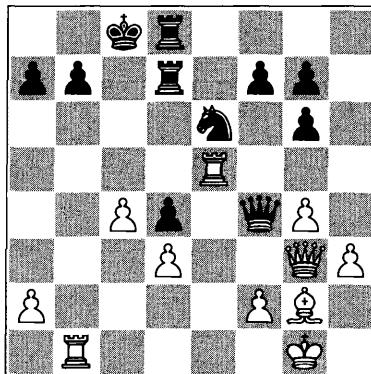
### Ex 8.8 Jauregui Andrade-Fischer

Santiago 1959

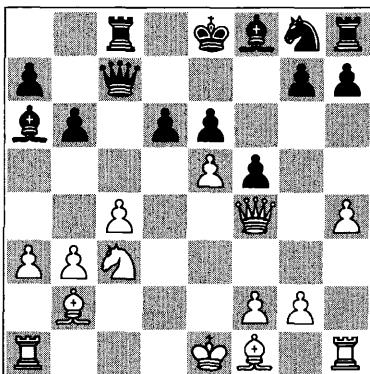
Even young Fischer had to pay his tactical dues after **1.c6!** when the queen was hunted down in broad daylight after 1...bxc6 2.♗c5 ♜f6 3.e5 ♜f7 4.♗g5. That leaves just **1...♛xb4**, when the promotion-based zwischenzug **2.cxd7!**, threatening to queen on two different squares, wins outright. **1-0**.



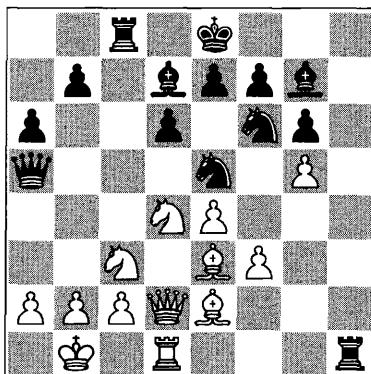
Ex 8.9  Who comes first?



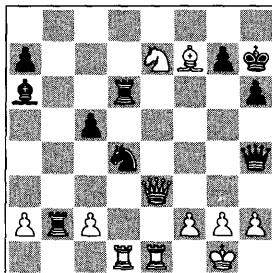
Ex 8.10  Don't give  
Black time



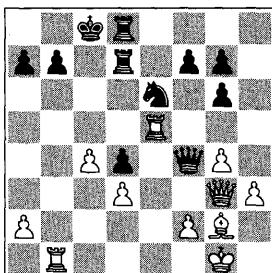
Ex 8.11  Find the soft spot



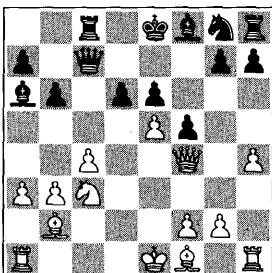
Ex 8.12  Don't give  
Black time



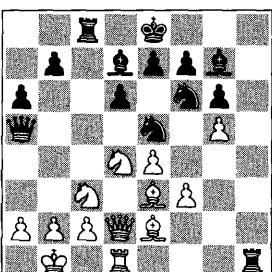
**Ex 8.9 Ye Jiangchuan-Svidler** Shanghai 2001  
In a pitched and treacherous tactical battle, White captures the flag with a critical in-between check: **1.♕f5!** Forcing the reply, since **1... ♔xf5 2.♔e8 h5 3.♔g8+ ♔h6 4.♖xd6+ ♔xd6 5.♔e6+** mates quickly. **1... ♔e2+ 2.♔h1 ♕xd1 3.♔g6+!** The proverbial fly in the ointment; before recapturing, White will deliver mate on the back row or capture the queen with check. **1-0.**



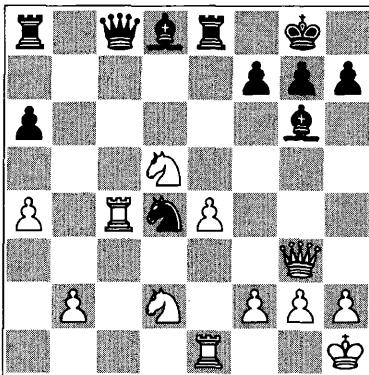
**Ex 8.10 Tartakower-Winter** Hastings 1935/36  
**1.♖c5+ ♔b8** On **1... ♔c7** comes either **2.♕xb7+**, **2.♖xc7+** or **2.♔xf4**. **2.♔xb7 ♕xb7** The incredible point is the cataclysmic mating zwischenzug **2... ♔xg3+ 3.♔g2+!!**, but now the white queen lives to join the attack! **3.♖xb7+ ♔xb7 4.♔g2+! ♔b8 5.♖b5+ ♔c7 6.♖b7+ ♔d6 7.♖d5#.**



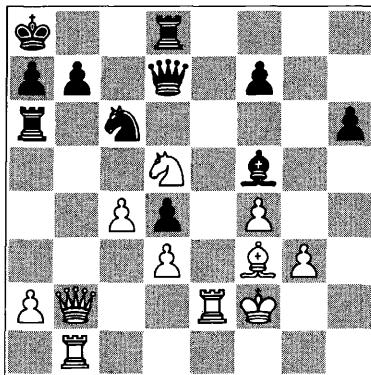
**Ex 8.11 Krasenkow-Macieja** Warsaw 2004  
Black's dubious opening tabiya is fried to a crackly crunch by the in-between queen attack **1.c5! ♔xf1 1...dxe5 2.♔a4+! 2.cxd6! ♔d7 3.♔xf1 1-0.**



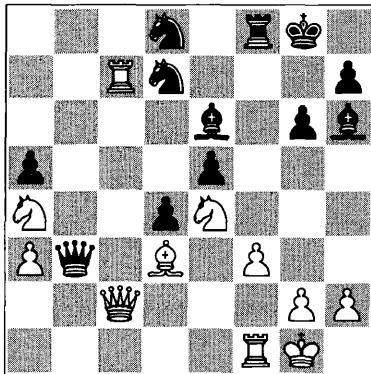
**Ex 8.12 Tal-NN** Stuttgart simul 1958  
Black wants to seal the h-file with **1.♖xh1 ♔h5**, but after a few shocking intermezzos there is no position left to play! **1.gxf6!! ♕xd1+ 2.♔xd1!** The **♔a5** and the **♗g7** are attacked. **2... ♕xd2 3.fxg7!** A promotion-based zwischenzug made possible by the marvelous coordination of White's minors. **3... e6** Clever despair; if **4.♔xd2 ♔e7. 4.g8♕+ ♔e7 5.♔xc8** Better still, the rye **5.♔g7!** **1-0.**



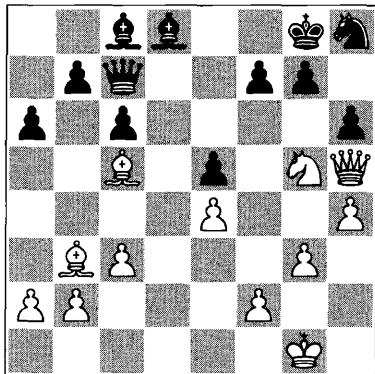
Ex 8.13 ■ Should the queen budge?



Ex 8.14 □ Find the most forcing move

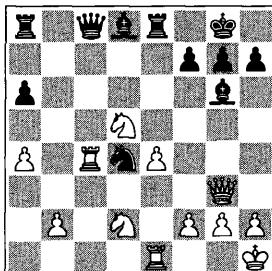


Ex 8.15 □ Does Black's clever defense work?



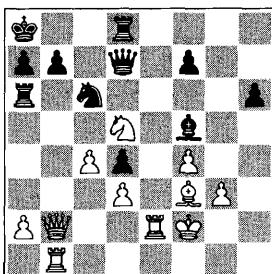
Ex 8.16 □ Soften up the defense

## Forcing Chess Moves



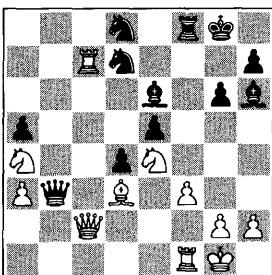
### Ex 8.13 Yudasin-Psakhis Frunze 1981

White's ambitious attacking plan was derailed by the forcing shot **1...Qf5!** when Black kept his extra piece and won after **2.Qf3 Qe6**, since worse is allowing the in-between check **2.Qxc8 Qxg3+ 3.hxg3 Qxc8 0-1.**



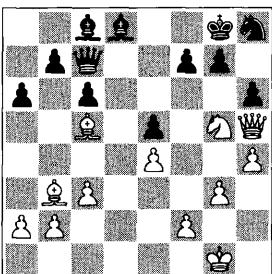
### Ex 8.14 Ardiansyah-Unzicker Lucerne 1982

**1.Qe7!! Qxe7** One can easily empathize with Black's thought process: **2.Qxe7 Bb6** and all is well. This is how we mortals think! COMPUTER EYES must see deeper: three completely forcing moves and it's all over! Confronted with White's first move, Unzicker resigned, as he now saw **2.Qxb7+!!** The MOST FORCING MOVE must be considered first! **2...Qxb7 3.Qc7+!** The marvelous point. **3...Qb8 4.Qxa6+ Qc8 5.Qxb7** With further torment after **5...Bd7 6.Qb8#; 5...Be8 6.Qb8+ Qd7 7.Qc5+, or 5...Bd6 6.Qb8+ Qd7 7.Qc5+ Qc7 8.Qb7+ Qd8 9.Qxa7. 1-0.**



### Ex 8.15 Burger-Uhlmann Budapest 1982

White is winning, but Black has visions of 'toughing it out' against a lesser-known opponent. **1.Qxd7! Qxc2 2.Qf6+!** salts the win, mating on h7 or taking more material with the in-between check **2...Qxf6 3.Qxd8+.** **1-0.**



### Ex 8.16 Smyslov-Liublinsky Moscow 1949

White forces the attack home with the in-between queen attack **1.Qxf7! Qxf7 2.Qb6! Qxb6** On other queen moves (Liublinsky played **2...Qd7**) follows simply **3.Qxd8** with an extra pawn-and much more! **3.Qxf7+ Qh7 4.Qg8+ Qg6 5.Qe8+ Qh7 6.Qg8+ Qh8 7.Qf7+ Qh7 8.Qg8#.**

# Chapter 9 - Defensive Forcing Moves

## Study Material

Next we consider a form of **HUMAN BIAS** which has much to do with certain personalities and game situations.

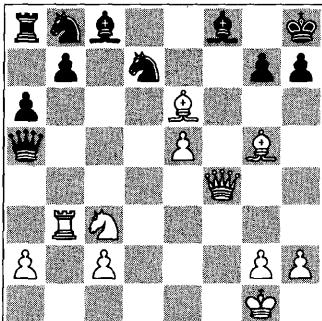
Many strong attackers, from club players all the way up to world-class GM's, are known to play much more weakly when defending a difficult position. Successful attacking play requires a certain degree of optimism, and gifted attackers feel inspired by positions that seem to hold a wealth of sacrificial ideas. Even certain positional players who try to avoid attacking situations, may be overcome by 'attacker's blindness' when they 'accidentally' find themselves in an aggressive position. Perhaps they discover a beautiful checkmating idea in analysis, and suddenly it seems as if no power on heaven and earth can possibly stop their wonderful attack...

However, becoming a better player involves continually striving for greater objectivity. Computers have no prejudice against finding the winning forcing move in 'defensive' positions. In fact, the beasts seem to rather enjoy accepting our 'brilliant' sacrifices, and laughing all the way to the bank with their extra material, as our initiative disintegrates to dust.

A well-rounded human player must also try to relish the task of analyzing defensive forcing moves well, while under attack. This type of cool defense will win you many points. The trick of successful chess is to **pose the opponent maximal problems** in every situation. Players who put their utmost energy into deeply calculating inferior positions can frustrate attackers to the breaking point, forcing them to find perhaps the one fine line to victory.

Furthermore, training your **COMPUTER EYES** to find **DEFENSIVE FORCING MOVES** will also make you a better attacker! This apparent paradox is really quite logical; finding strong defensive ideas in the midst of **BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION** lets you anticipate your opponent's resources and avoid pitfalls.

If you can learn to relish stout, hard-working, deeply calculated defenses in the fine tradition of chess giants like Lasker, Kortchnoi, Petrosian and Topalov, you will no doubt reap the benefit in 'stolen' wins and draws. In this chapter we will look at situations where the attack proves to be just a mirage; and apparently grim positions in which the defender shows that (s)he too has access to brilliant forcing moves.



FCM 9.1

**Tringov-Fischer**

Havana 1965



Before this game, 1... $\mathbb{W}xe5?$  was theory, with an inferior ending after 2. $\mathbb{W}xe5$ . But Fischer demonstrates his COMPUTER EYES in the defense:

**1... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$  2. $\mathbb{W}f7$**

The first point is 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}c5+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}xc3$  with a winning back rank threat.

**2... $\mathbb{W}c5+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6!$**

The second point, and a beauty. 4. $exf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  and the attack is a mirage—the  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  falls and black is just winning.

**4. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$  5. $\mathbb{W}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}eg4!$  0-1.** The  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  hangs, and mate greets 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h3+!$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}g1\#$ . Poor Tringov! Ambushed in the theoretical jungle.

In this chapter we'll look at two types of defensive forcing moves:

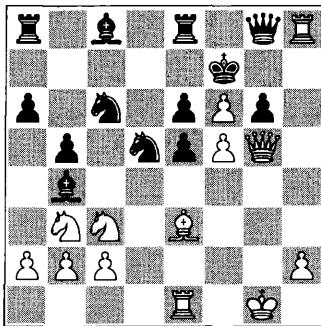
**A) Forcing Defensive ‘Stoppers’** The defender disarms the attacker's threats and wins. A special case is given here as A2: stalemate combinations, where the attack is repelled by a combination that culminates in stalemating the defender, resulting in a draw.

**B) Counterattacking Defensive Forcing Moves** The defender repels threats and becomes the attacker.

## A1) Forcing Defensive 'Stoppers'

These are powerful defensive forcing moves that refute the enemy attack and win.

FCM 9.2  
Liss-Smirin  
Tel Aviv 1999



White has played the stock diversion shot  $\mathbb{Q}h8$ , playing for mate after 1... $\mathbb{W}xh8?$  2. $\mathbb{B}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ . Black's deft DEFENSIVE STOPPER shows that the attack was based on a hallucination:

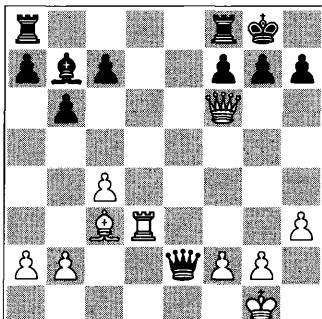
**1...gx f5! 2. $\mathbb{W}g7+$**

After 2. $\mathbb{B}xg8$   $\mathbb{W}xg8$ , Black regains the pinned queen and wins.

**2... $\mathbb{W}xg7+$  3.f x g7  $\mathbb{Q}d7!$  0-1.**

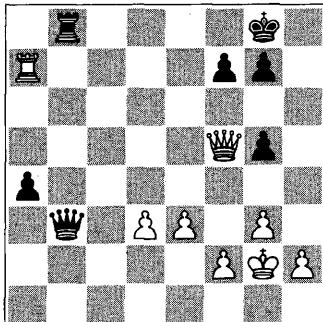


FCM 9.3  
Ahues-NN  
Berlin 1954



White has 'caught' his amateur opponent in the simple stock combination 1...gx f6 2. $\mathbb{B}g3+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ : Black must also capitulate on 1... $\mathbb{W}e1+?$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ . But wait...

**1... $\mathbb{W}g4!!$  0-1.** Now White is the one who must resign after 2.hxg4 gx f6 or 2. $\mathbb{B}g3$   $\mathbb{W}xg3!$ .



FCM 9.4

Curt Hansen-Sadvakasov

Skanderborg 2003



COMPUTER EYES use accurate brute force calculation to determine when the attack is a mirage. Most players would be quite scared of Black's a-pawn, especially since after 1.  $\mathbb{W}a5?$   $\mathbb{B}xd3$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xa4$   $\mathbb{B}b1!$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d7$  the win is difficult. But White foresees a still more cold-blooded winning method:

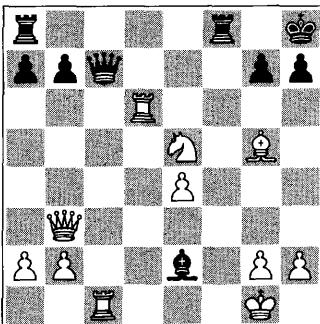
**1.  $\mathbb{W}d7!$  a3**

If 1...  $\mathbb{B}b4$  2.  $\mathbb{B}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f5+$   $g6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h3+$   $\mathbb{B}h4$  5.  $gxh4$   $\mathbb{W}d5+$  6.  $\mathbb{W}f3$ .

**2.  $\mathbb{W}d6!$  a2**

More tenacious was 2...  $\mathbb{B}b4$ , but now 3.  $\mathbb{W}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}a5$  works because the rook is attacked: 4...  $a2$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xa2$   $\mathbb{B}xd3$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xf7$ .

**3.  $\mathbb{B}xa2!$  with a won ending. 1-0.**



FCM 9.5

Alekhine-Verlinsky

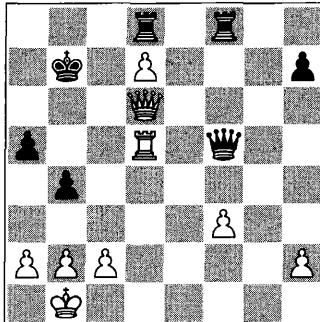
Odessa 1918



Black's resistance was based on the back rank threat 1.  $\mathbb{B}xc7??$   $\mathbb{B}f1\#$ , but White found a defensive shot which killed all counterplay at once:

**1.  $\mathbb{W}d1!!$   $\mathbb{W}a5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  3.  $\mathbb{B}d5$  1-0.**

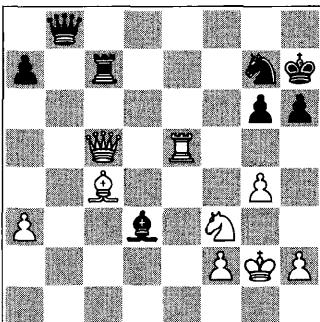
FCM 9.6  
**Kolitzki-Har Zvi**  
 Israel (rapid) 1998



Naturally, large sacrifices require great precision; otherwise COMPUTER EYES will strip away the 'emperor's new clothes' and leave the attacker naked. White's mating idea 1...  $\mathbb{W}xf3??$  2.  $\mathbb{B}b5+$  dissolved to dust with a stout forcing defensive stopper:  
 1...  $\mathbb{B}f6!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b5+$   $\mathbb{B}b6$  0-1.



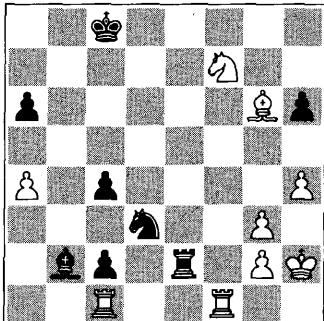
FCM 9.7  
**Bisguier-Tal**  
 Reykjavik 1971



White has let himself fall into Black's 'trap' ...  $\mathbb{R}c7$ , apparently winning a piece, because he can turn the tables with a surprise defensive blow:

**1. ♖g8+!! ♕xg8 2. ♖d5+**

And now Black should play for the better side of a probable draw with 2...  $\mathbb{R}f7!$  3.  $\mathbb{R}e7!$  (3.  $\mathbb{W}xd3?$   $\mathbb{R}xf3!$ ) 3...  $\mathbb{W}f4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf7+!$  (bad is 4.  $\mathbb{R}xf7?$   $\mathbb{W}xg4+$  5.  $\mathbb{R}h1$   $\mathbb{R}e4!)$  4...  $\mathbb{W}xf7$  5.  $\mathbb{R}xf7$   $\mathbb{R}xf7$  6.  $\mathbb{R}e5+$   $\mathbb{R}e6$  7.  $\mathbb{R}xd3$   $g5!$  (7...  $\mathbb{R}d5!?$  8.  $\mathbb{R}f4+$   $\mathbb{R}c4$  9.  $\mathbb{R}xg6$   $\mathbb{R}b3$  10.  $f4$   $\mathbb{R}xa3$  11.  $f5!$ ), since he remained worse after 2...  $\mathbb{W}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd3$  1-0.



FCM 9.8

**Golod-Berkovich**

Rishon-le-Zion 2002

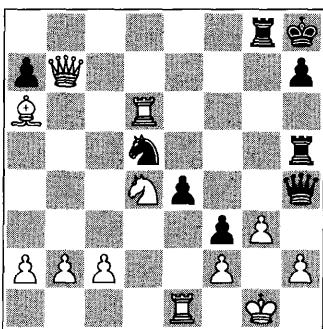


Black seems likely to win his bet that the imposing passer on c2 is worth more than a rook, but White's strong forcing defensive play defuses the bomb:

**1.♕d6+! ♕d7 2.♘xc4 ♘xc1 (2...♗xc1 3.♘xd3) 3.♘xb2 ♘b3 4.♘d3 ♜d2 5.♘c1 ♜d1?**

Time pressure seems like the culprit, as White still has tough work ahead on 5...♘d4 6.♘d3!; or 5...♘c5 6.♘f4!, winning after 6...♘d1 7.♘c4!.

**6.♘f7+ 1-0.**



FCM 9.9

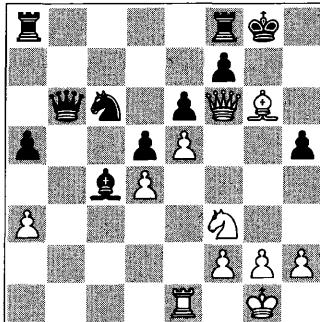
**Onescus-Gama**

Romania 1956



Black suffered a case of 'attacker's blindness', seeing only mate until the giant defensive meteorite **1.♘xf3! exf3 2.♗g7+!!** (kaboom!) came crashing down. After 2...♗xg7 or 2...♜xg7 3.♖e8+ ♜g8 4.♖xg8+, the pawn on g3 is freed from the pin and decides the game. **1-0.**

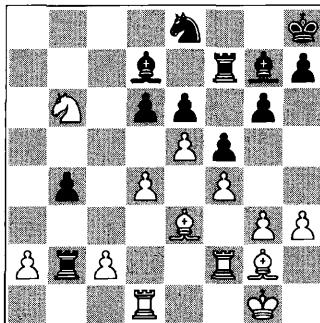
FCM 9.10  
**Wohl-Karatorossian**  
 Ubeda 2000



Black endures a few scary moments before the attack runs out of fuel. Can your COMPUTER EYES distinguish a futile attack from the real thing? Tenacity, and precise brute force calculation, are the keys! 1... $\mathbb{Q}d8!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h7+!$  Otherwise Black trades queens or safely captures the bishop. 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}b6!$  In military terms, 'conditions on the ground' have changed, and the black queen must reoccupy this forward post to defend and counterattack. 6. $\mathbb{h}4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$  Black must relish the defensive task! He is planning to sac his queen on 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  with advantage. Less clear was 6... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$   $\mathbb{Q}d8!$  (not 8... $\mathbb{Q}xh7?$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$  with a draw) 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}exf6$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$ , but his best move was 6... $\mathbb{Q}b1+!$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$ . 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  0-1. It may not look pretty, but Black walks away on 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ , and holds cleanly on 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{Q}a1+$  9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  pinning the rook.

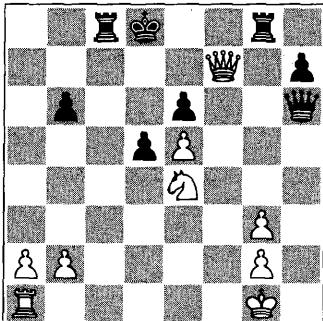


FCM 9.11  
**Short-Wang Zili**  
 Beijing 2000



There is a marked aesthetic difference between a 'brilliant' defense and a 'stodgy' defense, but COMPUTER EYES don't play favorites as long as the goal is reached. Hence the 'marauding' black rook is laid to waste by two 'ugly' defensive shots:

1. $\mathbb{R}a1!$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c1!$  1-0.



FCM 9.12  
Cappallo-Fang  
Massachusetts 1998

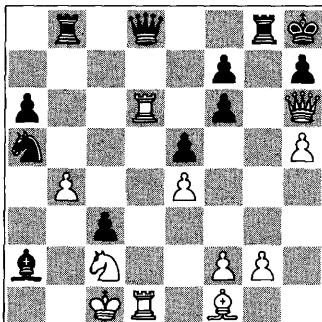


Black's motto was 'steady as she goes' in this hairy encounter. He could easily lose his nerve and let White off with 1...  $\mathbb{W}g6?$  2.  $\mathbb{W}b7$   $\mathbb{W}xe4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xb6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}b7+=$  or 1...  $\mathbb{H}f8?$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{H}c6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b7$  or even 3.  $\mathbb{H}f1!?=$ . A better try is 1...  $\mathbb{H}c1+!$  2.  $\mathbb{H}xc1$   $\mathbb{W}xc1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}xb2+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}c1+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}c2+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}d1+$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}g4!$ . Instead comes a strong and precise 'sturdy' defensive shot:

1...  $\mathbb{H}g7!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f6+$

The king escapes to safety on 2.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$ .

2...  $\mathbb{W}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{exf6}$   $\mathbb{H}gc7!$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{H}c1+$  5.  $\mathbb{H}xc1$   $\mathbb{H}xc1+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  0-1.

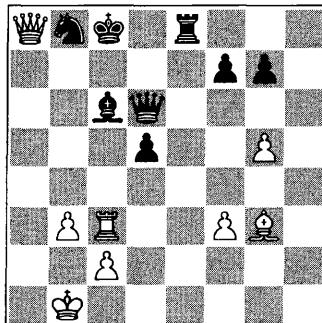


FCM 9.13  
Feher-Priehoda  
Hungary 1994/95



By contrast, a brilliant defensive ploy was the only ticket here to refute Black's clever mating idea 1.  $\mathbb{H}xd8??$   $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$ . Unintimidated COMPUTER EYES found the monster forcing move 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!!$  and Black resigned; there is no more mate if Black captures the bishop, and on queen moves follows 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ . 1-0.

FCM 9.14  
**Maur de Fosses (city)-Essen (city)**  
 telephone match 1986

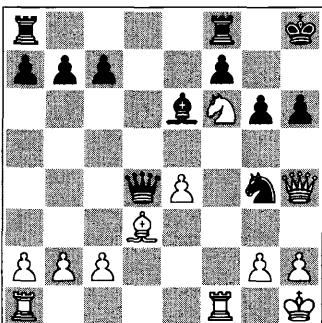


Black looks like he's facing a tough defense. On 1... $\mathbb{W}xg3$ , 2. $\mathbb{B}xc6+$  is very hazardous, even though the king may stroll to relative safety. But a marvelous defensive forcing move turns the tables:

**1... $\mathbb{W}c7!$  2. $\mathbb{B}xc6$**  White draws a blank on 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$   $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ , while on 2. $\mathbb{W}$  any, the unpinned  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  enables 2... $\mathbb{W}xg3$ . 2... $\mathbb{W}xc6$  3. $\mathbb{W}xb8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  4. $\mathbb{W}a7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  5. $\mathbb{g}6!$  The position is still unclear, but Black has escaped trouble and has at least a draw in hand with 5... $\mathbb{W}e7$  6. $\mathbb{W}e3+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  7. $\mathbb{W}a7+$  etc.



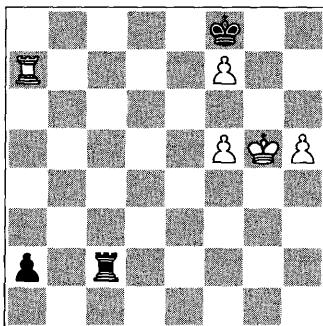
FCM 9.15  
**Maiorov-Zakharevich**  
 Moscow 1999



White's attack looks very nice, but Black simply sees deeper and correctly evaluates his strong play in the ensuing ending: 1... $\mathbb{g}5!$  2. $\mathbb{W}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{W}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4. $\mathbb{e}5$   $\mathbb{W}h4$  5. $\mathbb{f}6$   $\mathbb{R}ad8$  6. $\mathbb{W}xh4$  Forced; if 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$   $\mathbb{W}xh6$  7. $\mathbb{B}xh6$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  8. $\mathbb{B}h5$   $\mathbb{A}h8$ . 6... $\mathbb{g}xh4$  7. $\mathbb{h}6$   $\mathbb{R}xd3!$  8. $\mathbb{c}xd3$   $\mathbb{h}3!$  A very strong thrust. 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$  9. $\mathbb{g}xh3?$   $\mathbb{B}g8!$  and 10... $\mathbb{A}d5+$ . 9... $\mathbb{B}d8$  10. $\mathbb{B}d1$   $\mathbb{B}d4!$  11. $\mathbb{g}3$  11. $\mathbb{g}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  12. $\mathbb{B}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  traps the rook! 11... $\mathbb{B}d5$  12. $\mathbb{d}4$   $\mathbb{c}5$  13. $\mathbb{B}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  14. $\mathbb{B}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  15. $\mathbb{B}f4$   $\mathbb{cxd}4$  16. $\mathbb{B}fxd4$   $\mathbb{B}xe5$  and Black cashed in on his material and positional pluses. **0-1**.

## A2) Stalemate Combinations

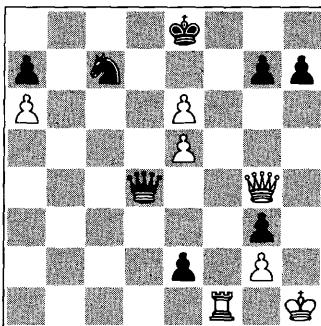
We take a brief look at these unusual forcing defensive moves, in which the defender defuses the attack by utilizing the stalemate rule to achieve a draw. UNWARY HUMAN EYES have a notorious tendency to 'forget' this important rule, since we humans don't see it very often in practice.



FCM 9.16  
**Bannik-Vistanetskis**  
Soviet Union 1961



To make progress here, the king must hide from checks with  $1... \blacksquare g2+$   $2. \diamond f6$ , but Black had prepared the forcing defensive sacrifice  $2... a1\blacksquare +$   $3. \blacksquare x a1 \blacksquare a2$  with a 'perpetual attack' on the white rook ( $4. \blacksquare b1 \blacksquare b2!$ ) because  $4. \blacksquare x a2$  is STALEMATE.  $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$ .



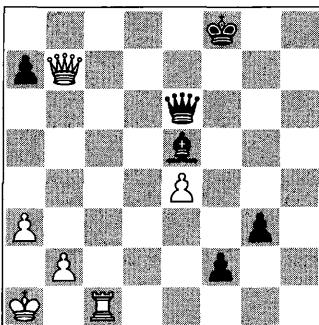
FCM 9.17  
**Korn-Pitschak**  
Brno 1936



Black must have been quite pleased with his combinative last move ...dxe2, preparing the promotion idea  $1. \blacksquare x d4?$   $exf1\blacksquare +$  or stock mate on  $1. \blacksquare x e2 \blacksquare h4+$ . But joy quickly turned to horror after the improbable drawing combination  $1. \blacksquare f8+! \diamond x f8$   $2. \blacksquare f5+ \diamond e7$   $3. \blacksquare f7+ \diamond d8$   $4. \blacksquare f8+ \diamond e8$   $5. \blacksquare e7+! \diamond x e7$  STALEMATE. And certainly not  $5... \diamond c8$   $6. \blacksquare b7+ \diamond d8$   $7. e7\#!$   $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$ .

## B) Counterattacking Defensive Forcing Moves

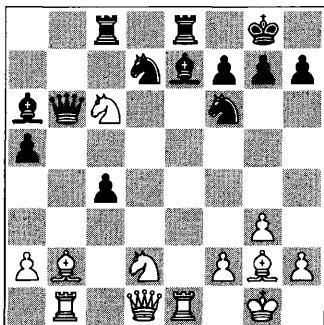
FCM 9.18  
**Timman-Topalov**  
Wijk aan Zee 2003



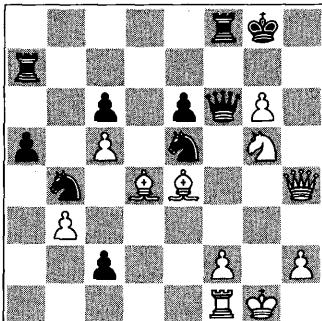
Black rebuffs the obvious threat of 1.  $\mathbb{H}c8+$  in a violent and decisive manner:  
1...  $\mathbb{W}c4!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xa7+$   $\mathbb{L}c70-1$ . The checks are done and the win is trivial after 4.  $\mathbb{L}xc4$  f1  $\mathbb{W}+$ , bagging the rook with check.

◆ ◆

FCM 9.19  
**Krasenkow-Nakamura**  
Barcelona 2007



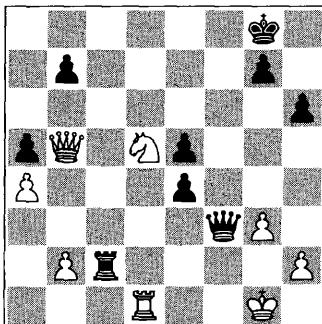
With his last move 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  White tries to launch an attack with threats on the b-file and e7. Black could respond with 1...  $\mathbb{W}c5$ , but decides that the best defense is to launch a devastating counterattack with 1...  $\mathbb{L}xc6!!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}xf2+!!$  when brute force analysis shows a forced win: 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  Relatively best was 3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{L}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{W}a7$  with a winning material edge for Black. 3...  $\mathbb{Q}c5+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  White goes up in flames on 4.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$  c3+ 5.  $\mathbb{E}e2$  c2 6.  $\mathbb{W}xc2$   $\mathbb{L}xe2+$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{L}d3+$  or 4.  $\mathbb{E}e3$   $\mathbb{L}xe3+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{L}xd2+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{L}d6+$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{L}xd1$  8.  $\mathbb{L}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ . 4...  $\mathbb{L}xf6+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}e5+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  Or 6.  $\mathbb{L}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}c8+$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{L}xe5$  8.  $\mathbb{W}h5$   $\mathbb{L}xh5+$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$   $\mathbb{L}h6+$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e3#$ . 6...  $\mathbb{L}g6+$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  If 7.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}d3+$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{L}f6+$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}c8+$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{L}xe1$  11.  $\mathbb{W}xe1$   $\mathbb{L}h6+$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  f6#. 7...  $\mathbb{L}f6$  8.  $\mathbb{L}xe5$   $\mathbb{L}xe5+$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{L}h6#$ .



FCM 9.20  
Ehlvest-Short  
Riga 1995



Like most great 'classical' players, the Englishman Nigel Short is an exceptionally deep and dogged defender. Most mortals would quake in their boots defending such a position, with White's pieces raking the naked king, but Black stoutly demonstrates the stronger trumps: 1... $\mathbb{W}f4!$  2. $\mathbb{W}xf4$  2. $\mathbb{W}h5!?$  c1 $\mathbb{W}!?$  (Black may have to try 2... $\mathbb{B}g7$  or 2... $\mathbb{W}g4+?$ ) 3. $\mathbb{B}xc1$   $\mathbb{W}xc1+$  4. $\mathbb{B}g2$   $\mathbb{W}f4$  5. $\mathbb{B}f7$  looks scary, but 5... $\mathbb{W}xe4+!$  6. $\mathbb{B}f1$   $\mathbb{W}b1+!$  7. $\mathbb{B}g2$   $\mathbb{W}xg6+$  consolidates. Still, 5.g7!  $\mathbb{W}xg5+!$  (5... $\mathbb{B}xg7?$  6. $\mathbb{B}h7+$  is a draw) 6. $\mathbb{W}xg5$   $\mathbb{B}xg7$  7. $\mathbb{W}xg7+$   $\mathbb{B}xg7$  8. $\mathbb{B}xe5+$   $\mathbb{B}h6$  leaves Black with only a slight edge. 2... $\mathbb{B}xf4$  3. $\mathbb{B}xe5$  3.f3!  $\mathbb{B}xf3+!$  should win. 3... $\mathbb{B}g4+$  4. $\mathbb{B}h1$   $\mathbb{B}xg5$  5. $\mathbb{B}d6$  Black is now perfectly placed to support the c2 pawn, which holds the key to the position. If 5.f4  $\mathbb{B}xe5!$  and 6... $\mathbb{B}d7$ . 5... $\mathbb{B}d7!$  and the final shot 6.f4  $\mathbb{B}xc5!$  can't be prevented due to 6. $\mathbb{B}f3$   $\mathbb{B}d3$  7. $\mathbb{B}xc6$  c1 $\mathbb{W}$  8. $\mathbb{B}xc1$   $\mathbb{B}xf2\#.$

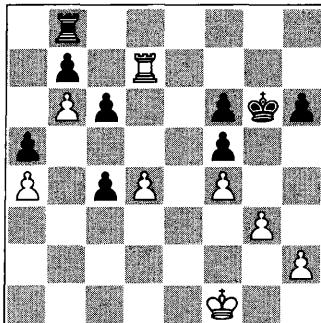


FCM 9.21  
Pelikan-Feimes  
Argentina 1944



Black seems poised for victory after 1. $\mathbb{W}f1??$   $\mathbb{B}g2+$  2. $\mathbb{W}xg2$   $\mathbb{W}xd1+$ , but White has gleaned that the best defense is a good offense with the 'desperation' check 1. $\mathbb{B}f6+!$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  White mates on 1...gx $f6$  2. $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{B}g7$  3. $\mathbb{B}d7\#$  or 1... $\mathbb{B}f7$  2. $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{B}d6+$   $\mathbb{B}g6$  4. $\mathbb{W}g6\#.$  2. $\mathbb{W}b3+$  Bagging the rook. 1-0.

FCM 9.22  
**Roos-Rubinetti**  
Lucerne 1982



Isn't it obvious that White is the aggressor? Rook on the 7th, black rook tied to weak  $\mathbb{Q}b7$ , etc. But COMPUTER EYES never assess a position solely on generalizations or formulas; calculating forcing moves must come first.

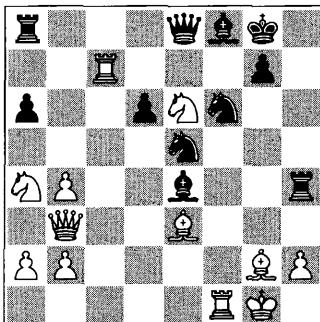
**1... $\mathbb{E}e8!$**

Black feels that his trumps are stronger in this 'ugly' position.

**2. $\mathbb{E}xb7$  c3 3. $\mathbb{E}c7$   $\mathbb{E}e6!$  4.d5** (4.b7 c2 5.b8 $\mathbb{Q}$  c1 $\mathbb{Q}+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{E}e2+$  and Black mates first) **4...c2 5.dxe6 c1 $\mathbb{Q}+$  0-1.**



FCM 9.23  
**Ivanchuk-Topalov**  
Las Palmas 1996



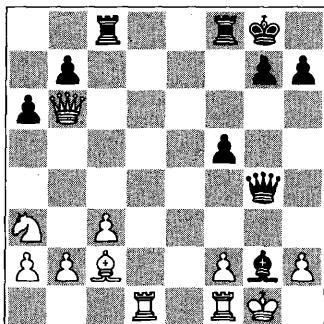
Black stares down the barrel of a looming discovery, but calmly pursues his own play:  
**1... $\mathbb{E}g4!$**

Now 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$  or 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$  are hammered by 2... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ , while on 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$  d5! wins the knight in view of the threat of 3... $\mathbb{E}xg2+$  and mate. The best reply is 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4+!$ , covering g2, but Black is attacking after 2...d5.

**2. $\mathbb{E}xf6$   $\mathbb{E}xg2+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$**

White tries to run but is cut down by a bolt from the other wing: **3... $\mathbb{Q}b5+! 0-1.$**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 9.24

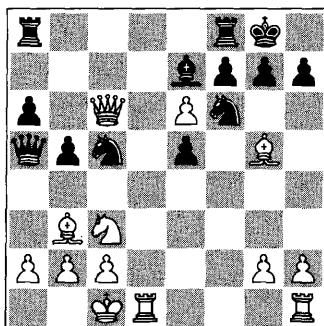
**Chigorin-Gunsberg (variation)**

Havana 1890



White sees through bleak appearances and proves that his attack is stronger:

**1.♕e6+ ♔h8 2.♗xf5! ♕g5 3.f4!** Emerging a piece ahead. **1-0.**



FCM 9.25

**Chuprov-Svidler**

Smolensk 2000



Black wrests the initiative in a late opening position that bears the mark of home preparation:

**1...♝ac8! 2.exf7+ ♔h8 3.♕f3**

Another lost cause is **3.♗xf6 ♗xb3+ 4.axb3 ♗xf6! 5.♕e4 ♕a1+ and 6.♗b1 fails to 6...♗g5+**.

**3...♗xb3+ 4.axb3 b4 5.♗a4 (5.♗e4? ♗xe4 6.♗xe7 ♕a1#) 5...e4!**

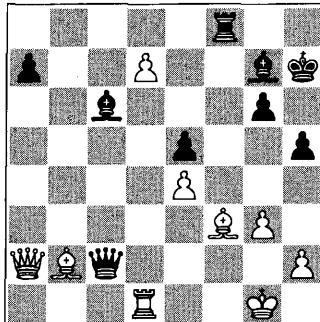
This discovered hit by the black queen on the ♗g5 is what Black envisioned from the diagram.

**6.♕g3**

The white queen can't guard the bishop without walking into a knight attack uncovering the threat of ...♗xg5, i.e. **6.♕f4 ♗h5 or 6.♕e3 ♗g4.**

**6...♗h5! 0-1.**

FCM 9.26  
**Gershman-Gusev**  
 Soviet Union 1968



It's far from clear who is really attacking here, but the answer comes in a problem-like defensive interference move which also creates winning counterthreats:

1... $\mathbb{H}xf3!!$  2. $\mathbb{d}8\mathbb{W}$   $\mathbb{W}f2+$  3. $\mathbb{G}h1$   $\mathbb{H}b3!!$

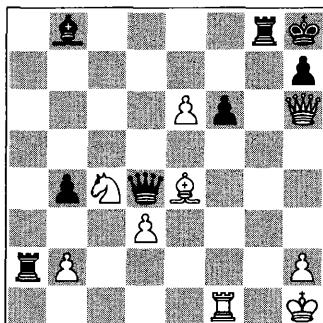
This bombshell is the most direct and elegant decision, while 3... $\mathbb{H}f8$  or 3... $\mathbb{H}f7$  should also do the trick, but only drawing is 3... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  4. $\mathbb{W}ag8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5. $\mathbb{W}h8+!$  (5. $\mathbb{Q}c1+??$   $\mathbb{H}e3\#$ ) 5... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  6. $\mathbb{W}xh8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  7. $\mathbb{W}xe5+$   $\mathbb{H}f5+$  8. $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$  9. $\mathbb{W}e3+$ .

4. $\mathbb{W}g8+$

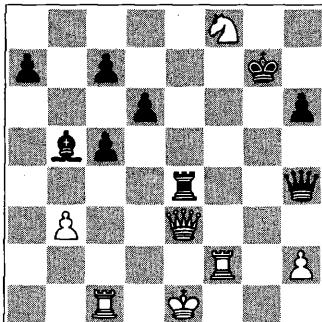
With all that wood, White cannot stop the dual threats of ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$  and ... $\mathbb{H}xb2$ .  
 4... $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  5. $\mathbb{W}xb3+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  0-1. It is too much to protect the squares b2, e4, f1 and f3.



FCM 9.27  
**Timman-Van Wely**  
 Wijk aan Zee 2004



White's attack looks menacing, but Black did not succumb to fear of ghosts. He fore-saw the simple 1... $\mathbb{H}a7!!$ , when in fact Black takes over the initiative with ... $\mathbb{H}ag7$ . In case of 2. $\mathbb{W}e3$ , 2... $\mathbb{W}d8!$  still leaves Black on top, e.g. 3.d4  $\mathbb{H}ag7$  4.d5?  $\mathbb{Q}a7$ , or 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{H}ag7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}d6!$  threatening 5... $\mathbb{H}g2$ , e.g. 6. $\mathbb{H}f2?$   $\mathbb{Q}a7!$  7.d4  $\mathbb{H}xd4!$ . 0-1.



FCM 9.28

**Capablanca-Bernstein  
(analysis by Kasparov)**

San Sebastian 1911

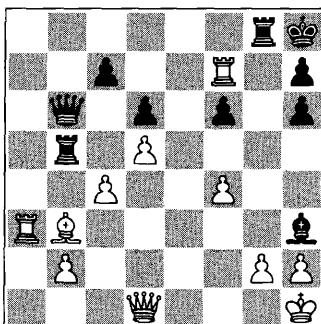


It looks like a typical mess in which the black attack has crashed through decisively, but look again!:

**1.♕d2!! ♜xe3**

The king just walks away on 1...♜d4+, 2.♕c2, while if 1...♛g4 2.♛c3+! ♛g8 3.♛g3 (3.♛f6! is also possible as Black will soon run out of checks) 3...♛xg3 4.hxg3 ♛g7 5.♚e1.

**2.♕g1+ ♔h8 3.♗g6+ 1-0.**



FCM 9.29

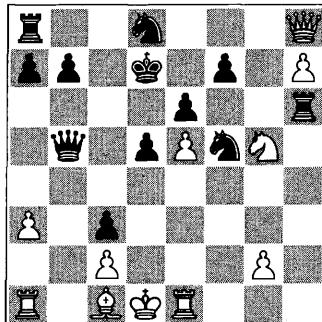
**Padevsky-Gasharov**

Bulgaria 1956



After **1.gxh3! ♛f2** White can't directly defend g2, but can strike first with the winning countershot **2.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 3.♕c2+! ♛xc2 4.♗xc2+ ♔ any 5.cxb5 1-0.**

FCM 9.30  
**Short-Neelotpal**  
Dhaka 1999



Black's best (and only) defense is a good offense here. The counterattack 1... $\mathbb{W}a4!$ ? is interesting, but very strong was:

1... $\mathbb{H}h2!!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$

No help is 2. $\mathbb{H}g1$   $\mathbb{H}xg2$ ! 3. $\mathbb{H}xg2$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$ .

2... $\mathbb{Q}xe6!?$

Forcing matters, but there seems to be nothing special against 2...fxe6! followed by 3... $\mathbb{W}c4$ .

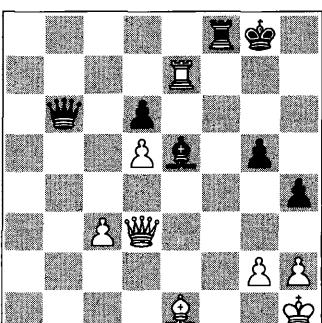
3. $\mathbb{W}xa8$   $\mathbb{H}xg2!$  4. $\mathbb{H}a2$

White discovers too late that there is no time to make a queen: 4. $h8\mathbb{W}$   $\mathbb{W}d3+!!$  5. $cxd3$   $c2\#$ , while 4. $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  5. $h8\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  6. $\mathbb{W}h3$  is refuted nicely by 6... $\mathbb{H}xc2!$ .

4... $\mathbb{Q}e3+!$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  (5. $\mathbb{H}xe3$   $\mathbb{W}f1+$  6. $\mathbb{H}e1$   $\mathbb{W}f3+)$  5... $\mathbb{W}b1+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{H}d2\#$ .



FCM 9.31  
**Stefanova-Peptan**  
Moscow 1994

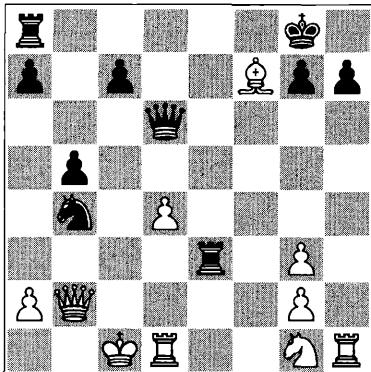


A stock back rank diversion shot provides the ultimate defense against White's threatened kingside incursion:

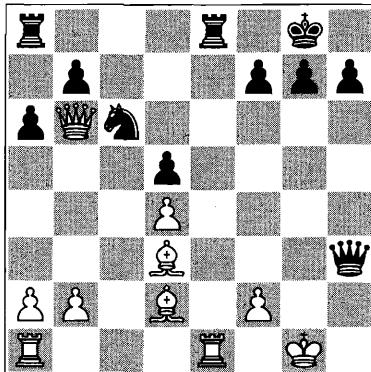
1... $\mathbb{W}b1$  2. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{W}d1$  0-1.



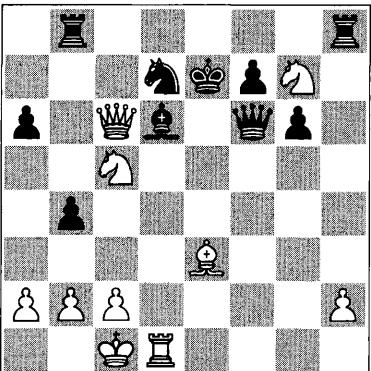
## Chapter 9 - Exercises



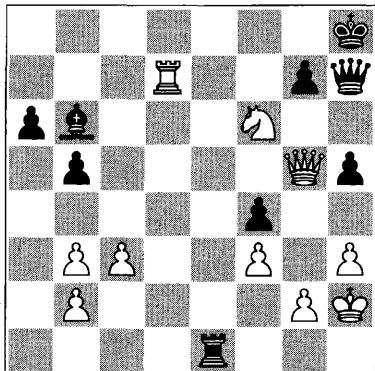
Ex 9.1 ■ Should Black take the bishop?



Ex 9.2 □ Does Black have enough for the piece?

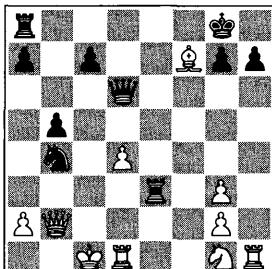


Ex 9.3 ■ Attack is the best defense

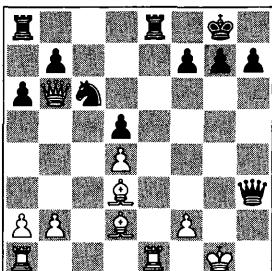


Ex 9.4 □ Perpetual check?

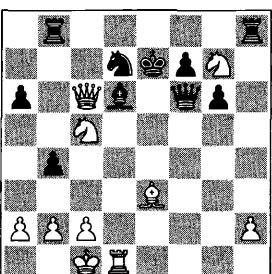
## Forcing Chess Moves



Ex 9.1 **Gagunashvili-Souleidis** Rethymnon 2003  
Black cheerfully ‘fell for’ White’s tactic with 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   
2. $\mathbb{W}f2+$  Worse is 2. $\mathbb{B}xh7$   $\mathbb{W}c6+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}g6+$ .  
2... $\mathbb{W}f6!$  The  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  joins the WINNING COUNTERATTACK in the variation 3. $\mathbb{W}xe3$   $\mathbb{W}c6+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  (or 4. $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{W}c2+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{W}a4+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{W}xa2+$ ) 4... $\mathbb{W}c2+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{B}e8$ . 3. $\mathbb{W}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  0-1. With rosy chances to convert the extra material.



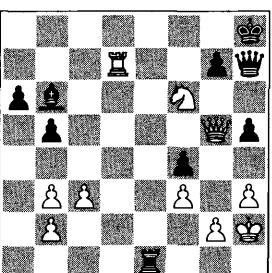
Ex 9.2 **Short-Zhu Chen** Jinan 2002  
Black’s typical piece sacrifice to expose White’s king looks promising, but Short consolidates neatly with the DEFENSIVE STOPPER 1. $\mathbb{B}e3!$ , the key point being that White covers up and assumes the initiative on 1... $\mathbb{W}g4+$  2. $\mathbb{B}g3!$   $\mathbb{W}xd4$  3. $\mathbb{W}xb7$  and 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ . 1... $\mathbb{W}xe3$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{B}e8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$  3. $\mathbb{W}xb7?$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}g4+$  is only a draw. 3... $\mathbb{W}g4+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{h}5$  4... $\mathbb{B}e6$  5. $\mathbb{W}xb7$   $\mathbb{h}6$  6. $\mathbb{W}c8+$  leads nowhere either. 5. $\mathbb{W}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}xd4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  1-0 after a few spite checks.



Ex 9.3 **Sandipan-Graf**

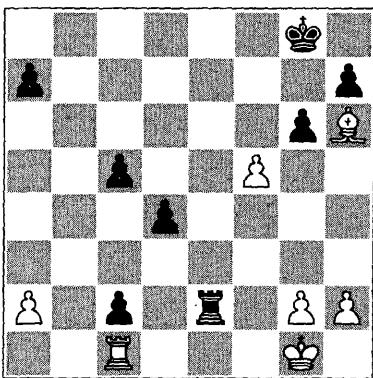
Germany Bundesliga 2002/03

Another case where the attacker is salivating, but the so-called defender shows the stronger COUNTERATTACKING bullets in his arsenal: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5!$  2. $\mathbb{B}xd6?$  Better was 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ !  $\mathbb{gxf5}$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ , keeping the attack going. White plans to ‘cash in’ on 2... $\mathbb{W}xd6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  or 2... $\mathbb{W}f1+$  3. $\mathbb{B}d1$ , but something happens on the way to the bank: 2... $\mathbb{Q}d3+!$  3. $\mathbb{cx d3}$   $\mathbb{W}f1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{B}xh2+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{W}d1+$ . 5... $\mathbb{B}xd2+$ ! 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{W}f4+$  0-1.

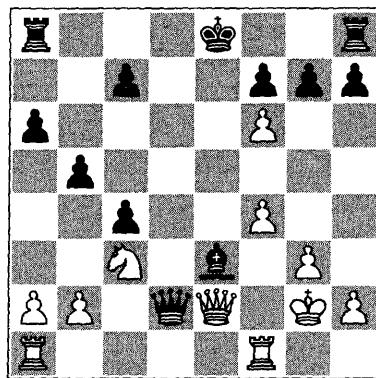


Ex 9.4 **Kretchmer-Lauhe** Eisenach 1951

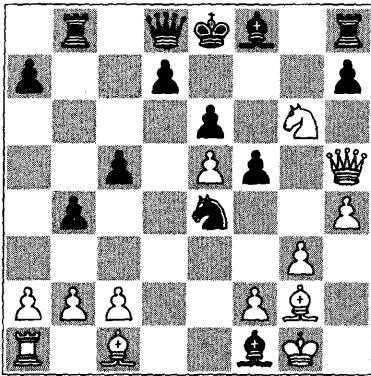
Black’s counterattack seems airtight, as on 1. $\mathbb{Q}xh7?$   $\mathbb{Q}g1+$  draws and 1. $\mathbb{W}xf4??$  and 1. $\mathbb{B}xg7??$  are dubious in view of the pretty shot 1... $\mathbb{B}h1+!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  (in the line with 1. $\mathbb{W}xf4$ , White also has 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}g6+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{B}f1$  4. $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  5. $\mathbb{W}e8$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{hxg4}$ , but Black is better) 2... $\mathbb{B}b1+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}g1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ . But the shock defense 1. $\mathbb{W}c5!!$  also carried unstoppable threats against b6 and f8, while 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  succumbs to the stock mate 2. $\mathbb{B}d8+$   $\mathbb{W}g8$  3. $\mathbb{B}xg8#$ .



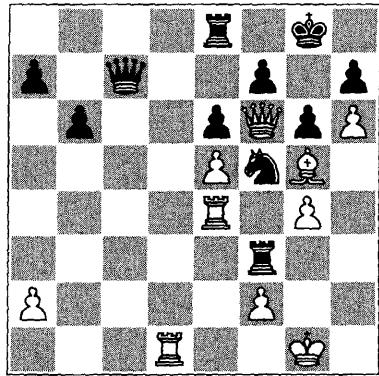
Ex 9.5 Can White stop the pawns?



Ex 9.6 A tricky pin?

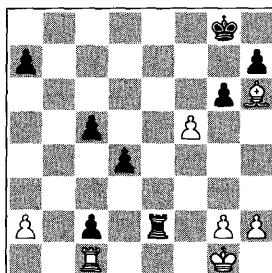


Ex 9.7 Can Black parry the attack?



Ex 9.8 Who comes first?

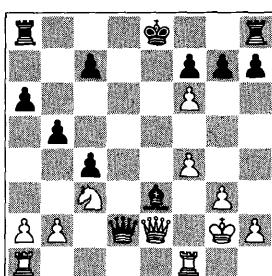
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 9.5 Azmaiparashvili-Anand

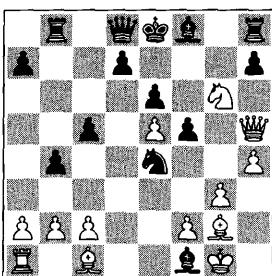
Dubai rapid 2002

Don't Black's connected advanced central passers 'just win'? Not exactly, as Vishy found to his dismay in this rapid encounter. COMPUTER EYES never sanction such curt assessments! White refutes them with precise defensive forcing moves: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $d3$  It's too late to turn back; Black is busted on 2...  $\mathbb{R}e5$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xc2$   $\mathbb{R}xf5+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{R}h5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$ . 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e1!$   $\mathbb{R}xe1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $gxf5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $c4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  1-0  
The proud passers are gobbled up like ripe cherries.



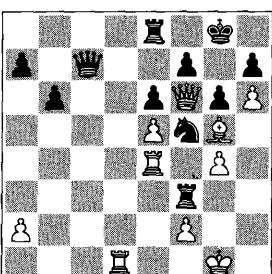
### Ex 9.6 Khalifman-Basin Minsk 1985

Black threatens to escape into a promising ending after 1.  $\mathbb{R}fe1?$  0-0-0, but White finds the beautiful counterattacking shot 1.  $\mathbb{R}f2!$  0-0-0 On 1...  $\mathbb{R}xe2$ , 2.  $\mathbb{R}xe2$  wins a piece. 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g4+!$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f3!$  'A timely double attack' – Khalifman. White threatens 4.  $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$  and the bishop. 3...  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  4.  $\mathbb{R}e2!$  White's concept in its purest form. He could also have taken on g7 first. 'Black must consent to the loss of a bishop': 4...  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  5.  $\mathbb{R}d1$  (5.  $\mathbb{Q}a8+!$  is not bad either) or 4...  $\mathbb{R}he8$  5.  $\mathbb{R}ae1$ . 1-0.



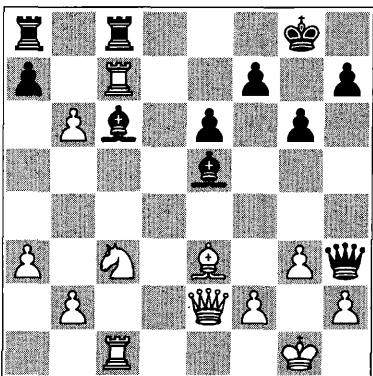
### Ex 9.7 Csom-Flesch Szombathely 1966

White has sacrificed a rook for a winning attack after 1...  $hxg6?$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xe4!$  threatening 4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ . A surprise forcing defensive shot stops him dead in his tracks: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e2!!$  2.  $f3$  2.  $\mathbb{R}xe2$   $hxg6$ .  
2...  $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  0-1.

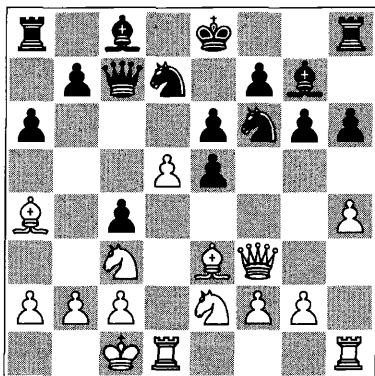


### Ex 9.8 Grosar-Hellsten Pula 1997

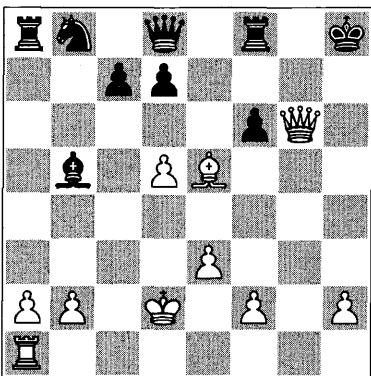
Black cannot defend against stock mate on g7, but he discerns that he can counterattack and deliver mate first! 1...  $\mathbb{Q}c2!$  Threatening 2...  $\mathbb{R}xf2+$  and 3...  $\mathbb{R}h3\#$ . 2.  $\mathbb{R}d2$  Black prevails on 2.  $\mathbb{R}f1$   $\mathbb{R}xe4$  3.  $gxf5$   $\mathbb{Q}g4+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{R}h3\#$  or 2.  $\mathbb{R}h4$   $\mathbb{R}xd1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$  (or 3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$ ) 3...  $\mathbb{R}h3+!$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{R}h1\#$ . 2...  $\mathbb{R}b1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{R}h3+!$  3...  $\mathbb{R}xe4!$  Avoiding the messy 3...  $\mathbb{Q}h4+?$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$   $\mathbb{R}xf6$  5.  $\mathbb{R}ed4!$  4.  $\mathbb{R}d8$  4.  $gxf5$   $\mathbb{R}xf5+$  picks off the queen. 4...  $\mathbb{R}xg4+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}g3+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{R}e3+!$  with ...  $\mathbb{R}e2$  and mate coming. 0-1.



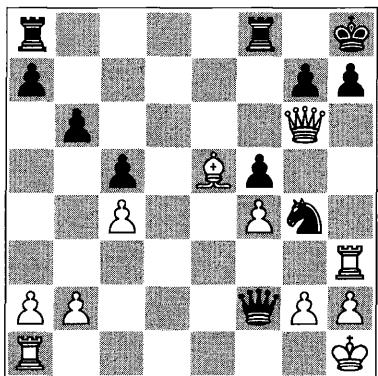
Ex 9.9  Eliminate  
the defender



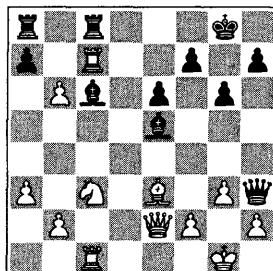
Ex 9.10  Find a way  
to untangle



Ex 9.11  Is the mate  
inevitable?



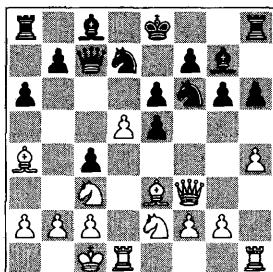
Ex 9.12  A decisive pin?



### Ex 9.9 Ilyin Zhenevsky-Kan (variation)

Leningrad 1934

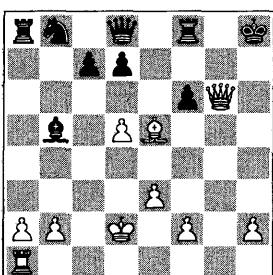
When attacking, there is the constant danger of pressing too hard and overextending one's self, as Black did here. The swift punishment was 1.  $\mathbb{E}xc6!$   $\mathbb{E}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{E}ac8$  3.  $b7$  1-0.



### Ex 9.10 Gyimesi-Svidler

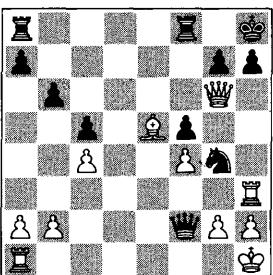
Germany Bundesliga 2004/05

White hoped to parlay his development lead into a positional bind after 1...  $\mathbb{E}xd5!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $0-0!$  (forced, but strong) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ , with the idea of 5...  $\mathbb{E}xd7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  keeping Black bottled up. But the former Russian champion had calculated further and played 5...  $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e7$   $\mathbb{E}e8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}xd7$   $\mathbb{E}xe7$ , solving all his problems and emerging with a pleasant pawn-up ending.



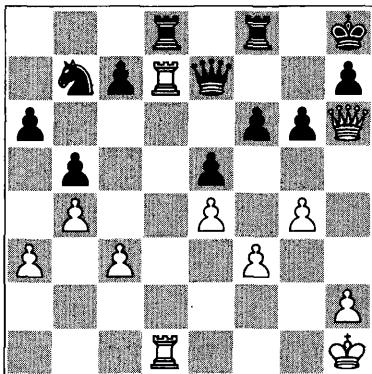
### Ex 9.11 Gutman-Vitolins Riga 1979

With  $\mathbb{W}h5/h6+$  and  $\mathbb{E}g1+$  looming, it appears to be all over. Indeed it is, but not for Black! White's mating combo runs into a little snag; the forcing defensive stopper 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d3!!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  Now 2.  $\mathbb{W}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7!$  3.  $\mathbb{E}g1$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  decides, while on 2.  $\mathbb{W}xd3$  there is time to get greedy with 2...  $\mathbb{E}xe5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g6$   $\mathbb{E}xf2+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{E}xh2$  5.  $\mathbb{E}g1$   $\mathbb{W}f8$ . 2...  $\mathbb{W}e7$  3.  $e4$  Only now does the awful truth sink in: 3.  $\mathbb{W}h6+$  or 3.  $\mathbb{E}g1$  are met by ...  $\mathbb{W}h7!$  forcing a queen trade. 3...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  0-1.

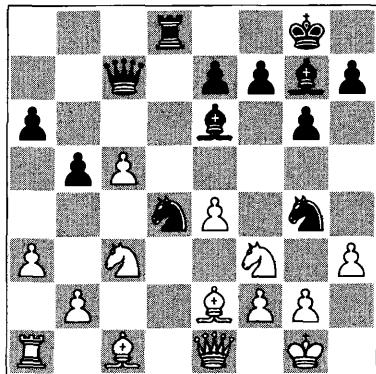


### Ex 9.12 Veizhap-Hoxha Tirana 1954

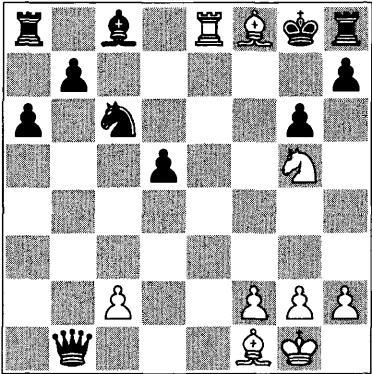
Must Black surrender to the dual mating threats on h7 and g7? No: 1...  $\mathbb{W}e1+!$  A magical counterattacking defensive forcing move lets him capture the offending majors with tempo. It is White who can stop the clocks after 2.  $\mathbb{E}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3+$  0-1.



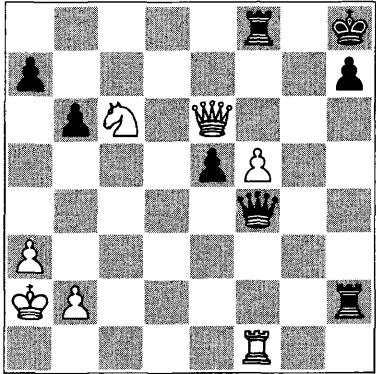
Ex 9.13 ■ Is the queen lost?



Ex 9.14 □ Knife the fork

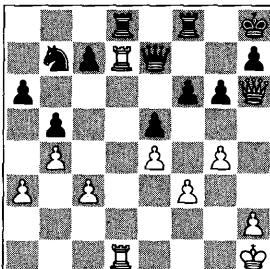


Ex 9.15 ■ Is the mate inevitable?



Ex 9.16 ■ Should the queen retreat?

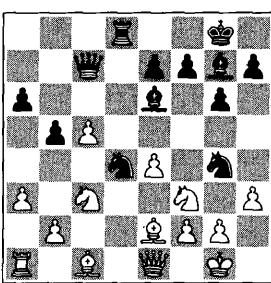
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 9.13 Martorelli-Antunes

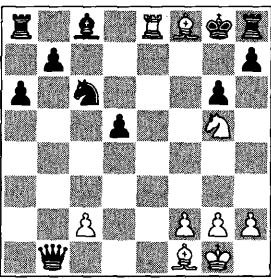
Reggio Emilia II 1985/86

Black was so impressed by White's mating attack that he resigned (!), but COMPUTER EYES prefer the winning defensive forcing move 1... $\mathbb{W}f7!$  2. $\mathbb{H}1d5$  2. $\mathbb{H}xf7$   $\mathbb{H}xd1+$  and Black grabs too much wood. 2... $\mathbb{W}g8$  Not 2... $\mathbb{H}xd7?$  3. $\mathbb{H}xd7$   $\mathbb{W}g8$  4. $\mathbb{H}xh7+$ !  $\mathbb{W}xh7$  5. $\mathbb{W}xf8+$  with perpetual. 3. $\mathbb{H}xc7$   $\mathbb{H}f7$  0-1.



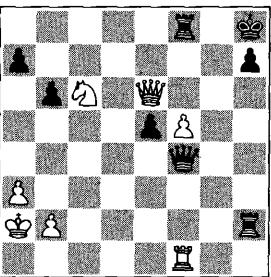
### Ex 9.14 Bareev-Van Wely Wijk aan Zee 2002

Black's pernicious ... $\mathbb{Q}d4$  (with the stock idea 1. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}h2+$  and mate) is refuted by a stellar FORCING STOPPER: 1. $\mathbb{h}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f4!!$   $\mathbb{W}xf4$  3. $\mathbb{W}c1!$  Escaping the fork and trading into a winning ending. Bareev's perfect technique is worth offering in full: 3... $\mathbb{W}xc1+$  4. $\mathbb{H}xc1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  5. $\mathbb{b}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}xa3$  6. $\mathbb{H}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  7. $\mathbb{H}xa6$   $\mathbb{H}c8$  8.c6  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{b}xc4$  10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{H}b8$  11. $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  12. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  Maybe 12... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  was better, but Black has no active play. 13. $\mathbb{H}d5$   $\mathbb{H}b1+$  14. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  15.c7  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  16. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{H}b7$  17.c8 $\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  18. $\mathbb{H}d8\#$ .



### Ex 9.15 Dunne-Plessel New York 1978

White has crafted a beautiful stock mating net with the threat 2. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ ... but alas, he got carried away by ATTACKER'S BLINDNESS. The forcing stopper 1... $\mathbb{W}e1!!$  brought him back to earth (unfortunately from an aesthetic standpoint, the duller 1... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$  (or 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ ) 2. $\mathbb{H}xa8$   $\mathbb{W}e1!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b4+$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$ ) 3... $\mathbb{W}e8!$  also wins). 0-1.



### Ex 9.16 Agrest-Onischuk

New Delhi/Tehran 2000

White is desperately trying to muddy the waters and would succeed after 1... $\mathbb{W}xf1?$  (also better is 1... $\mathbb{W}g3!$ ) 2. $\mathbb{W}xe5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{W}g3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4. $\mathbb{W}c7+=$ , but a stout defensive ploy puts the lie to his prospects: 1... $\mathbb{H}h6!$  2. $\mathbb{H}xf4$  Also resignable are 2. $\mathbb{W}e7$   $\mathbb{W}c4+$  and 2. $\mathbb{W}xe5+$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{H}hf6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d7$   $\mathbb{H}xf5$ . 2... $\mathbb{W}xe6$  3. $\mathbb{fxe6}$   $\mathbb{exf4}$  0-1.

# Chapter 10 - Endgame Forcing Moves

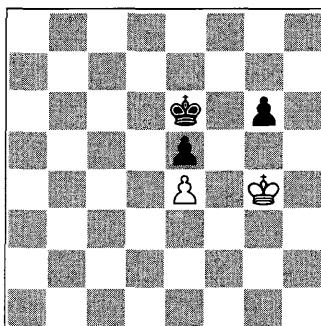
## Study Material

Your COMPUTER EYES have now taken a long journey through the land of HUMAN BIAS. They have learned to avoid 'knee-jerk defensive responses' and the 'staleness' of looking only at 'normal' moves; to be aware of forcing defensive resources; and to consider quiet moves and retreats when attacking. Now I must ask them to confront one more **popular misconception: the idea that endgames are boring and technical.**

I can already see many of you club players starting to yawn. But if you pick up my favorite endgame book Pandolfini's Endgame Course by Bruce Pandolfini, I promise that you will see beautiful FORCING MOVES bursting out of every page! Perhaps the public bias against enjoying the endgame comes from good old human laziness; it is true that learning some theory will help your endgame skill a great deal. But if you make the effort to digest one good ending book, you may yet become an endgame lover and will certainly become a better player!

GM Yasser Seirawan wrote: 'Good technique is good tactics!' Here's what he meant: while theory is important, the most crucial endgame skill is still ANALYZING FORCING MOVES WELL. The endgame is actually a great laboratory for developing your COMPUTER EYES, because its greater simplicity allows for more precise calculation of brute force variations. In the following game I was able to make the deepest calculation of my career, with the help of some theoretical knowledge:

FCM 10.1  
**Epp-Hertan**  
Watertown 1991



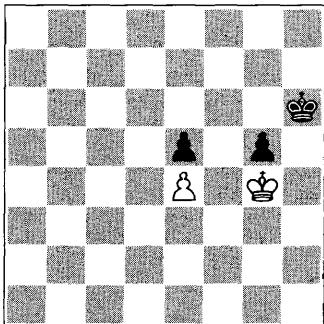
Despite the good extra pawn, the outcome is in doubt due to the strong position of White's pieces. Thus the direct 1... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $g5+?$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h5$  achieves nothing; nor

## Forcing Chess Moves

does running the other way with 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}c5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6 \mathbb{Q}c4??$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}d4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f5$  and White even wins via the stock 'Trebuchet' position.

I quickly realized that my king must be brought to h6, and that this could be achieved with the use of 'corresponding squares' (i.e., when his king occupies g5, I must be ready to respond with ... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$  to repel him and make progress).

So, the solution begins with 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{Q}g8!$  After 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  I would be forced to repeat the position with 3... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ . 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}h7!$  Only via this square can I force my way to h6. 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}g7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$  Life is simple after 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}h6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $g5+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}g6$  penetrating. 5... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}g5$  The only way to make progress.



position after 6... $\mathbb{Q}g5$

So I got my king to h6, but the question remains: Can I win? 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$  Passive defense is hopeless: 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{Q}h5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}g4$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}h4$  and Black advances to g3 and walks his king over to win the e-pawn. But now theory is no help; everything rests on BRUTE FORCE ANALYSIS! 7... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xe5 \mathbb{Q}g4$  The critical position. White can't enter a simple race because I queen first and stop his pawn on the 7th rank. Thus he must try to slow down my advance, and there are two ways to do it. They are both quite interesting, and fortunately they both fall just short, for different reasons. 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$  The less obvious try was 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}g3$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  (not 10.e5 g2) 10... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$  11.e5  $\mathbb{Q}h3$  12.e6 g2 queening with check after 13. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}h2$ . 9... $\mathbb{Q}h4$  10.e5 g3 11.e6 Now both sides queen, but I have a WINNING FORCING MOVE at the end. No help is 11. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}h3$  12.e6 g2 13. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}h2$  14.e7 g1 $\mathbb{Q}+$ . 11... $\mathbb{Q}g2$  12.e7 g1 $\mathbb{Q}$  13.e8 $\mathbb{Q}$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$  0-1 because 14... $\mathbb{Q}e2+$  wins the queen.

In this chapter, we examine three types of beautiful ENDGAME FORCING MOVES:

### A) Endgame Mating Themes

Which are far more common in endings than you may think. It is important to keep in mind that 'endgames' comprise a very broad spectrum of positions, from simplified king endings to tense tactical battles with major (and perhaps a few minor) pieces, when king safety continues to play a huge role.

These can be subdivided a little further into:

- A1) **Direct Mating Themes**, in which the object is to deliver checkmate;
- A2) **Technical Mating Themes**, in which some technical problem (often, how to deal with the opponent's promotion threats) is solved by the use of mating ideas;
- A3) **Indirect Mating Themes**, in which a forcing mate threat results in decisive material gain.

## B) Material-Winning Endgame Forcing Moves

### C) Endgame Promotion Tactics

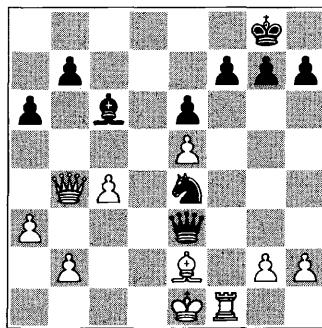
Here is another great reason why, to develop COMPUTER EYES, you need to study endgames! Forcing moves involving pawn promotion are much more common and important at this stage of the game. In fact, a huge number of theoretical and practical endgames, like the one above, are decided by the question of whether the attacker can promote an extra pawn. The result of a promotion tactic is not always keeping the new queen, but often sacrificing it in return for mate or win of material.

#### A) Endgame Mating Themes

##### A1) Direct Mating Themes

In these positions, the threat of checkmate is used as an end in itself (mate is forced) rather than as a means toward some other goal (material gain, promotion, etc.).

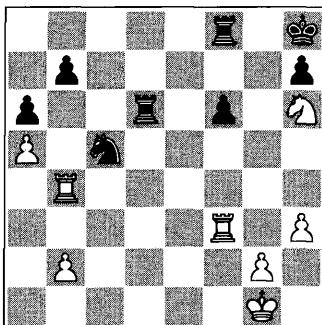
FCM 10.2  
Oratovsky-Miladinovic  
Salou 2000



The quiet forcing move 1... $\mathbb{Q}a4!$  leads to sudden mate: 2. $\mathbb{H}f3$  (or 2. $\mathbb{W}xa4 \mathbb{W}d2\#$ ) 2... $\mathbb{W}c1+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{W}xd1\#$ .

## Forcing Chess Moves

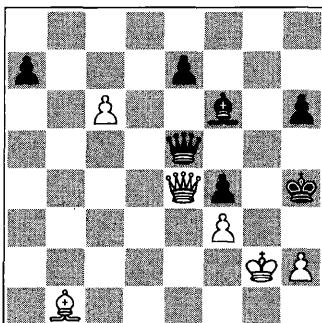
Another mating combination with a quiet touch is this classic gem:



FCM 10.3  
**Marshall-Hodges**  
New York 1911



After 1...Bg4! with the key point 1...f5 2.Qxf5! Qxf5 3.Qg8#, Black can only watch in horror as mate draws closer: 1...Rdd8 2.Qfg3! Qd7 3.Qg8+! Rxg8 4.Qf7#.



FCM 10.4  
**Krasenkow-Svidler**  
Polanica Zdroj 2000



Particularly with queens present, king safety remains an issue deep into the ending. Even with just a few pieces left, the opposite-colored bishops here help the attacker win on the light squares:

**1.c7! Qxc7 2.Qe1+!**

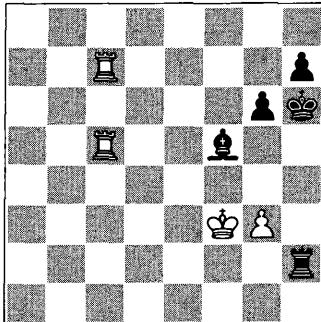
A winning forcing retreat.

**2...Qg5**

2...Qh5 3.Qe6 meets the same fate.

**3.h4+ Qh5 4.Qe6!** and mate on g4. **1-0.**

FCM 10.5  
**Goglidze-Kasparian**  
 Soviet Union 1934



White's tactical idea of g4-g5+ and  $\blacksquare h7\#$  is evidently refuted by:

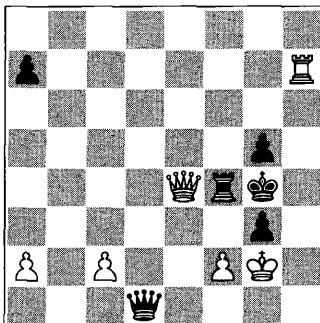
**1.g4  $\blacksquare h3+$  2. $\blacksquare f4 \blacksquare h4!$**

But White has seen deeper and spotted an elegant sacrifice:

**3. $\blacksquare x f5!$   $gxf5$  4. $\blacksquare x f5$ ,** when 5.g5+ and mate on h7 still prevails, despite the minimalist material. **1-0.**



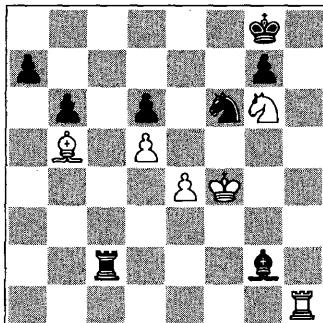
FCM 10.6  
**A Ivanov-Grigorov**  
 Soviet Union 1987



Both kings lack shelter, but White moves first!

**1. $\blacksquare h4+$   $\blacksquare x h4$  (1... $gxh4$  2. $\blacksquare g6\#$ ) 2. $\blacksquare h7+$   $\blacksquare h5$  (or 2... $\blacksquare g4$  3. $\blacksquare h3\#$ ) 3. $fxg3+$   $\blacksquare g4$  4. $\blacksquare d7+$   $\blacksquare f5$  5. $\blacksquare d1+$   $\blacksquare f3$  6. $\blacksquare x f3\#.$**

A beautiful queen tour. Penetrating COMPUTER EYES were aided by the small number of side variations typical of simplified endings. In such positions, the task of SELECTION becomes a bit easier, and raw CALCULATION and BOARD SIGHT come to the forefront.



FCM 10.7

**Ufimtsev-Bondarevsky**

Soviet Union 1940

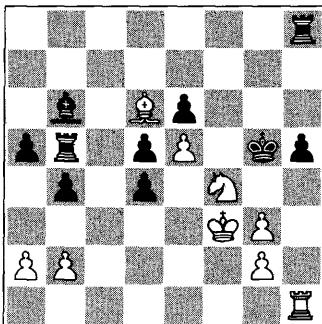


Black's COMPUTER EYES were ill-advisedly closed and he woke up stunned and embarrassed by:

**1.♕h8+! ♔f7**

Black must have expected resignation here since the mating idea 2.♔g5 is easily refuted by 2...♝xe4+.

**2.♕e8+!! ♝xe8 3.♔g5!** mating on f8 after all. **1-0**. A fanciful conception!



FCM 10.8

**Emelin-Zaitsev**

St Petersburg 1999



Here, too, it seems that Black failed to sense the danger:

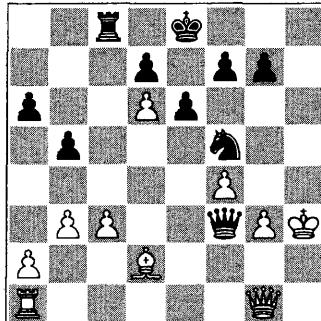
**1.♕e7+ ♔f5**

Or 1...♔h6 2.♖xh5+ ♔g7 3.♕f6+.

**2.♕f6!!** This QUIET FORCING MOVE leads to mate after **2...♖h7 3.♖xh5+! ♖xh5**

**4.g4#**. There was even a second mate: **2.♖xh5+! ♖xh5 3.g4+ ♔xe5 4.♗d3#**.

FCM 10.9  
Ree-Jansa  
Krakow 1964



Black has clearly won the opening battle and carried an initiative into the ending. Now he finishes the job in fine style with an unusual corridor mate:

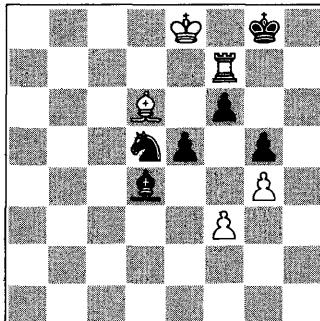
**1... $\mathbb{H}c5!$  2. $\mathbb{H}f1$**

Black's brilliant threat can't be stopped due to 2. $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{W}xg3\#$  or 2. $\mathbb{W}g2$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ .  
**2... $\mathbb{Q}e3!!$**  A fantastic EST! There is no defense to 3... $\mathbb{H}h5\#$ . **0-1.**

### A2) Technical Mating Ideas

Here mating threats are used to resolve a technical problem, such as the opponent's promotion threats.

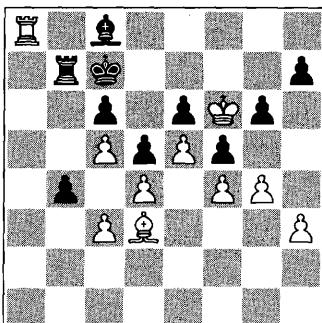
FCM 10.10  
Hertan-Rohde  
Vermont 1993



Here, a mating net was the final phase of breaking down Black's fortress:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  (not 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7??$   $\mathbb{Q}c7+)$**  **1...e4**

Justified desperation, in view of the coming 2. $\mathbb{H}g7+$  and 3. $\mathbb{H}f7$ . Here I prolonged things with 2. $fxe4?!$ , but best was the direct approach **2. $\mathbb{H}g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{H}f7$   $\mathbb{Q}g7!$**  (forced, to stop 4. $\mathbb{H}g6$ ) **4. $\mathbb{H}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  5. $\mathbb{H}g7!$**  (threatening 6. $\mathbb{H}h8\#$ ) **5... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  6. $\mathbb{H}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7. $\mathbb{H}xg6!$  **1-0.****



FCM 10.11

**Korobov-Karjakin**

Kramatorsk 2001



Black's counterplay is far too serious in the event of 1.cxb4  $\blacksquare x b 4$  2. $\blacksquare a 7 + \blacksquare d 8$  3. $\blacksquare x h 7 \blacksquare x d 4$ , so White devises a most elegant forcing solution:

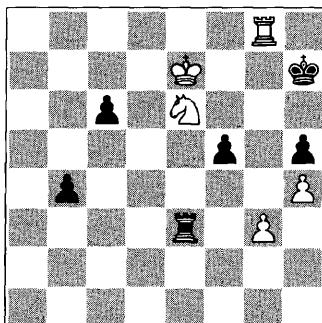
**1. $\blacksquare a 6 !! b 3 !$**

On 1... $\blacksquare b 8$  White sacrifices the bishop and wins with 2. $\blacksquare x b 8 \blacksquare x b 8$  3.cxb4!  $\blacksquare x a 6$  4.g5!  $\blacksquare c 8$  5. $\blacksquare g 7 \blacksquare d 7$  6. $\blacksquare x h 7 \blacksquare e 8$  7. $\blacksquare g 7 \blacksquare c 7$  8. $\blacksquare f 6 \blacksquare d 7$  9.h4.

**2. $\blacksquare x b 7 ! b 2$  3. $\blacksquare x c 8 ! b 1 \blacksquare$  4. $\blacksquare e 7 ! f x g 4$**

Too late is 4... $\blacksquare e 1$  5. $\blacksquare a 6 \blacksquare h 4 +$  6.g5.

**5. $\blacksquare a 6$  1-0.** Black must give up his new queen to stop the threat 6. $\blacksquare c 8 \#$ .



FCM 10.12

**Stahlberg-Gligoric**

Saltsjöbaden 1952



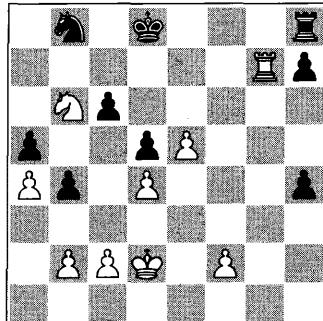
Black's last hope is to capture White's remaining pawns, using his passers as a decoy, but White's accurately calculates the most forceful winning idea, using mate threats:

**1. $\blacksquare g 5 ! b 3$  2. $\blacksquare f 7 ! \blacksquare x e 6$  (2... $\blacksquare h 6$  3. $\blacksquare f 4$  and 4. $\blacksquare x h 5 \#$ ) 3. $\blacksquare x e 6 b 2$  4. $\blacksquare f 7 ! \blacksquare h 6$  5. $\blacksquare g 8 !$**

One more mate threat dooms the pawns.

**5... $\blacksquare h 7$  6. $\blacksquare b 8$  1-0.**

FCM 10.13  
**Fressinet-Vallin**  
Vichy 2000



White is winning with his active pieces and connected passed pawns, but COMPUTER EYES found a precise mating sequence to end Black's resistance quickly:

**1.  $\mathbb{B}b7!$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$**

Horrid is 1...h3 2.  $\mathbb{B}xb8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xh8$  h2 4.  $\mathbb{B}xh7+$ .

**2.  $e6$**

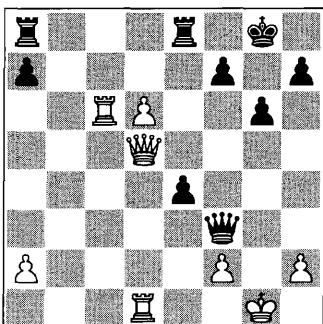
The trio of rook, knight and advanced pawn are a formidable attacking force.

**2...h3 3.  $\mathbb{B}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c8!$  h2 5.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6.  $e7+$  1-0.** On 6... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  the important stock stratagem of promoting with discovered check, 7.  $e8\mathbb{Q}+$ , punches Black's ticket.

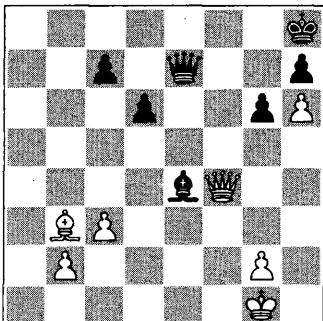
### A3) Indirect Mating Themes

A mate threat is used as a device to gain decisive material.

FCM 10.14  
**Sasikiran-Sutovsky**  
Pune 2004



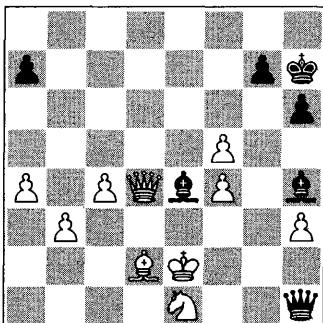
At first glance the white d-pawn seems dominant, but the crucial role of king safety in major piece endings must never be underestimated, and Black is in fact winning after **1...  $\mathbb{E}e5!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$**  White can dance but he can't hide. If 2.  $\mathbb{W}d2$  e3!, or 2. d7  $\mathbb{B}xd5$  3.  $\mathbb{B}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xd5$  e3!. **2...  $\mathbb{W}xd1+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}f3+$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  e3!** The mate threat wins a whole rook; 5.  $\mathbb{B}c2$   $\mathbb{W}d1+$  or 5.  $\mathbb{B}c1$  exf2+ 6.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}h1+$  etc. **0-1.** White's exposure to checks and mating threats cost him the game.



FCM 10.15  
Ivanovic-Popovic  
Yugoslavia 1973



The marvelous QUIET FORCING MOVE **1... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$**  wins a piece, problem-style, as every black defense leads to a different mating move: 1...d5 2. $\mathbb{W}e5+$ ; 1... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  2. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ ; or 1... $\mathbb{W}xe6$  2. $\mathbb{W}f8+$  **3. $\mathbb{W}g8$  1-0.**



FCM 10.16  
Neumann-Kolisch  
Paris 1867



Long before computers, COMPUTER EYES used penetrating BRUTE FORCE CALCULATION to unlock the mysteries of such positions.

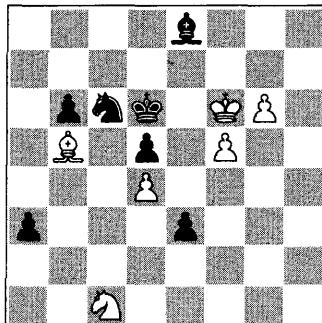
**1... $\mathbb{W}h2+! 2.\mathbb{Q}d1$**

Not 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ ; or 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$  with mate in five.

**2... $\mathbb{Q}xe1!$**

This beautifully-calculated concept wins a piece, since recaptures allow mate: 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{W}c2\#$ , or 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{W}h1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}f3+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  (5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$ ) 5... $\mathbb{Q}d3$  6. $\mathbb{W}f2$  (6. $\mathbb{W}e3$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$ ) 6... $\mathbb{W}h1+$ . **0-1.**

FCM 10.17  
**Karpov-Timman (variation)**  
 Kuala Lumpur 1990



In *My Best Games* Karpov trots out a stunning variation which allows White to break through:

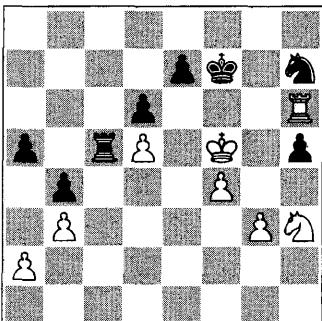
**1.g7!! ♜e7 2.♗xe8!! a2**

2...♝g8+ 3.♔f7 ♜h6+ 4.♔f8 changes nothing.

**3.♘xa2 e2 4.♘c3!** miraculously winning both passed pawns in view of **4...e1♛**  
**5.♘b5#.**

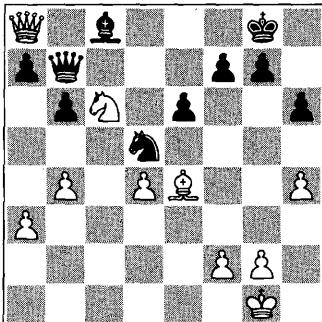
### B) Material-Winning Ending Forcing Moves

FCM 10.18  
**Ye Jiangchuan-Bacrot**  
 Batumi (rapid) 2001



White is relying on the trick **1...♜xd5+?? 2.♕e4 ♜f6+ 3.♖xf6+!**, but his ship sinks hard after the accurate forcing moves **1...e6+! 2.♔e4 ♜f6+ 3.♔f3 ♜g7!** trapping the rook. **0-1.**

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 10.19

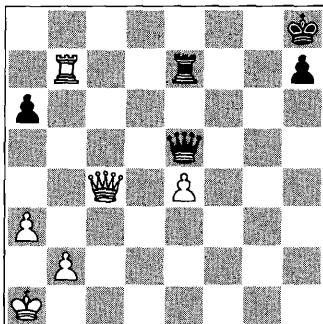
**Kashdan-Kotov**

USA-Soviet Union radio match 1946



White's opening initiative has carried into a sharp ending, and he now capitalizes on Black's back rank problem with 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+!$   $\mathbb{K}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xc8+$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$  1-0.

◆ ◆



FCM 10.20

**Nielsen-Rogozenco**

Germany Bundesliga 2003/04



One reason endings are so instructive is that they showcase various tactics, and properties of the pieces, in their simplest form. Here is a textbook illustration of the CROSS PIN in action:

1.  $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$

Or 1...  $\mathbb{E}e8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d7$ .

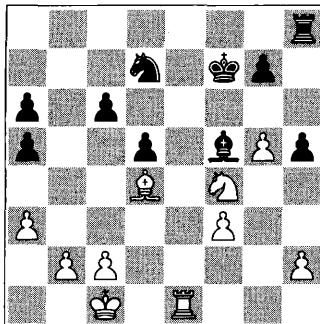
3.  $\mathbb{W}e8!$

The rook is pinned both ways and thereby paralyzed.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$  1-0.

In the next examples, the knight's forking power is on display.

FCM 10.21  
**Grischuk-Timman**  
Wijk aan Zee 2002

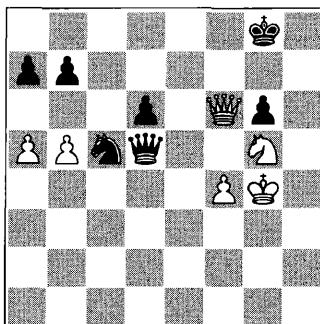


Black is perhaps just a tempo short of holding, but White's forcing play shows that entering the ending was the correct way to prosecute the attack: **1.g6+!** A dagger thrust that cripples all hopes of consolidation.

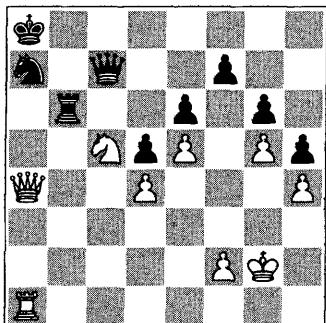
**1...gxg6** Hopeless is **1...Qf8**, entombing the rook, e.g. **2.Qe6+ Qxe6 3.Qxe6 c5 4.Qxa6! 2.Qe7+!** The point! A stock fork trick converts the initiative into material gain. **2...Qxe7 3.Qxg6+ Qe6 4.Qxh8 1-0** The knight gets out via f7 or g6.



FCM 10.22  
**Verlinsky-Levenfish**  
Leningrad 1933



White's counterplay certainly seems adequate, but a fork trick forces winning simplification. Instead of the drawing **1...Qd1+?**, Black could have played **1...Qg2+ 2.Qh4 Wh2+ 3.Qg4** Better, but not good enough, is **3.Qh3 Wg3+! 4.Qxg3 Qe4+ 5.Qg4 Qxf6+ 6.Qg5 Qg7**, when **7.Qf2 d5! 8.f5 Qe4+**, or **7.f5 Qe4+ 8.Qf4 Qc3** win. **3...Wh5+ 4.Qg3 Wxg5+ 5.Wxg5 Qe4+ 0-1**. With queens off, the exposed king is not a factor and Black converts his extra pawn.

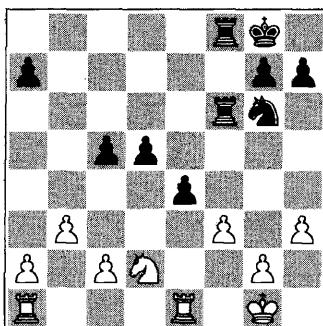


FCM 10.23  
Degraeve-Barsov  
Montreal 2002



Here is one more homage to the knight's prowess, which is undeniable from such a dominant outpost:

- 1.  $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{B}b8$**
- 1...  $\mathbb{W}b8$  allows 2.  $\mathbb{K}xa7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xa7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}a4+$   $\mathbb{K}a6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xa6\#.$
- 2.  $\mathbb{Q}a6!$   $\mathbb{K}xe8$**
- He declines to prolong the agony with 2...  $\mathbb{W}c8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf7.$
- 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7+$  1-0.**



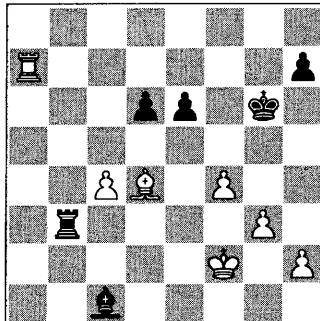
FCM 10.24  
Ilya Gurevich-Hertan  
Watertown 1989



The rook's capacity to wreak havoc on the seventh rank is the basis of many an END-GAME FORCING MOVE. White relied upon the strategic push f2-f3 to relieve the pressure on f2 and undermine Black's center, but he was ambushed by a creeper:

- 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h4!$  2.  $\mathbb{K}ad1$**
2.  $fxe4$   $\mathbb{R}f2$  with ...  $\mathbb{R}xg2+$  and ...  $\mathbb{R}f2$  coming is much too strong, but now Black wins a decisive pawn cleanly.
- 2...  $\mathbb{R}g6!$  3.  $\mathbb{g}4$  (or 3.  $\mathbb{R}e2$   $exf3$ ) 3...  $\mathbb{R}xf3!$  0-1.**

FCM 10.25  
**Uhlmann-Zapata**  
 Thessaloniki 1988



Black's defense of the weak center pawns is based on a cute tactic, but White's COMPUTER EYES see through it to force victory:

**1.  $\mathbb{H}d7!$   $\mathbb{H}d3$**

1... $\mathbb{Q}a3$  allows the forcing line 2. $g4!$   $\mathbb{H}d3$  3. $\mathbb{H}g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  4. $g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  5. $\mathbb{H}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  and the pawns are too strong.

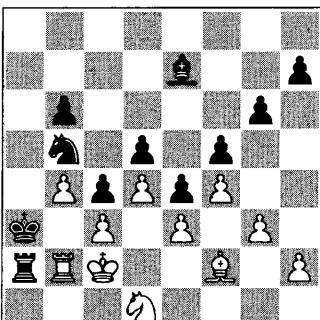
**2.  $\mathbb{H}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}e3+!$**

The pinned  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  is the point of Black's play, but White counters with a little fork trick by the rook:

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}e2!$   $\mathbb{H}xd4$  4.  $\mathbb{H}xe6+$  and 5.  $\mathbb{H}xe3$  wins easily. **1-0.****

◆ ◆

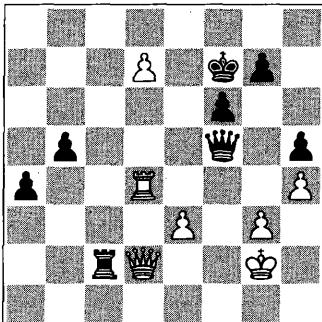
FCM 10.26  
**Acevedo-Fischer**  
 Siegen 1970



Black breaks through with a decisive SURPRISE FORCING MOVE, after which his positional dominance induces immediate resignation:

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$**  (hopeless is 2. $\mathbb{H}xa2+$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2$  3.b5  $\mathbb{Q}b4+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}d3)$  **2...  $\mathbb{H}a1!$**   
**3.  $\mathbb{H}d2$**  (3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{H}xd1!$  also wins) **3...  $\mathbb{H}c1+ 0-1.$**  After 4. $\mathbb{H}c2$ , 4... $\mathbb{Q}xb4+$  mates.

## Forcing Chess Moves



FCM 10.27

**Kunte-Kasimdzhanov**

Pune 2004

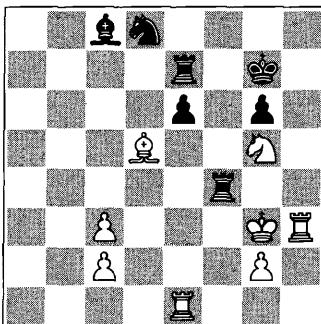


White's queening threat seems invincible, but Black has peered further:

**1... $\mathbb{Q}e4+!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$**

White's exposed king can't escape harm's way: 2. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}xd4!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc2 \mathbb{Q}xd7$ ; 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{Q}h1+$ ; 2. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}xd2$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd2 \mathbb{Q}xe3+$ , and 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}xd2$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd2 \mathbb{Q}f3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}xe3+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{Q}xd2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xd2 \mathbb{Q}e7$  all lose.

**2... $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc2 \mathbb{Q}xd7$  0-1.**



FCM 10.28

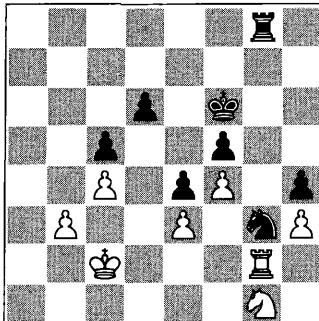
**Olson-Charbonneau**

North Bay 1998



The monster surprise blow **1... $\mathbb{R}g4+!$**  wins a piece after **2. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$  check. 0-1.**

FCM 10.29  
**Andersson-Browne**  
Lucerne 1982

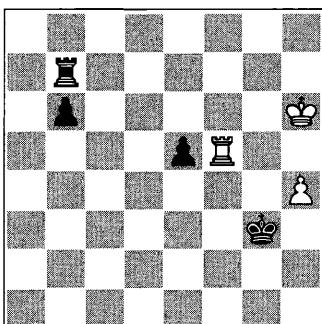


A key issue in the ending (and middlegame) is choosing the right time to convert a positional edge into a material one, without allowing too much counterplay. Black pounced on White's bunched-up forces with 1... $\mathbb{Q}a8!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b2$  The e-pawn falls on 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}a2+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}f1!$  2... $\mathbb{Q}f1!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  The clever point is that after 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  Black jumps back on the g-file with 3... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ , winning White's knight. 3... $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $d5!$  Exchanging a weak pawn and preparing a strong knight maneuver. 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  0-1. The positional threat 7... $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ , along with the tactical idea 7... $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ , decides.

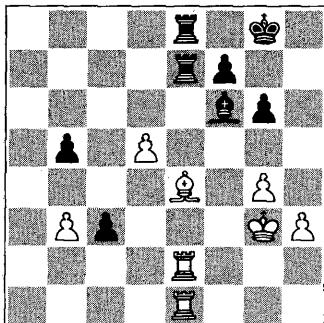
### C) Endgame Promotion Tactics

These endgame forcing moves may result in actual promotion, or in forced mate or win of material via the threat of promotion.

FCM 10.30  
**Battes-Hertan**  
Albany 1997



Computer eyes demonstrate that Black queens by one tempo after removing all counterplay with 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh4!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $b5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  (5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}e7+!$ ) 5... $b4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $b3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $b2!$  8. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}e3!$  9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}d2!$  0-1.



FCM 10.31  
Bayram-Mastrovasilis  
Antalya 2004

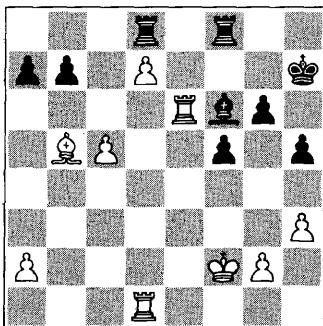


There are endless incarnations of the sacrifice that enables the advanced passed pawn's coronation:

**1...c2!**

Not the hasty 1... $\mathbb{E}xe4??$  2. $\mathbb{E}xe4$   $\mathbb{E}xe4$  3. $\mathbb{E}xe4$  c2 4. $\mathbb{E}e8+$ .

**2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{E}xe4!$  3. $\mathbb{E}xe4$   $\mathbb{E}xe4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$**  and the endgame was winning. **0-1.**



FCM 10.32  
Reshevsky-Byrne  
(variation)  
Sousse 1967



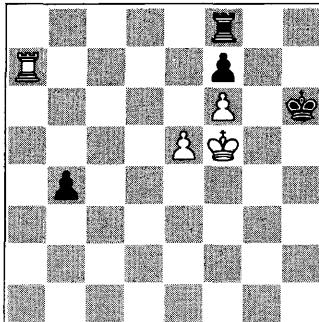
The achievement of two far-advanced connected passers usually decides the contest (unless they can be effectively blockaded); so major sacrifices are often justified to achieve such a 'dynamic duo':

**1. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$**

On 1... $bxa6$  2.c6 Black will get just one pawn for his rook.

**1... $\mathbb{E}b8$  2. $\mathbb{E}xf6!$  1-0.** The pawns roll on 2... $\mathbb{E}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7!$ .

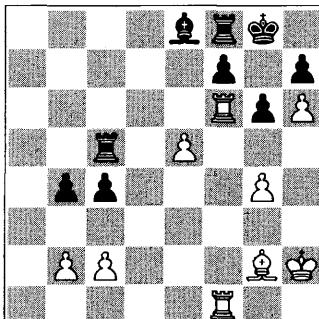
FCM 10.33  
**Martens-Grabczewski**  
 Gothenburg 1968



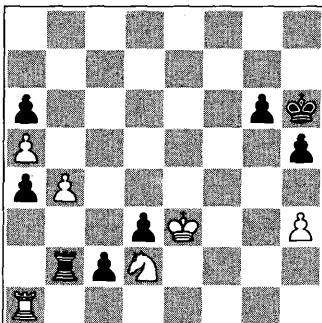
Why is the rook considered 'the drawing piece'? Because it is so adept at creating counterchances, both checking the king at a distance and stopping passed pawns from behind. Thus, it would be a rookie mistake to let Black keep slugging with 1.  $\mathbb{R}b7$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}h5!$  2.  $\mathbb{R}xb4$   $\mathbb{R}g8!$  3.  $\mathbb{R}b7$   $\mathbb{R}g5+$  4.  $\mathbb{R}f4$  (4.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{R}g4+$ . Instead, a swift tactic exploits the stock endgame idea that a rook can't stop connected pawns on the 6th: 1.  $\mathbb{R}xf7!$   $\mathbb{R}xf7$  2. e6  $\mathbb{R}xf6+$  Otherwise 3. e7 is decisive. 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  b3 4. e7 b2 5. e8 $\mathbb{Q}$  b1 $\mathbb{Q}$  A common theme: both sides queen, but one retains a winning initiative. 6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3+!$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  6...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ . 7.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$  1-0. Mate in two.



FCM 10.34  
**Short-Stefansson**  
 Reykjavik 2002



Two advanced disconnected passers often overwhelm enemy defenses as well:  
 1. e6!  $\mathbb{R}e5$  Black prefers to go down fighting, since on 1...  $\mathbb{R}c7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  (or even 2. c3) he is virtually in zugzwang and must lose the vital f7 pawn to break the pin on the f-file, while White is free to waltz his king in. 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d5!$   $\mathbb{R}xd5$  3. e7  $\mathbb{R}e5$  4.  $\mathbb{R}xg6+!!$  All along, White's sights were set on bigger game than the exchange. 4...  $\mathbb{R}xg6$  5. h7+!  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. exf8 $\mathbb{Q}$ + 1-0.



FCM 10.35  
Movsesian-Bacrot  
Sarajevo 2000

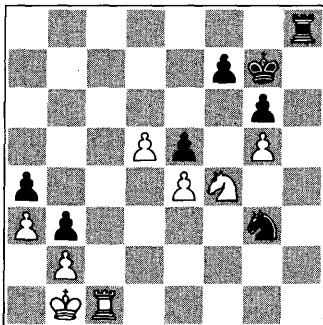


Here Black exploits two important promotion motifs to score a goal: interference with the rook's control of the first rank, and the knight's notorious weakness at stopping far advanced rook pawns:

**1...a3! 2.b5!**

White plays his last trump, since otherwise 2... $\mathbb{B}b1$  means a certain death.

**2... $\mathbb{B}xb5!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$   $\mathbb{B}b1!$  0-1.** Pawn promotion carries the day on 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb1$  c1 $\mathbb{Q}$  or 4. $\mathbb{B}xb1$  cxb1 $\mathbb{Q}+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xb1$  a2 6. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  a1 $\mathbb{Q}$ .



FCM 10.36  
Szabo-Dozsa  
Budapest 1962



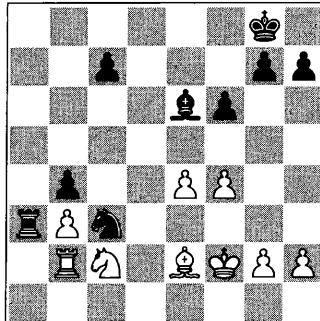
Another key weapon in the promotion arsenal is the combination exchanging the only piece that can stop the passer:

**1. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ !  $\mathbb{fxe}6$**

Black's only grim hope was 1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2. $\mathbb{B}c7$   $\mathbb{B}e8!$  3. $\mathbb{B}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{B}g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5. $\mathbb{B}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ , but White would put paid to that with 2.d6!, forcing his pawn through.

**2. $\mathbb{B}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{B}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{B}xh8$   $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  5.d6 1-0.**

FCM 10.37  
**Hakki-Harikrishna**  
 Abu Dhabi 2004



Black has finely calculated a much surer road to victory than 1... $\mathbb{H}xb3?$ ; a beautiful quiet forcing move which again demonstrates the theme of interference with the rook's defense of the 1st rank:

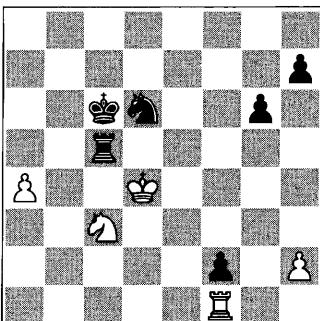
**1...c5!! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$**

Otherwise Black obtains deadly connected passers, since b3 can't be defended: 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4?$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  3.bxc4  $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ .

**2...bxa3 3. $\mathbb{H}c2$  a2 4. $\mathbb{H}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}b1!$  0-1.**

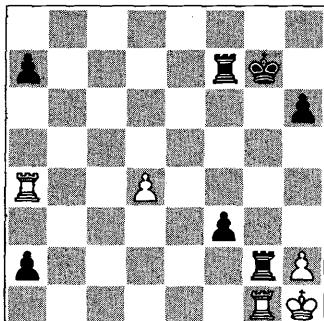


FCM 10.38  
**Pirc-Byrne**  
 Helsinki 1952



Your COMPUTER EYES should need little prompting to find a 100% FORCING four-move combination, in which each move allows only one plausible reply:

**1... $\mathbb{Q}f5+$  2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{H}xc3+!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3!$  4. $\mathbb{H}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}d1+$  0-1.**



FCM 10.39

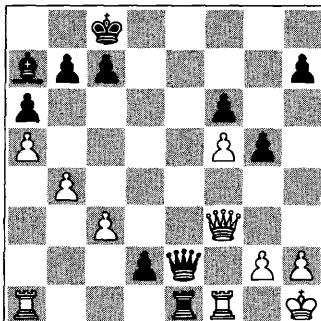
**Topalov-Bareev**

Wijk aan Zee 2004



In rook endings especially, material considerations may take a back seat to other factors like placement of king and rook, and the ability to support or stop passed pawns. So White is justified in fighting on via the g-file pin, and would even achieve equality after 1...f2? 2.  $\mathbb{R}xg2!$ .

Only the INCISIVE FORCING RETREAT 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  seals White's fate by leaving the black rooks well placed to support the passers after 2.  $\mathbb{R}f1 \mathbb{R}b2!$ , 2.  $\mathbb{R}a1 \mathbb{R}b2!$  (threatening 3... $\mathbb{R}b1+$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{R}4xa2 \mathbb{R}xa2$  4.  $\mathbb{R}xa2$  f2, or in the main line 2.  $\mathbb{R}xg2$  f2! 3.  $\mathbb{R}xf2$  (3.  $\mathbb{R}g1$  f1 $\mathbb{Q}!$ ) 3... $\mathbb{R}xf2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{R}b2$ . Followed by ... $\mathbb{R}b1+$  and ...a1 $\mathbb{Q}$ . 0-1.



FCM 10.40

**Miller-Omholt Jensen**

correspondence game, 1984

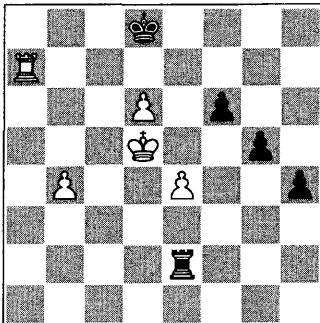


Many endings evolve into pitched battles around the fate of one passed pawn. White's mighty efforts to contain the d-pawn were shattered by a tactic:

1... $\mathbb{R}xf1+!$  2.  $\mathbb{R}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ , when ... $\mathbb{R}xf1+$  and ... $\mathbb{Q}e1$  force a new queen. 0-1.

In the remaining examples, promotion ideas are combined with mating threats:

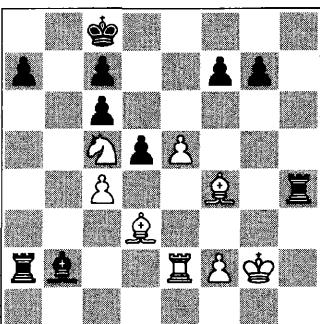
FCM 10.41  
**Schlechter-Perlis (modified)**  
Carlsbad 1911



On 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  or 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$ , Black can and must check from behind. Hence the beautiful solution **1.e5!** promotes or mates after both 1...fxe5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{R}c2$  3.  $\mathbb{R}a8+$   $\mathbb{R}c8$  4.  $\mathbb{R}xc8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e7$ , and **1... $\mathbb{R}xe5+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{R}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4.  $d7$  1-0.**

◆ ◆

FCM 10.42  
**Spangenberg-Soppe**  
Buenos Aires 1998



White springs a surprise mating net in this wild ending with an EST:

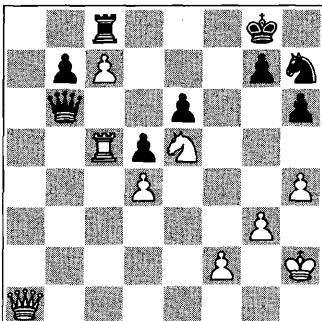
**1.e6! fxe6** (on 1... $\mathbb{R}xf4$ , 2.e7 queens and mates!) **2. $\mathbb{R}xe6 \mathbb{R}h8$**  (forced, as 2... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3.  $\mathbb{R}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$  mates) **3. $\mathbb{R}xc6!$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  4.  $\mathbb{R}xc7+$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  5.  $cxd5!$**

There is no immediate knockout blow, but GM COMPUTER EYES navigate the road to victory:

**5... $\mathbb{R}xf2+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{R}xf4$**

Falling on his sword, but 7.  $\mathbb{Q}d7+$  and 8.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$  with the threat of 9.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  were already irresistible.

**7.  $\mathbb{Q}a6+!$  A crushing ZWISCHENZUG. 1-0.**



FCM 10.43  
**Timoschenko-Gutop**  
Soviet Union 1984



Black wants to remove the thorn from his side with 1.  $\mathbb{W}c3 \mathbb{Q}f6!$  threatening ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$  or ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ , but White parlays the strength of the passer into a mating net:

**1.  $\mathbb{W}a8!! \mathbb{E}xa8$  2.  $c8\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{E}xc8$  3.  $\mathbb{R}xc8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{R}xf8+! \mathbb{Q}h7$**

Forced in view of the fork trick 4... $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ .

**5.  $h5!$**

A remarkable QUIET FORCING MOVE creates a mating net.

**5...  $g5$**

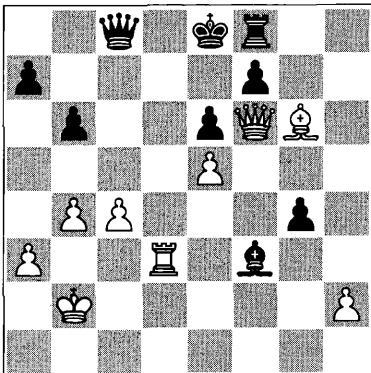
Otherwise 6.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  and 7.  $\mathbb{R}h8\#$ , but now the rook, knight and advanced g-pawn collaborate to perfection.

**6.  $hxg6+ \mathbb{Q}g7$  7.  $\mathbb{R}f7+ \mathbb{Q}g8$**

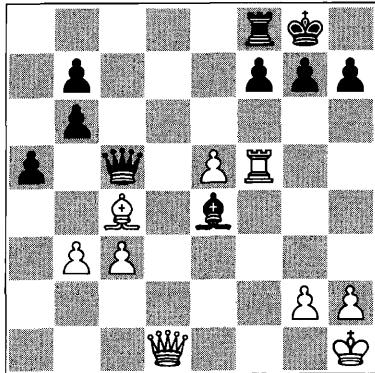
Or 7... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$   $\mathbb{W}xd4$  9.  $\mathbb{R}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  11.  $\mathbb{R}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  12.  $g7$ .

**8.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  1-0** The stock mate threat 9.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ , 10.  $\mathbb{R}h7\#$  bags the lady.

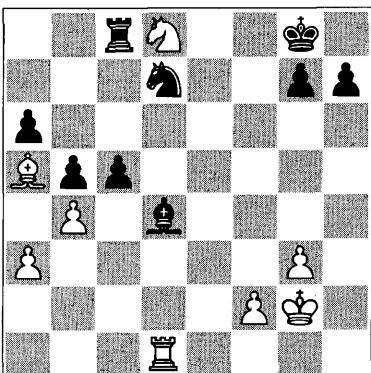
## Chapter 10 - Exercises



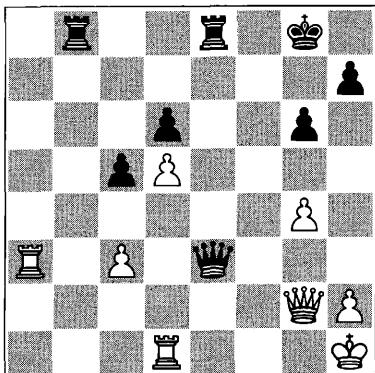
Ex 10.1  Force  
the breakthrough



Ex 10.2  Force  
the breakthrough

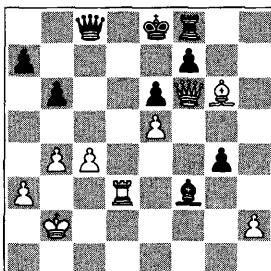


Ex 10.3  A tactical defense?



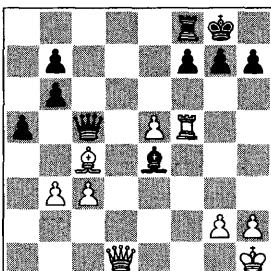
Ex 10.4  Drive away  
the defender

## Forcing Chess Moves



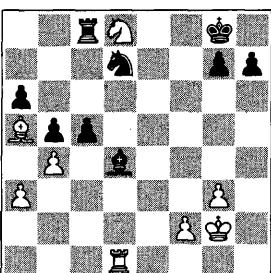
### Ex 10.1 Morozevich-Pelletier Biel 2006

The quiet forcing shot **1.  $\mathbb{H}d6!$**  forced Black to pitch decisive material to avert mate after **1...  $\mathbb{f}xg6$**  (otherwise **2.  $\mathbb{H}xe6+$**  anyway, exploiting the pinned f-pawn) **2.  $\mathbb{H}xe6+ 1-0$** , for on **2...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e7\#$** .



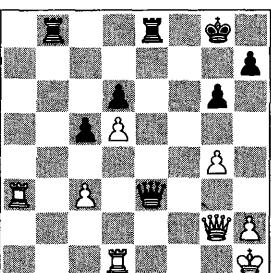
### Ex 10.2 Bledow-Von der Lasa Berlin 1839

White wins the battle for the initiative via the knock-out promotion combination **1.  $\mathbb{H}xf7! \mathbb{H}xf7$**  The least of evils was **1...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2.  $\mathbb{H}xf8+$   $\mathbb{W}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d6$**  with still a huge advantage for White. **2.  $\mathbb{W}d8+$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$**  COMPUTER EYES never fail to try the direct approach first! **3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4.  $e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $e7$  1-0.**



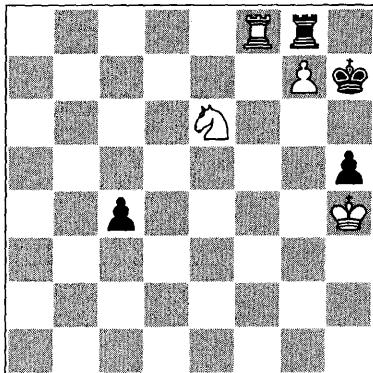
### Ex 10.3 Gelfand-Lutz Dortmund 2002

Mate threats are not only ends in themselves, but often means to achieving other goals, as Tarrasch implied in his paradoxical dictum 'The threat is stronger than its execution!' Black is relying on the tactic **1.  $bxc5 \mathbb{Q}xc5$  2.  $\mathbb{H}xd4 \mathbb{Q}b3$**  to keep the balance, but the surprise mate threat **3.  $\mathbb{He}4!$**  was a stinging fly in the ointment, allowing White to hang on to the extra piece. **1-0.**

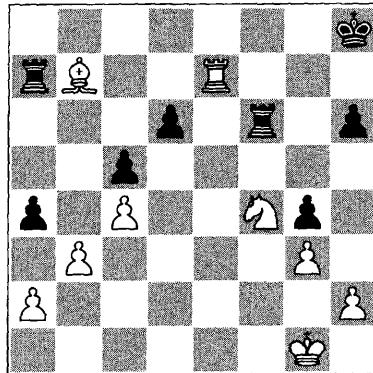


### Ex 10.4 Terrie-Hertan Boston 1993

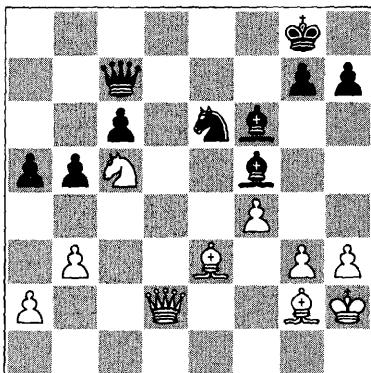
White's weaknesses are compounded by a decisive disadvantage in king safety, which Black duly exploits with the material-winning shot **1...  $\mathbb{H}b2$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g3$**  On **2.  $\mathbb{W}xb2$** , **2...  $\mathbb{W}f3+$**  is crushing. **2...  $\mathbb{H}xh2+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2 \mathbb{W}e2+$** . Down a pawn with a creaky position, White succumbed quickly. **0-1.**



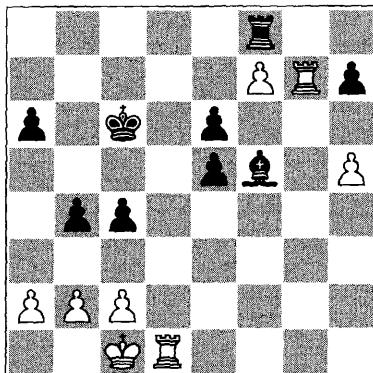
Ex 10.5  How to stop  
the c-pawn?



Ex 10.6  Calculate  
to the end

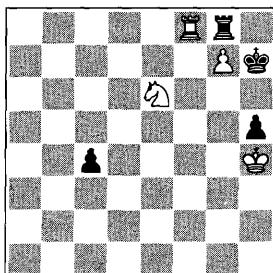


Ex 10.7  Win a pawn

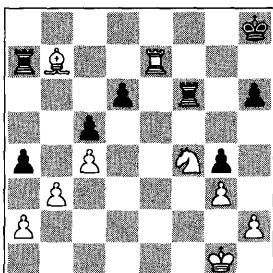


Ex 10.8  Drive away  
the defender

## Forcing Chess Moves

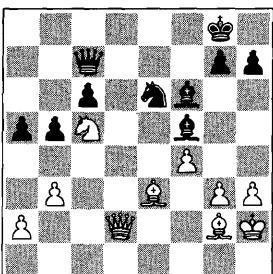


Ex 10.5 **Rashkovsky-Sergey Ivanov** Elista 1995  
White must only resolve the technical problem of how to stop the black c-pawn without yielding his own passer. But he finds an even better solution – mate: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  c3 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{E}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{E}h7\#.$



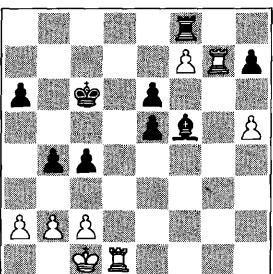
Ex 10.6 **Vaulin-Korobov** Elista 2001

Black's defense rests on the counter-shot 1.  $\mathbb{E}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{E}xb7!$ , but White has seen a decisive extra ‘ply’ deeper: 4.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$  Extricating the knight with the fork 4...  $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6+$ . 1-0.



Ex 10.7 **Golod-Rodshtain** Ramat Aviv 2004

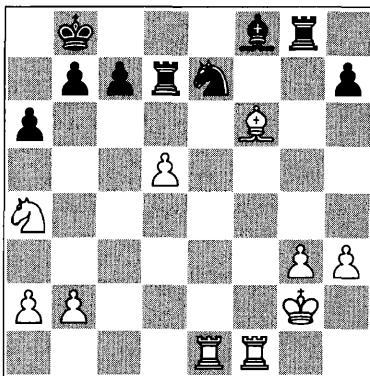
COMPUTER EYES have no bias toward flashy solutions when simple bread and butter tactics will do the trick! White picks off a crucial pawn with the crisply-calculated 1.  $\mathbb{Q}a6!$   $\mathbb{W}b7$  Or 1...  $\mathbb{W}d8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ . 2.  $\mathbb{W}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  and after the strong EST 3.  $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ , he is well on the way to victory. 1-0.



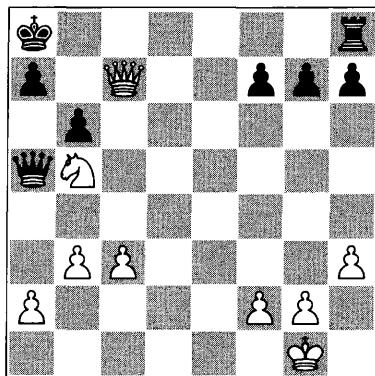
Ex 10.8 **L'Ami-Pelletier**

Germany Bundesliga 2003/04

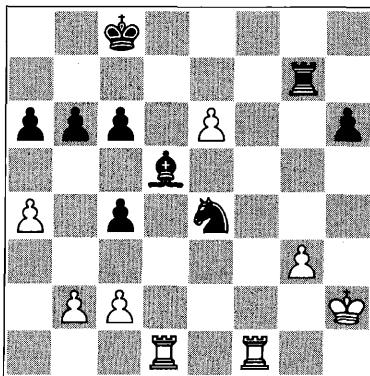
Black has constructed a dogged little fortress, but an elegant promotion combination blows his doors off: 1.  $\mathbb{E}d8!$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$  2.  $\mathbb{E}g8$  1-0.



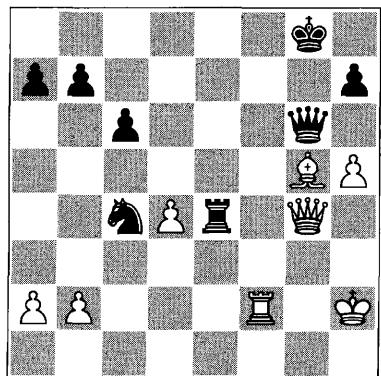
Ex 10.9  Find the key



Ex 10.10  Exploit Black's lack of space

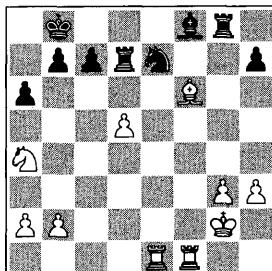


Ex 10.11  Find the breakthrough



Ex 10.12  Find the ST to Black's EST

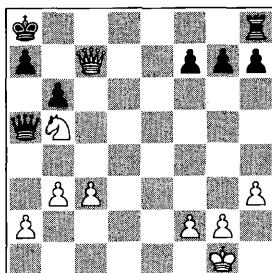
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 10.9 Fischer-Jimenez (variation)

Havana 1967

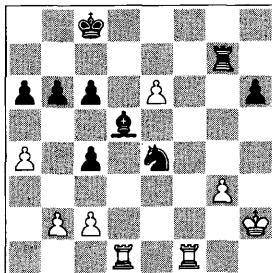
Black would have some life left after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7?$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  (not 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f7$   $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ . But Fischer's COMPUTER EYES must have foreseen that White can win with 1.  $d6!$   $cxd6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  5.  $d5$  1-0.



### Ex 10.10 Sveshnikov-Andrei Sokolov

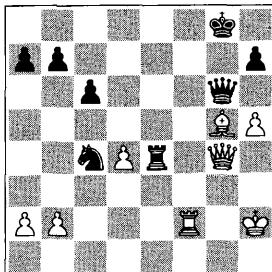
Elista 1996

With a key edge in king safety and White's rampaging knight worth far more than Black's rook, White uses the mating powers of the queen + knight duo to finish the job: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6+$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d6!$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  3.  $b4!$  This quiet forcing move induced Black's resignation in view of 3...  $\mathbb{R}d8$  4.  $b5$   $\mathbb{R}c8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ . 1-0.



### Ex 10.11 Alekhine-Bogoljubow Germany 1934

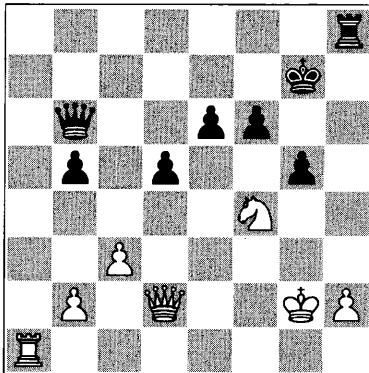
White mopped up with the simple promotion combination 1.  $\mathbb{B}xd5!$   $cxd5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  After 3...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ , 5.  $\mathbb{Q}g6+$  wins without much difficulty. 4.  $exf7$  1-0.



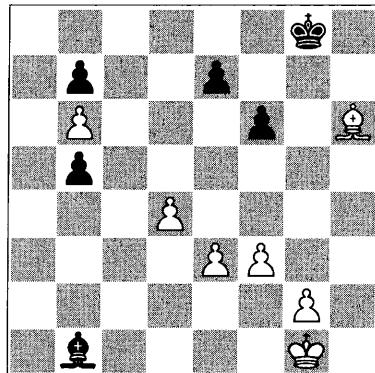
### Ex 10.12 Marshall-Von Scheve

Monte Carlo 1904

The clever EST ...  $\mathbb{Q}e4?$  allowed another tremendous Marshall 'swindle': 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h6!!$  Winning the queen with the stock back-rank mate threat 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8#$ .

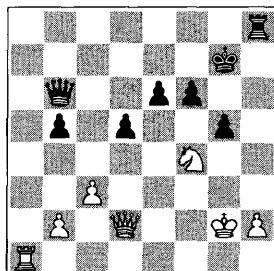


Ex 10.13 □ Should the knight retreat?

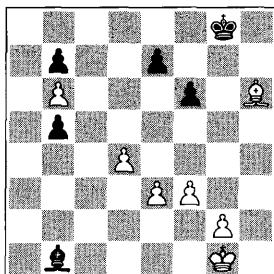


Ex 10.14 ■ Opposite-colored bishops – draw?

## Forcing Chess Moves



Ex 10.13 **Kramnik-Van Wijk** aan Zee 2004  
World champ COMPUTER EYES ended the nonsense at once with the fork trick/EST 1.  $\mathbb{Wd}4!$  winning at least a pawn; 1...  $\mathbb{E}b8$  (if 1...  $\mathbb{Wxd}4$ , 2.  $\mathbb{Qxe}6+$  and 3.  $\mathbb{Qxd}4$ )  
2.  $\mathbb{Ea}7+$   $\mathbb{Qg}8$  3.  $\mathbb{Wxb}6$   $\mathbb{E}xb6$  4.  $\mathbb{Qh}5$   $e5$  5.  $\mathbb{Ed}7$  1-0.



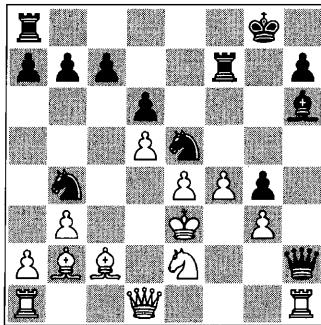
Ex 10.14 **Levitina-Marinello** USA 1994

Black played the 'logical' 1...  $\mathbb{Qf}7??$  and missed the glory train: 1...  $\mathbb{Qe}4!!$  seals off the only piece that can catch the b-pawn, since after 2.  $\mathbb{Qf}2$   $b4$  White will be a tempo too late. 0-1.

## Chapter 11 - Intuition and Creativity

In the study of master games, it is not unusual to come across comments such as this one, from Nezhmetdinov's *Best Games of Chess*:

FCM 11.1  
**Polugaevsky-Nezhmetdinov**  
Sochi 1958



After the stunning EST 1... $\mathbb{E}xf4!!$  Rashid Nezhmetdinov candidly confesses: 'It goes without saying that it was impossible to calculate all the likely continuations over the board. The combination was intuitive and that is why it was difficult to decide on.' But a terrific decision it turned out to be, both practically and artistically.

Black won beautifully after 2. $\mathbb{E}xh2$  2.gxf4  $\mathbb{E}xf4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{W}f2+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}c5\#$ ) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xc2+$ . 2... $\mathbb{E}f3+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  Nezhmetdinov originally intended 3...c5+, but found in time that White escapes with 4.dxc6 bxc6 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$   $\mathbb{Q}exd3$  (better may be 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}exd3+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ ) 6. $\mathbb{E}xh6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  7. $\mathbb{E}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  8. $\mathbb{E}xd1$ . 4.a4? To prevent the quiet 4...b5!. Rashid devotes long analysis to 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$   $\mathbb{E}xg3!$  (also quite interesting is 4...c5+ 5.dxc5  $\mathbb{Q}ed3+$  or the direct 4... $\mathbb{Q}ed3+!$  5.e5  $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$  (6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ ) 6... $\mathbb{Q}xb2+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{E}xg3$ ) and concludes that Black is still better. 4...c5+ 5.dxc6 bxc6 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}exd3+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$  d5+ 8.exd5 cxd5+ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{E}b8+$  10. $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}c6+$  0-1 (11. $\mathbb{Q}a6$   $\mathbb{E}b6\#$ ).

All true chess lovers appreciate the great human achievement of executing such a beautiful combination at the highest level. The machinations of cold machines cannot undo these triumphs of human sweat and imagination, under the grueling conditions of sports competition.

## Forcing Chess Moves

But WHERE DOES 'MASTER INTUITION' COME FROM? What are the factors that go into creating such sublime works of art? A concise answer would have to include the following factors:

1. A strong knowledge of stock combinations and other FORCING CHESS MOVES.
2. HARD WORK, to calculate enough variations to assess the likelihood of success, and not overlook any obvious refutations.
3. CREATIVITY. The urge to create something beautiful, and push beyond one's usual limits in search of hidden possibilities, is a driving force for great conceptions. COMPUTER EYES, helping us overcome human bias, are very helpful here.
4. COURAGE! As Nezhmetdinov mused, intuitive combinations are not easy to play! Chess players are quite prone to the human tendency of wanting to feel in complete control over the board. But intuitive combinations require a carefully considered 'leap into the unknown!'.
5. MASTER EXPERIENCE AND PRACTICAL WISDOM. Masters have the precious benefit of having faced a wide array of situations many times before. This helps them weigh the many subtle factors that go into deciding whether an intuitive combination is worth the risk, such as: 'Is there a simpler continuation that has better chances to succeed?', 'How have similar positions played out for me in the past?', 'Do I think this opponent is likely to be able to navigate the chaos as well as I am? Is s/he uncomfortable defending?', 'What is the likely best and worst case scenario? Is the risk of this continuation worth the potential gain?', 'How does time pressure factor in to the decision', and 'does experience tell me that this intuitive line best meets the demands of the position?

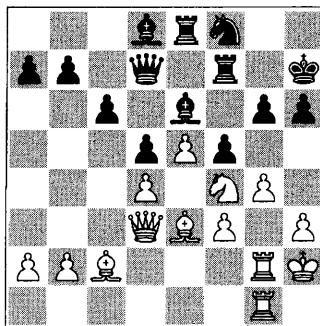
Every great master will tell you that sometimes a 'little birdie' inside the head tells him or her that an intuitive combination 'must be right'. This is the voice of judgment and experience. But rarely will he act too quickly on that voice; he must first try to ensure that the forcing variations support the intuition.

To begin developing your own 'master intuition', you will have to start by strengthening your knowledge of forcing moves, sharpening your COMPUTER EYES to look beyond stereotyped solutions, working hard on analysis, and having the courage to try for something great. You may fail many times and fall flat on your face in the short run; but learning to take calculated risks will make you a much more creative, interesting and dangerous player over time.

Early in my chess career, I played a remarkable game against the venerable American master, Dr. Ariel Mengarini. The score sheet vanished long ago, but the outcome left an indelible impression on my mind. I had the opportunity to sacrifice my queen for only a knight, in beautiful fashion, to weave a mating net. Some inner instinct must have gripped me, because although I couldn't find the mate, I sat there looking at the position for an hour, wanting desperately to play the sacrifice. Finally, in my inexperience, I played another move and soon lost, having given away too much time and inspiration. Afterwards, my young master friend Steve Feinberg, jumped for-

ward to show what I had missed: a fantastic QUIET FORCING MOVE SOON after sacrificing the queen, which would have led to quick mate. Such experiences are not soon forgotten, and the lessons I learned about creativity, intuition and courage came in handy when I finally got a second chance:

FCM 11.2  
**Hertan-Curdo**  
Amherst 1988



### 1. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!!$

Like Nezhmetdinov, I admit that I couldn't see all the variations in advance. But unlike in my earlier game with Mengarini, master intuition guided me. After discovering the pivotal EST on move 3, I realized that if the combination worked, it could be the creative achievement of a lifetime. I worked hard to calculate the forcing moves as best I could, and then the 'little birdie' of instinct told me to take the leap...

### 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!!$

Key point #1; curtains for Black is 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6\#$ ; or 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$  with mate in 7. I was certain that Curdo, a rugged defender of the old school, would find the only move:

### 3... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$

... after which I had planned a queen sacrifice:

### 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$

The queen must be taken, since a mate-threatening EST extricates the rook after 4...  $hgx5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}6xg5!$ .

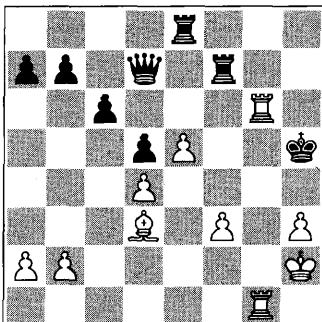
### 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $hxg5$

Hopeless are 5...  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  with mate in 7, or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

### 6. $\mathbb{Q}6xg5+!$

A critical moment; I first planned 6.  $\mathbb{Q}1xg5??$ , but 'one last look' revealed the miracle defense 6...  $\mathbb{Q}xh3+!!$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  with only a much better ending! Luckily, I was in a hyper-alert creative state, determined not to waste the promise of the sacrifice:

6...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  (on 6...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$ , 7.  $\mathbb{Q}h5+$  wins) 7.  $\mathbb{Q}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$



position after 7...Qh5

Now if 8.B1g5+ Qh4 with counterthreats, but...

**8.f4!!**

Imagine my delight on discovering this awesome QUIET FORCING MOVE, threatening both 8.Qe2 and 8.B1g5+!. This I had not foreseen, but fortune often favors the brave!

**8...Be6 9.Qe2+ Qh4 10.B1g4+ Qh5 11.B4g5+ 1-0.**

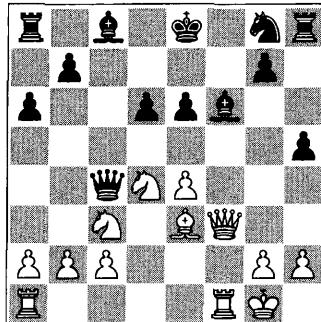
### Inspiration and the Attack

Attacking play is the ultimate proving ground for combining the spark of creativity and the intuition of experience, with the backbone of strong calculation of FORCING MOVES. Attempting to take the enemy fortress by storm usually carries some risk, since it involves taking committal measures, rather than just sitting solidly on one's assets. Unless the attack is already overwhelming, it goes without saying that the defender will have his own trumps, and that his sense of danger and awareness will be heightened. Therefore, great attackers are players who seem to always come up with some creative spark, often a calculated risk, which transforms the position away from usual channels, and forces the defender to navigate treacherous waters.

Good attackers have a well-developed sense of intuition, which helps them assess the level of risk involved in an intuitive sacrifice, and the likelihood of success, but above all, they are superior calculators and adventurous souls, who revel in analyzing creative forcing moves and finding hidden surprises.

Another trait which separates the best attackers is fearlessness; they are not afraid of sometimes losing a game by pushing the envelope too far, if it means winning many more games by virtue of their prowess and courage. While it is usually not possible to calculate every variation of a complex attack, the intuition and experience of the attacker helps him hone in on the most critical lines which MUST be accurately foreseen in order to justify the risk. Attacking wizards have usually prepared several nasty analytical surprises for their unwary prey, before they start the offensive...

FCM 11.3  
**Nunn-Andrei Sokolov**  
 Dubai 1986



Black is underdeveloped, and his king position is suspect. The conditions are ripe for attack, so White's inspiration starts flowing:

**1.e5!**

Nunn writes: 'Black is forced to take with the pawn, but this immediately improves white's position in 3 ways: ... the d file and the diagonal f3-a8 are opened... the ♖f6 is hemmed in... and the e4 square is freed for the ♔c3. Of course these are only general points, indicating that 1.e5 is worth taking seriously; *it is still necessary to calculate that the move actually works.*' In other words, insight and intuition are important factors, but one must calculate the FORCING MOVES first before embarking on such a sacrifice.

**1...dxe5 2.♘e4!**

The first surprise; the knight is activated with tempo via the forcing fork threat 3.♗d6+.

**2...♗c7** (not 2...♗d5 3.c4!) **3.♗g3! ♕e7 4.♖ad1!**

Nunn notes that when the opponent has structural weaknesses which are difficult to mend, it is often correct to bring up the reserves, rather than taking more drastic measures. I agree in theory, but in this case the rook move is also correct because it prevents Black's only hope of consolidation, ...♔d7 and 0-0-0. That said, the computer gives the immediate 4.♖xf6! gxf6 5.♘xf6+! as winning.

**4...h4**

4...♔d7 runs into the precise sequence 5.♖xf6! gxf6 6.♘xf6+ ♔f7 (not 6...♔d8 7.♘xe6+) 7.♘f3! (a fine forcing retreat) 7...♔xf6 8.♗g5+ ♔f7 9.♘xe5+ ♔e8 10.♘xe7 ♔xe7 11.♗g7+.

**5.♘xf6+ gxf6 6.♗g7 ♜f8**

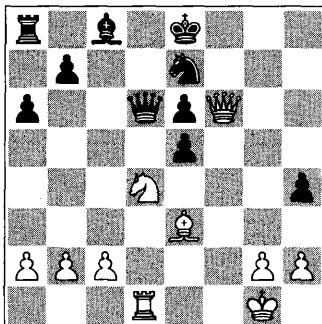
On 6...♜g8 7.♗xf6 ♔d5 comes the beautiful EST 8.♘xe6!! winning.

**7.♘xf6!**

White's crisply calculated forcing moves give the defender no rest.

**7...♜xf6 8.♗xf6 ♗d6**

Or the impressive brute force line 8...exd4 9.♗h8+ ♔d7 10.♖xd4+ ♔d5 (10...♔c6 11.♗e8+!) 11.♗g7+ ♔e8 (11...♔d6 12.♗f4+) 12.♗g8+ ♔e7 13.♖xd5! exd5 14.♗g7+ and the black queen is lost to a bishop check!



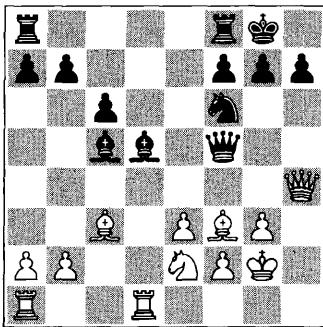
position after 8...Wd6

**9.Qg5! exd4 10.Rxd4 Qd5 11.Rxd5!**. Winning the queen or mating. **1-0.**

It was not necessary, nor possible to calculate every line in advance. The risk was relatively small (one pawn), and the positional benefits were fairly clear. All Nunn really needed was the INTUITION to trust the sacrifice, the CREATIVITY to set Black new problems, and the EFFORT to correctly calculate critical variations as the attack unfolded.



Every chess player has been occasionally baffled and irritated by the annotation, 'White has a winning attack'. We may respond with some mixture of berating the author ('Is he too lazy to show me the variations?'), getting angry at ourselves ('Why can't I see it?'), or even disbelief—sometimes with good reason! Still, there are some sacrifices which are so powerful, that a master needs only to calculate a few key variations, to trust his intuition that a forced win exists.



FCM 11.4

**Blackburne-Von Bardeleben**

Hastings 1895



England's first great attacker, 'The Black Death' Henry Blackburne, foresees the power of the advance g4-g5 together with an attack on the h-file, and quickly calculates a few key FORCING MOVES, after which intuition takes over.

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$   $cxd5$** 

The first point is 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  2. e4!

**2. g4!  $\mathbb{W}e6$** 

The second key is 2...  $\mathbb{W}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  winning. On 2...  $\mathbb{W}d7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $gxf6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$  or 4.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  'with a winning attack'.

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}fd8$** 

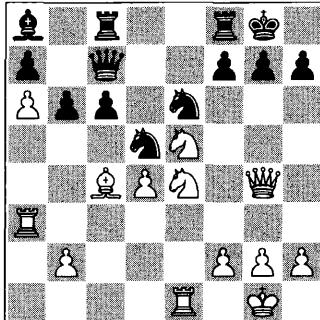
Black's last chance was 4... d4! after which things are still not so clear: 5.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  h6! or 5. exd4  $\mathbb{W}xf4$  6. dxc5 h6! and White is only slightly better in both lines, whereas he's even a little worse after 5. g5? dxc3 6. gxf6 h6!

**5. g5 d4 (5...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  h6 7. exd4  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  1-0.**

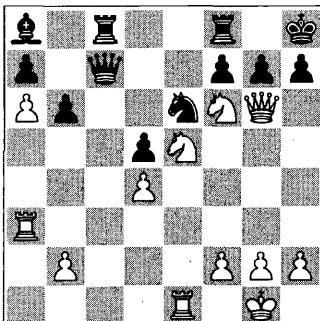


In other cases there is TOO MUCH RISK INVOLVED to leave any forcing moves to chance, and the attacker must try to calculate everything to the end. In these situations creativity and hard work come to the forefront, and the role of intuition is only to guide the master to the possibility that a beautiful combination may exist:

FCM 11.5  
**Rossolimo-Reissmann**  
San Juan 1967



**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$   $cxd5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g6!!$**



position after 3.  $\mathbb{W}g6!!$

## Forcing Chess Moves

The French-American master Nicholas Rossolimo was an incredibly creative attacker, but knowledge of STOCK MATING ATTACKS helped guide this astounding idea.

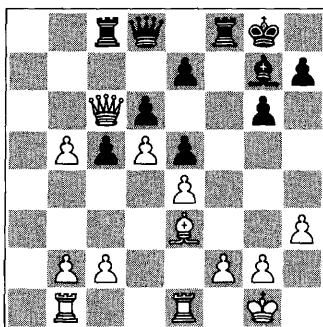
### 3... $\mathbb{W}c2!$

Thankfully for posterity, Black plays the best defense. On 3...fxg6 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$  hxg6 5. $\mathbb{B}h3+$  mates; or 3...gxf6 4. $\mathbb{W}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5. $\mathbb{B}g3$   $\mathbb{B}g8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$  mops up.

### 4. $\mathbb{B}h3!!$

The fitting finale is a stunning QUIET FORCING MOVE. Everything hangs, but stock mate on h7 is unavoidable.

**4... $\mathbb{W}xg6$**  (4...h6 5. $\mathbb{B}xh6+$ ; another nice line is 4... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$   $\mathbb{B}xf7$  6. $\mathbb{W}xc2$ )  
**5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$  fxg6 6. $\mathbb{B}xh7\#$ .**



FCM 11.6

**Khalifman-Ermenkov**

Elenite 1994



White didn't enter this position to acquiesce to a draw after 1. $\mathbb{W}a6$   $\mathbb{B}a8$ , but rather to translate his positional plus into a direct attack with a creative solution:

### 1.b4!!

It is probable that White analyzed a few critical lines in depth and, after refuting Black's main tries, trusted intuitively that the passed pawns must promote. Very telling is the fact that Black has not a shred of counterplay, so White need only determine that the march of the pawns cannot be derailed:

### 1... $\mathbb{B}xc6$ 2.dxc6 e6

A typical line is 2...cxb4 3.b6  $\mathbb{W}e8$  4.c7  $\mathbb{W}b5$  5.c4!  $\mathbb{W}xc4$  6. $\mathbb{B}ec1$   $\mathbb{W}a6$  (or 6... $\mathbb{W}xe4$  7.c8 $\mathbb{W}$   $\mathbb{B}xc8$  8. $\mathbb{B}xc8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  9. $\mathbb{B}b2$  and the b-pawn is golden) 7. $\mathbb{B}xb4$   $\mathbb{W}b7$  8. $\mathbb{B}a4$  easily busting the blockade; also rather pathetic is 2... $\mathbb{W}b6$  3.c4!  $\mathbb{B}a8$  4. $\mathbb{B}a1$   $\mathbb{B}xa1$  5. $\mathbb{B}xa1$  e6 6. $\mathbb{B}a6$  (6. $\mathbb{B}a8+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  7.bxc5 dxc5 8. $\mathbb{B}d2!+-$  is another nice computer line) 6... $\mathbb{W}c7$  7.bxc5 dxc5 8. $\mathbb{B}xc5$ .

**3. $\mathbb{B}ed1$   $\mathbb{W}b8$  4.bxc5 d5 5.exd5 exd5 6. $\mathbb{B}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  7.c7  $\mathbb{W}f7$  8.b6!  $\mathbb{W}xd5$  9.b7 1-0.**

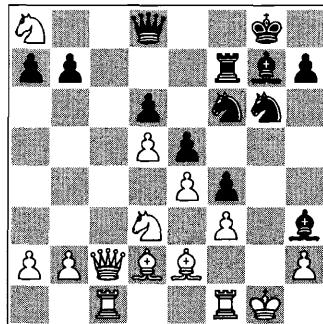
## Intuition and Creativity in the Service of Wresting the Initiative

In most games a moment arises in which it becomes clear that one side is dictating the play. Sometimes this occurs right out of the opening, but in many games, or even several times within a game, a battle takes place over who can establish the initiative. The player with the initiative is better able to influence the play with FORCING MOVES, and this is important psychologically, because it puts pressure on the opponent; but also strategically, because it enables the attacker to PLAY TO HIS STRENGTH, i.e., the sector of the board in which he holds an edge.

Holding the initiative doesn't ASSURE a win, or even an advantage. Some initiatives prove superficial, and a master may be willing and able to withstand some temporary activity, in order to tempt the opponent to overreach, or to show that his trumps (material, structure, pawn breaks, or stronger long-term threats, to name a few) are better in the end.

Still, strong players recognize that all things being equal, holding the initiative is often decisive. Experienced masters have a good intuitive feel for which moments in the game have the potential to be KEY TURNING POINTS, and this awareness allows them to apply maximal creative energy and brute force calculation to the goal of finding the right FORCING MOVES, or the continuation likely to set the opponent the most difficult problems:

FCM 11.7  
**Larsen-Tal**  
 Eersel 1969



Only White could claim winning chances after 1... $\mathbb{W}x a8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  3. $\mathbb{W}c8+!$ , so Black's bid for the initiative with 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  was not only inspiration, but strategic necessity!

**2.fxe4  $\mathbb{W}g5+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$**

Now Black could force a draw by repetition with 3... $\mathbb{W}h4+$ , but in typical Tal fashion he rolled the dice with:

## Forcing Chess Moves

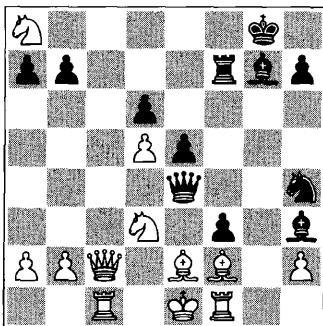
### 3... $\mathbb{W}g2+?$

... trusting his ability to swim in murky waters. His attacker's instincts paid off as White went wrong with:

### 4. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}h4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$

White appears to consolidate and win with 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$   $\mathbb{Q}f3+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{Q}d4$  (or 6... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xh3 \mathbb{Q}xf1$  8. $\mathbb{W}c8+$ ) 7. $\mathbb{W}c3$ . But how strongly can we condemn Tal's decision to go for broke, when it succeeded against one of the strongest players of his era? Against a computer such play might be suicidal, but in human play, the pressure to find perhaps one saving line in a thick jungle of alternatives, with threats looming at every turn, is tremendous. We cannot know what other factors, such as time pressure or tournament position, may have influenced this bold decision.

### 5... $\mathbb{W}xe4!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2 f3!$



position after 6...f3

Black is still down a rook and piece for the moment, but his inspired play has certainly succeeded in wresting the initiative! Most attackers would relish Black's position; his position is much easier to play, since he has already committed himself to finding only the strongest attacking move, while White faces sudden death for one false move at every juncture.

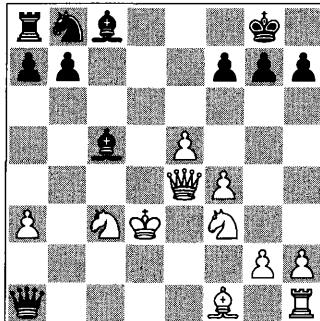
7. $\mathbb{Q}xh4 \mathbb{W}xh4+$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f2 fxe2$  9. $\mathbb{W}xe2 e4!$  10. $\mathbb{Q}g1 e3$  11. $\mathbb{W}xe3 \mathbb{Q}e7$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  13. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}d7$  14. $\mathbb{Q}xd7 \mathbb{Q}xd7$  15. $\mathbb{W}xa7 \mathbb{Q}e7+$  16. $\mathbb{Q}d1?$

16. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  was forced, but Black's position was preferable, and White was exhausted from arduous defense, and likely in time trouble.

16... $\mathbb{W}c4$  0-1. 17... $\mathbb{W}f1+$  and 18... $\mathbb{Q}e2+$  decides.

A great struggle between two inventive giants!

FCM 11.8  
**Shirov-Eingorn**  
Stockholm 1989

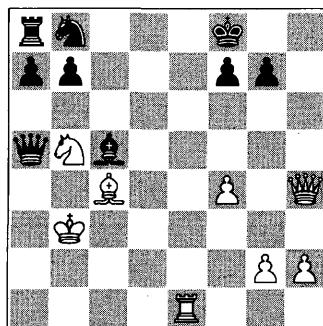


With White's king parading up the open central file in a complicated middlegame, and his kingside underdeveloped, it's hard to say who's attacking. Indeed, White judged that Black's counter-threats would assure a draw after 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}c6!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d5+$  (4.  $\mathbb{W}xg7?$   $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}h3+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  6.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$ . Only an attacking genius like Shirov would brave such a shocking ploy to wrest the initiative as:

**1.e6!! fxe6?**

One reason that boldness is often rewarded, is that few players have the stomach to wade into a sea of treacherous long variations. Often the defender will try to steer the boat into calmer channels, at the precise moment when the position calls for vigorous counter measures.

The central idea of 1.e6!! was to eliminate the nasty threat of ...  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$  by capturing the bishop with tempo after 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$ . In *Fire on Board*, Shirov states that Black could then equalize with 2...  $\mathbb{W}xa3$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{W}a6+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}b5!$   $\mathbb{W}g6+$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{W}e6+$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  (9.  $\mathbb{Q}b2!$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  10.  $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$  looks good) 9...  $\mathbb{W}b6+$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{W}a5$  11.  $\mathbb{W}h4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  12.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$ . But instead of taking a draw with 12.  $\mathbb{W}h8+$ , I believe that White wins with the incredible QUIET FORCING MOVE 12.  $\mathbb{W}e1!!$



position after 12.  $\mathbb{W}e1$  (analysis)

## Forcing Chess Moves

12... $\mathbb{W}b4+$  (or 12... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  13. $\mathbb{M}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  14. $\mathbb{W}e7$ ) 13. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{W}xc4+$  14. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$  (this stunning FORCING DEFENSIVE MOVE is the point, stopping all checks and returning to the attack) 14... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (or 14... $f6$  15. $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{W}g8$  (15... $\mathbb{Q}f7??$  16. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$ ) 16. $\mathbb{M}e8+$ ) 15. $\mathbb{M}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  16. $\mathbb{M}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  17. $\mathbb{W}d8\#.$  Black's best defense seems to be 14... $f5$  15. $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  16. $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  17. $g4!$   $fxg4$  18. $\mathbb{W}e5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  19. $\mathbb{W}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  20. $\mathbb{M}e8$   $\mathbb{W}a6$  21. $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  22. $\mathbb{W}f5+$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  23. $\mathbb{M}h8+$ , but White is clearly better here.

Instead of 2... $\mathbb{W}xa3$ , I think that Black should wage an all-out war for the initiative with 2... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ ! 3. $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$  (White probably should not let himself in on 4. $\mathbb{W}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5. $\mathbb{W}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}f5+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}ge4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}xc3$  8. $\mathbb{W}xb7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  and now 9. $\mathbb{W}xf7?$  loses to 9... $\mathbb{Q}e7!!$ , but 9. $\mathbb{W}b1!!$   $\mathbb{W}e3+$  10. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+$  11. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $f5+$  12. $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{W}e8+$  13. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $g5+!$  ends in a rather shaky draw) 4... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ ! 5. $\mathbb{W}xg7!$  (White may be able to court disaster with 5. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  (5. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6!$ ) 5... $\mathbb{M}d8+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}xc3+$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ ) 5... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  6. $f5+$  and now either 6... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  7. $\mathbb{W}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8. $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9. $\mathbb{W}g8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  10. $\mathbb{W}g6+$  with an edge for White, or 6... $\mathbb{Q}xf5?!$  7. $\mathbb{W}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  8. $\mathbb{W}d5+$  and White looks winning.

### 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ g6 3. $\mathbb{W}e5!$

This wonderfully creative QUIET FORCING MOVE is the key to White's idea. The threat to creep in with 3. $\mathbb{W}f6-f7+$  is suddenly tremendous. White has already won the battle for the initiative, and with it, the whole game has turned.

### 3... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}g7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$

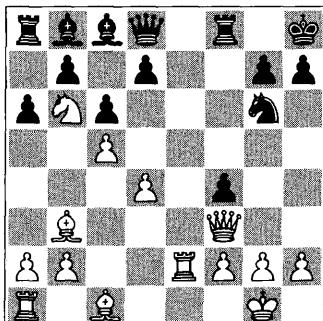
Shirov gives 5... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$   $\mathbb{W}xa3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  9. $\mathbb{M}d1+$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  10. $\mathbb{M}xd6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  12. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  winning.

### 6. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}h8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$

On 7... $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ , 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$  wins the queen.

### 8. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{W}xa3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 1-0.

Shirov's courage and creativity are a great inspiration!



FCM 11.9

Vigodchikov-Alekhine

correspondence game, 1910



**1...d5!! 2.Qxa8**

Alekhine recommends 2.Qxc8! Qxc8 3.Qc2 with a slight edge for White. But perhaps White was more interested in a full-blooded artistic struggle than in 'correctness'. Can we blame him?

**2...Qh4 3.Qc3**

Despite the extra material, White's king is in trouble in the interesting line 3.Qh5 g6 4.Qh6 Qf5 5.Qh3 Qg3 6.hxg3 (6.Qxc8 Qxe2+) 6...Qxh3 7.gxh3 fxg3.

**3...f3 4.Qe5**

If 4.Qe1 Qxg2 and 5...Qh4, or 4.Qe3 Qg5! 5.g3 Qxg3! 6.hxg3 Qxg3+! 7.fxg3 f2+ 8.Qf1 (8.Qh2 f1Q) 8...Qh3+ wins beautifully.

**4...Qxe5 5.dxe5 Qxg2 6.Qd4**

Or 6.Qb6 Qh4 7.Qxc8 Qh3 8.Qf1 Qe3+ 9.Qe1 Qf1+ 10.Qd2 Qe2#.

**6...Qd7 7.e6**

On 7.Qh1 Qh3 8.Qd2, the obstruction sacrifice 8...Qe1! forces mate on g2!

**7...Qxe6 8.Qd2 Qg6 9.Qc2**

If 9.Qh1 Qe1!, or 9.Qf1 Qe8!!, but now the fight is over, as Black has two extra pawns and the attack!

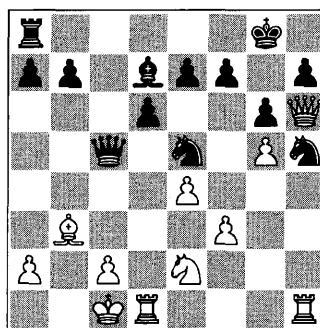
**9...Qxc2 10.Qh1 Qg6 11.Qg1 Qh3 12.Qb6 Qf4 13.Qxg6 Qg2+ 14.Qxg2 fxg2+ 15.Qg1 Qe2+ 16.Qxg2 Qxd4 0-1.**

As often happens, once White lost the initiative he was reduced to fending off Black's threats for the rest of the game, and never had time to develop his own play. The loss of the 'off sides' Qa8 proved a great investment for Black! His creativity served a very fine purpose: transforming the whole nature of the battle, by allowing him to play to his strength on the kingside.



In double-edged positions, it is something of a positional imperative to keep the initiative.

FCM 11.10  
Karpov-Gik  
Moscow 1968



White's position would quickly crumble if Black had just a few tempi to fuel his queenside play (e.g., ...a5-a4). Such situations require great accuracy and energy:

## Forcing Chess Moves

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5!$**  In *My Best Games*, Karpov writes, ‘There is no time to lose. 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$ , which I almost played... had to be rejected...(because of) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$  which would exclude the white queen from the game.’ (2.  $f\text{g}4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8!$  traps the queen!)

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}e3+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b1!$**

If 3.  $\mathbb{Q}b2?$   $\mathbb{Q}d3+!$  4.  $cxd3$  (4.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{Q}xe2+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}f2!$  and thanks to the check on c5 Black has good chances to hold.

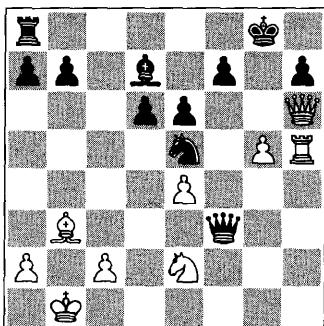
**3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$**

Not 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  e6 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$  and the clever defense 3...  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  4.  $f\text{g}4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  (now if 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5?$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  and 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5?$   $\mathbb{Q}d1+!$ ) strands on 5. g6!.

**4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  e6**

Karpov gives 4...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  5. g6!  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$ ; or on 4...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$ , the beautiful forcing retreat 6.  $\mathbb{Q}h1!!$  threatening 7.  $\mathbb{Q}g3!$  (idea 8.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$ ) and if 6... e6, 7.  $\mathbb{Q}d4!$   $\mathbb{Q}f2$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!$  and the unavoidable stock mate 9.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+!$ . Instead of 7...  $\mathbb{Q}f2$ , a better defense may be 7...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  with the point 9.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6!$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  and now 11...  $\mathbb{Q}d1+!$  forces a tenable endgame.

After the text White’s initiative seems to have run its course, since Black would savor a favorable ending after 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ .



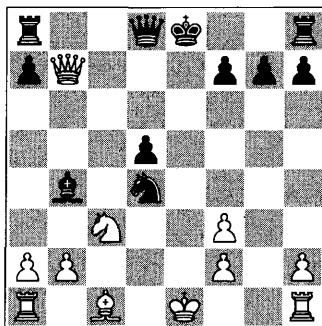
position after 4...e6

**5.g6!!** A decisive creative burst at the critical moment! **5...  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$**  Not 5...  $hxg6$ ? 6.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$  or 5...  $fxg6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ . 5...  $\mathbb{Q}f1+$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$  makes no difference. **6.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!!$**  The crucial point! Black’s bunker is busted (7...  $exf5$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ ) and he must sac the queen to play on. **7...  $\mathbb{Q}xb3+$  8.  $axb3$   $exf5$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$**  White’s initiative persists into the ending, and now he uses it to break Black’s resistance. **9...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $fxg6$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  14.  $exf5$  1-0.**

## Necessity, Psychology, and Other Practical Aspects of Creative Forcing Moves

Creative forcing moves often arise from a master's intuition that the position simply demands them. When a strong player 'feels in his bones' that a particular sacrifice must be correct, he may work hard to justify intuition with analysis, or in some cases trust more to instinct, when either the move must be tried in any case, or the position does not lend itself well to deep analysis, as in this example from my practice:

FCM 11.11  
Ilyin-Hertan  
Biel 1996



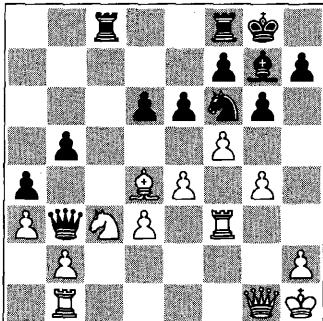
White has been horribly outplayed in the opening, and I fully expected him to submit to 1.0-0 (of course the ♜b4 is held by the fork trick ...♜c2+) 1...♜xc3 2.bxc3 ♜xf3+ 3.♔g2 ♜h4+ and ...0-0 with a winning endgame for Black. But desperate situations call for desperate measures, and White essayed a bizarre, yet inspired idea:

**1.♔d1!**

After recovering from the initial urge to laugh, I had to applaud White's ingenuity. As a practical matter, it is better to defend even a dubious position with obscure counterchances, than to defend a dry, technically lost position. My bishop is now attacked and the white rook is ready to give a check on the e-file. If 1...♜xc3 2.bxc3 ♜xf3 3.♔a3! with annoying counterplay. I could backtrack with 1...♜e7 2.♖e1 ♜e6 3.♗c6+ ♜f8, but somehow this didn't seem in the spirit of the position. I started to feel some annoyance; wouldn't I feel embarrassed if White managed to survive? Finally, I came up with a 'crazy' idea of my own which just begged to be played:

**1...0-0!**

There was not much to analyze; I just looked a few moves ahead to confirm that I could impede White's development. Master intuition told me that the sacrifice must be good; how could it be wrong to take the initiative against that ridiculous king on d1? Once I 'took the plunge', the hard part was over and all the pressure was on White! My only job from then on was to keep attacking and setting him problems. After **2.♗xb4 ♜f6 3.f4 ♜c6 4.♗a4 ♜ab8 5.a3 ♜fd8** Black had full compensation and won in the middlegame.



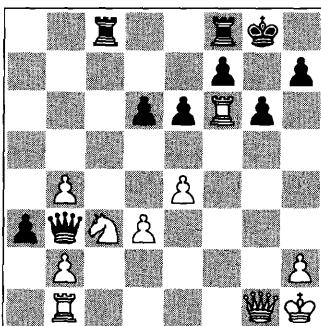
FCM 11.12  
Short-Speelman  
London 1988



Not only is Black faced with a strong attack and the possible interment of his bishop after g5 and f6; but he is also in time pressure. Given these realities, the 'accidental' inspiration he found was really the only practical chance:

**1...♝xg4! 2.f6** In *Jon Speelman's Best Games*, Black gives this candid commentary: 'I... was off-stage when the realization hit me that he could win a piece. At first I was shocked and wondered why he was taking so long to see it, but by the time he made his move I'd realized that it would be quite playable for me. Had I had the misfortune to foresee 2.f6... then I would have wasted quite a while...looking for alternatives, and probably ended up playing 1...♝xg4 anyway; but with much less time...'(!) Jon had spent the little time he could afford, to examine White's attempts to checkmate the black king with 2.♔xg7 ♚xg7 3.♗xg4 ♜xc3 4.f6+ (Speelman gives 4.fxe6 ♜c7 (4...♜xd3!), or 4.♗h3 exf5 5.exf5 ♜c5 as OK for Black; 6.d4 ♜c2 7.♗g1 ♜d5 looks awkward, but mate is still averted on 8.f6+ ♚h8 9.♗h6 ♜g8 meeting 10.♗h3 with 10...♜e4+ – and Black interposes on h5 against the stock try 10.♗xh7+?? ♚xh7 11.♗h3+) 4...♚h8 5.♗g5 (if 5.♗h3 ♜xd3 6.♗xh7+ ♚xh7 7.♗h4+ ♚g8 8.♗h6 ♜d1+ 9.♗xd1 ♜f3+; or 5.♗h3 ♜c5) 5...♜xd3 6.♗h6 ♜g8.

**2...♝xf6 3.♝xf6** (or 3.♜xf6 e5 4.♝d5 exd4) **3...♜xf6 4.♜xf6 b4! 5.axb4 a3!**



position after 5...a3

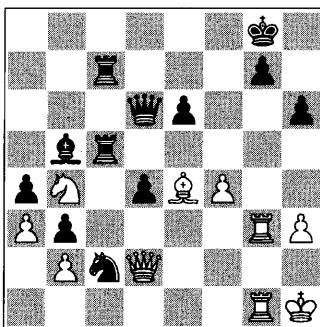
As in the previous game, following Black's creative (and lucky!) intuitive leap, the psychology of the position has completely shifted! Black is still somewhat worse, but his position has now become much easier to play than White's, with two solid pawns for the piece, a much safer king, active pieces, and good prospects of liquidating into a drawn ending. Whereas Black was under the gun in the first diagram, the onus is now on White to make use of his extra piece. In addition, White was in a 'must-win' position in the match.

After **6.  $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{W}xb4$  7.  $\mathbb{E}f2$**  (**7.  $\mathbb{W}a4$   $\mathbb{W}b6!$  8.  $\mathbb{W}xa3$  (8.  $bxa3$   $\mathbb{W}d8!$  9.  $\mathbb{W}d4$  e5) 8...  $\mathbb{E}a8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{W}d4$ ) **7...axb2 8.  $\mathbb{Q}a2$   $\mathbb{W}d4$  9.  $\mathbb{E}fxb2$  d5**, Black had good drawing chances and even went on to win when White overextended. Speelman's intuition served him well in this tense game, guiding him to find the best practical chance in a difficult situation.**



CREATIVE FORCING MOVES play a special role in COMPLETELY LOST POSITIONS. Once a master determines that 'correct' play has no hope of saving the game, the only practical course is to try to trick the opponent tactically by any possible means. One of my most humiliating chess moments occurred in such a situation.

FCM 11.13  
Thomas Pähzt-Hertan  
Vienna 1996



Down two good pawns with no positional trumps or concrete threats, White's situation is pretty bleak. After the capture **1...  $\mathbb{Q}xb4$**  I half expected him to resign, since **2.  $\mathbb{W}xb4$   $\mathbb{W}xf4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}xe4+$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$**  is curtains. But he kept battling:

**2.  $\mathbb{W}g2!$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xb4$   $\mathbb{E}c2$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{E}xb2$**

I could have chosen the simple **4...  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$  7.  $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}f5$** , e.g. **8.  $\mathbb{W}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  9.  $b5$   $\mathbb{W}d5+$** .

**5.  $\mathbb{E}g6!$**

Objectively losing, yet the move deserves praise for giving White one last slim hope...

**5...  $\mathbb{E}e2$  6.  $\mathbb{W}h5$**

The only realistic hope in such positions is to get the opponent into severe time trouble, when even experienced masters may sometimes play beginner's moves!

## Forcing Chess Moves

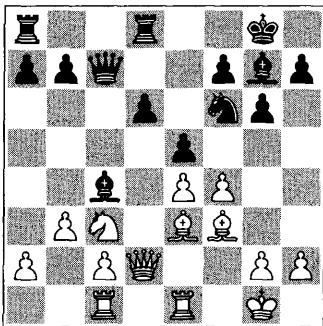
Whereas in the diagram position I had five minutes left against my opponent's one, I made the bad practical choice of allowing my clock to run all the way down with several moves remaining until the time control. Here 6... $\mathbb{W}xf4!$ , threatening 7... $\mathbb{W}h2\#$  wins easily, but I had a crazy hallucination: 7. $\mathbb{B}xg7+?$   $\mathbb{B}xg7$  8. $\mathbb{W}e8+??$   $\mathbb{W}f8??$  (I 'forgot' that my bishop could simply capture the queen!) 9. $\mathbb{B}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  10. $\mathbb{W}g6+.$  So alas, I uncorked a monstrous blunder:

6... $\mathbb{B}xe4??$  7. $\mathbb{B}xh6!$  Forcing checkmate! 1-0.

Eyewitness Bill Paschall commented that he had never seen anyone 'steal the game' in such a manner! Chess is a very stern, but fair teacher! It was my 'turn' to relearn the important lesson, that **in winning positions one must always be vigilant for surprise forcing moves and continue to work hard calculating variations**. On the other side, remember that miracles can happen when you earn the luck by continuing to use COMPUTER EYES, fight, and set every practical obstacle to the very end! In these situations, by all means be creative! Finding some crazy surprise is your only fighting chance.



As we noted earlier, there are many situations (not just 'hopeless' ones!) in which the logic of the position calls for taking an intuitive leap into unclear complications:



FCM 11.14  
**Rauzer-Botvinnik**  
Leningrad 1933



Given Botvinnik's penchant for deep analysis of complex positions, he probably examined many forcing lines before playing 1... $d5!$  Still, the move meets the demands of the position so perfectly, that there was undoubtedly an element of faith in this choice – after calculating the key lines several moves deep and liking what he saw, Black trusted that he would find his way in the ensuing complications.

**2.exd5**

Weaker are 2.fxe5 and 2.bxc4 in view of 2...dxe4.

**2...e4!**

The key EST justifying Black's idea.

**3.bxc4** (or 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$  4.bxc4  $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  5. $\mathbb{W}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4)$  3...**exf3** 4.c5!  $\mathbb{W}a5!$

Black has a strong initiative in return for the pawn. His pieces have come to life, and White's center is under pressure.

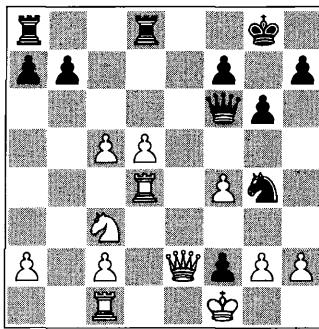
### 5. $\mathbb{E}ed1?$

Runs into a neat refutation. Best was 5.  $\mathbb{W}d3!$  b6! breaking up White's center with strong play.

5...  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  f2+! 7.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$  (or 7.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  f1 $\mathbb{W}+$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$   $\mathbb{W}xd2$ ) 7...  $\mathbb{W}a6+$  8.  $\mathbb{W}e2$

8.  $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  9.  $\mathbb{W}xa6$  allows the winning zwischenzugs 9...  $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  f1 $\mathbb{W}+$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  bxa6.

8...  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}f6!$

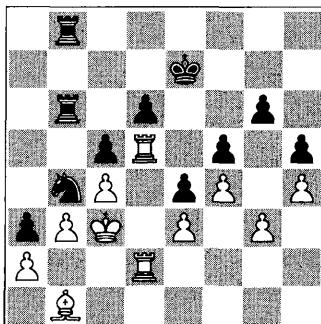


position after 9...  $\mathbb{W}f6$

Black has followed the intuitive demands of the position and played with great fighting spirit and creativity. His reward is now a winning direct attack against White's king.  
 10.  $\mathbb{Q}cd1$   $\mathbb{W}h4$  11.  $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  (12. h3  $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$ ) 12... f5 13.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}xf4$  0-1.

◆ ◆

FCM 11.15  
**Brzozka-Bronstein**  
 Miskolc 1963



## Forcing Chess Moves

Black was faced with a different kind of necessity in this position; how to avoid conceding a draw to a lesser-rated player, since after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$  2. $\mathbb{B}xd5$ , the position is completely blocked. The task looks impossible, but maybe not for one of the most creative players of all time:

**1... $\mathbb{R}a6!!$  2. $\mathbb{B}d1$**

The only move, since 2. $\mathbb{B}e2?$  allows 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$  3. $cxd5$  c4! 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{R}a5!$ , breaking the blockade and winning easily. But what is the point of Black's obscure first move?

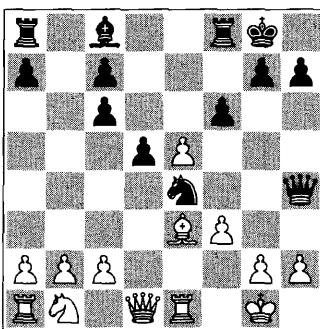
**2... $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$  3. $\mathbb{B}xd5$   $\mathbb{R}xb3+!!$**

This is it! 4.axb3 loses to 4...a2, but now White's pawns fall right and left. Of course, Black could not calculate every line out to the end. But he could easily deduce that the rook sacrifice was his only chance to play for a win, and probably analyzed out to move nine, when master intuition and endgame knowledge could show that the mobile mass of passed center pawns, with an active king and rook, must prevail.

**4. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$   $\mathbb{R}b6+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{B}b2+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{E}e2$  7. $\mathbb{B}d1$   $\mathbb{R}xe3$  8. $\mathbb{B}g1$   $\mathbb{B}c3+$  9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{R}xc4$  10. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  d5 11. $\mathbb{B}b1$  d4 12. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{B}c3$  13. $\mathbb{B}b3$  e3+ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{B}c1$  15. $\mathbb{B}xa3$  c4 16. $\mathbb{B}a7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  17. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{B}h1$  18. $\mathbb{B}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  19. $\mathbb{B}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  20.a3+  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  21. $\mathbb{B}b5$   $\mathbb{B}h2+$  22. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  d3 0-1.**



Intuition and creativity apply not only to the demands of the position or tournament situation, but also to the task of confounding the opponent, which is after all the ultimate goal of practical chess. While forcing moves are always vital to assessing the soundness of a sharp continuation, sometimes PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS such as time pressure, 'shock value', or knowing the opponent's strengths and weaknesses, also figure into the chess struggle. As with all intuitive leaps, a strong player must carefully weigh the risks of psychological 'gambits', versus the potential benefits.



FCM 11.16  
**Marshall-Emanuel Lasker**  
USA match 1907



**1...fxe5!?**

In *My Great Predecessors* (Part 1), Kasparov writes: '1... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  was more prudent, but Lasker makes a psychologically wise choice. It is doubtful whether the world cham-

pion calculated all the variations; he more probably sensed that the character of the positions (...) would be quite comfortable for him, and (unpleasant) for Marshall."

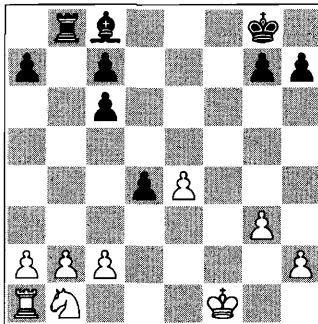
### **2.fxe4 d4 3.g3?!**

Kasparov gives 3.♗d2! dx3 4.♗xe3 ♘f6 5.♗d2 ♗g4 as slightly better for White; but not 3.♗d2? ♗g4 4.♗c1 ♘f2! 5.♗g5 (5.♗f1 ♘xg2+ 6.♔xg2 ♗h3+ and mate) 5...♘xg2+! 6.♔xg2 ♗h3+ 7.♔h1 ♘f2.

### **3...♗f6 4.♗xd4?!**

Quoting Kasparov, "Again what tells is Lasker's knowledge of human nature: Marshall does not want to "sit" under attack after 4.♗d2 ♘f2+ 5.♔h1 ♗h3 6.♗g1 ♗f1! (6...h5 7.♗a3! ♗g4 8.♗f1! (meeting 8...♗f3+? with 9.♗xf3!) Kasparov claims that White wins, but 8...♗xd1 9.♗xf2 ♘xf2 10.♗xd1 ♘e2 seems somewhat unclear – CH) 7.♗e1 ♘e3 8.♗d2 ♗e2 9.♗c1 ♗f3+ 10.♗xf3 ♘xf3+ 11.♗g2 ♘f1+=", with a draw by perpetual.

**4...exd4 5.♗f1 ♘xf1+! 6.♗xf1 ♘xf1+ 7.♔xf1 ♘b8!**



position after 7...♞b8

Black now makes the most of his lingering initiative.

**8.b3 ♘b5! 9.c4 (9.♗d2! ♘c5!) 9...♞h5! 10.♗g1 (10.h4 g5!) 10...c5 11.♗d2 ♗f7 12.♗f1+?**

The decisive mistake according to Kasparov, who gives 12.a3! a5 13.♗b1 ♗e7 14.b4 cxb4 15.axb4 axb4 16.♗xb4 ♘a5 17.♗b3 and if 17...♞a2? (17...♞a8), 18.♗b8 ♗h3 19.♗xd4 drawing.

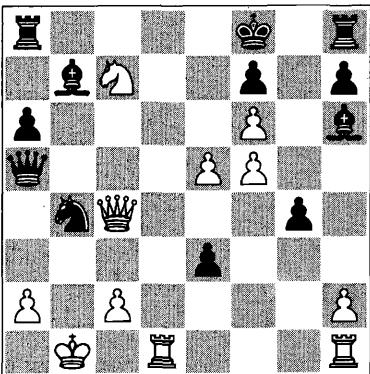
**12...♗e7 13.a3 ♘h6 14.h4 ♘a6 15.♗a1 ♗g4 16.♗f2 ♗e6 17.a4 ♗e5 0-1.**

Lasker's intuition served him well, as he knew that Marshall loved to play with the initiative. He took the small calculated risk of playing a difficult sacrifice, and then succeeded in setting Marshall very difficult problems by meeting his less-than-perfect defense with a series of strong forcing moves. It is with good reason that Lasker is considered one of the toughest, and psychologically most astute, players of all time.

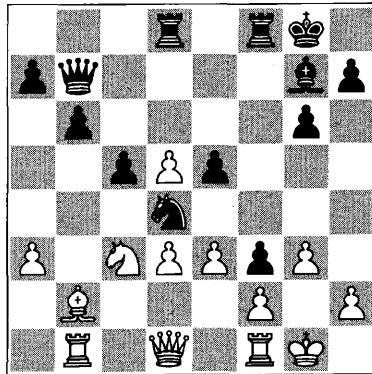


## Chapter 12 - Various Exercises

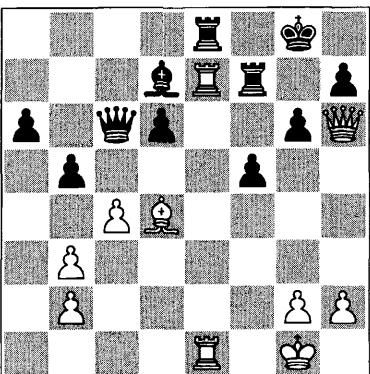
A final mixed test of your newfound COMPUTER EYES. Remember to always challenge your human bias, work hard on brute force analysis, and consider the most forcing moves first. Above all, remember to enjoy the beauty of chess!



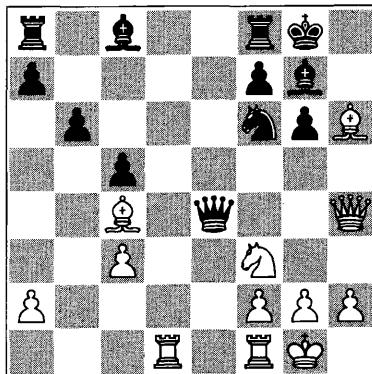
Ex 12.1 □ A forcing move



Ex 12.2 ■ Should the knight retreat?

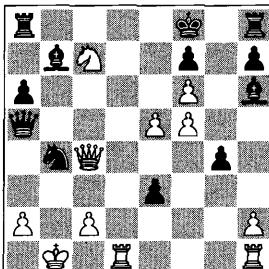


Ex 12.3 □ Find the soft spot



Ex 12.4 □ Look twice!

## Forcing Chess Moves

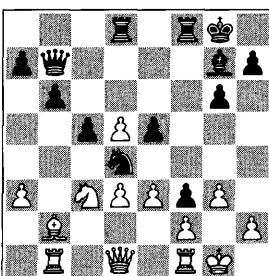


### Ex 12.1 Gallagher-Shneider (modified)

Bern 1995

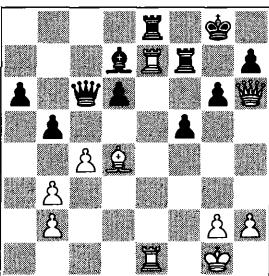
With so much extra wood at Black's disposal, 1.  $\mathbb{B}d7?$  is easily rebuffed by 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$ , but COMPUTER EYES zero in at once on a MORE FORCING SURPRISE MOVE:

1.  $\mathbb{W}xf7+!! \mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}d7+ \mathbb{Q}f8$  Another lovely mate is 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. f7+  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  Or 3...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. f7#. 4.  $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ .



### Ex 12.2 Loginov-Alexeev St Petersburg 2001

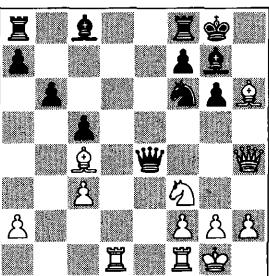
The critical moment is at hand. White proposes to boot the powerful knight with a playable position, while Black counters with the EST 1...  $\mathbb{W}d7!$  Flipping the move order with 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e2+?!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{W}d7?$  flops to 3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ . Now the stock threat ...  $\mathbb{W}h3$  forces the unfortunate 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}e2!$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $fxe2$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{W}xd5+$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}xd3$ , with positional and material dominance. 0-1.



### Ex 12.3 Hecht-Gerusel Wijk aan Zee II 1972

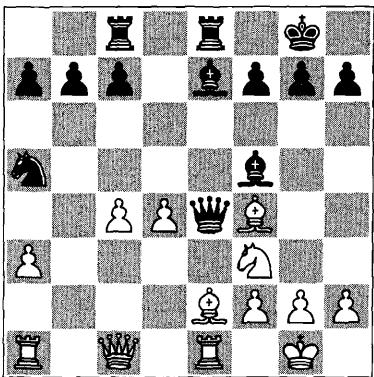
White unleashes a memorable haymaker to exploit the stock power of the bishop on the a1-h8 diagonal:

1.  $\mathbb{B}1e6!!$  mating in every line: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ ; 1...  $\mathbb{B}xe6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xg6+!$   $hxg6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ ; or 1...  $\mathbb{B}fxe7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xg6+ hgx6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ . You get extra praise for the alternative solution 1.  $\mathbb{B}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  2.  $\mathbb{B}e6!$ , which is rather less spectacular but even more forcing!

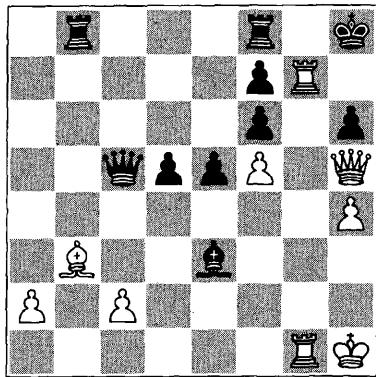


### Ex 12.4 Shabalov-Yandemirov Moscow 2003

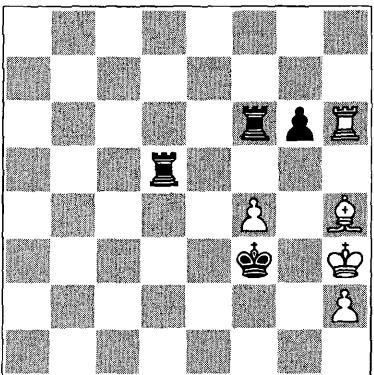
After 1.  $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$ , Shabalov probably didn't trust the piece sac 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  6.  $\mathbb{B}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ . With fantastic BOARD SIGHT and CREATIVITY, he found the zwischenzug 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!! \mathbb{B}xf7$  The first point is 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ . 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  On 2...  $\mathbb{B}f8$  comes the far-from-obvious brute force win 3.  $\mathbb{B}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf6!$  and on 4...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e1!$  wins the queen. Black should play 4...  $\mathbb{Q}b7$ , remaining a pawn down. 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$   $\mathbb{W}xh4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d6+!! \mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  with a healthy extra pawn. 1-0.



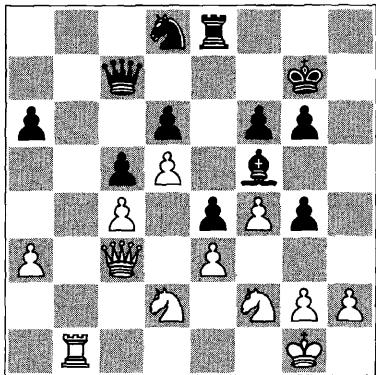
Ex 12.5 □ Cut off the 'retreat'



Ex 12.6 □ Everything protected?

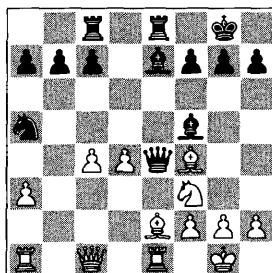


Ex 12.7 ■ Exploit White's lack of space

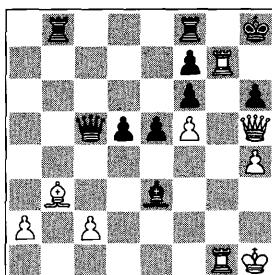


Ex 12.8 □ Find the soft spot

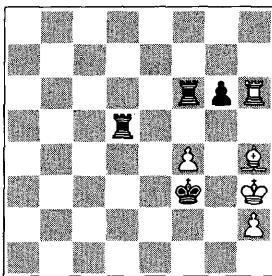
## Forcing Chess Moves



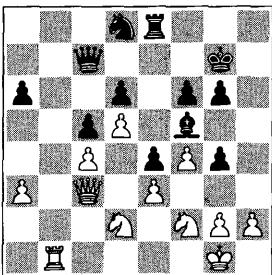
Ex 12.5 **Adams-Anand (variation)** Sofia 2005  
The accurate forcing retreat **1.♕d1!** enables White to achieve the fork threat ♜e5 without allowing ...♝b3 or ...♝c2. **1...♝d3** **1...♝c6** **2.♜e5**. **2.♜e3!** **♝xc4** **3.♜e5** **♝xc1** **4.♞xc1!** **1-0** Another forcing retreat ensures the snug acquisition of a whole piece, so Black gives up.



Ex 12.6 **Papaioannou-Kveinis** Plovdiv 2003  
White unexpectedly delivers a stock mate on g7 after **1.♝1g5!** **♝xg5** **2.hxg5** **♝xg7** **3.♜xh6+** **♚g8** **4.gxf6** **1-0**.

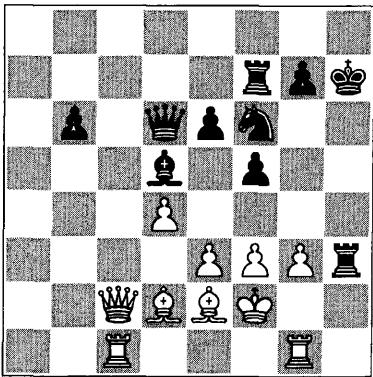


Ex 12.7 **Van der Wiel-Van Wely** Brussels 1993  
White's fortress seems like a tough nut to crack, but the stunning **1...g5!!** resolves the issue by tactical means: **2.fxg5** It's mate on **2.♜xf6** **g4#** or **2.♝xg5** **♜xh6+** **3.♝xh6** **♜h5#**. **2...♜xh6** **3.gxh6** **♜h5** **4.h7** **♚f4!** Removing the stalemate threat and winning by ZUGZWANG. **0-1**.

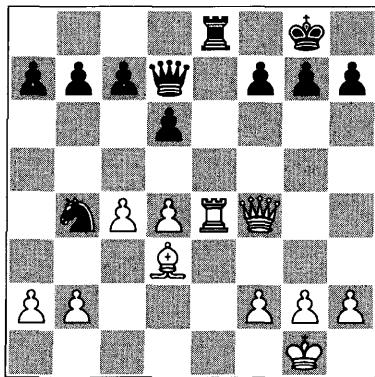


Ex 12.8 **Frey Beckman-Liu Wenzhe**  
Lucerne 1982

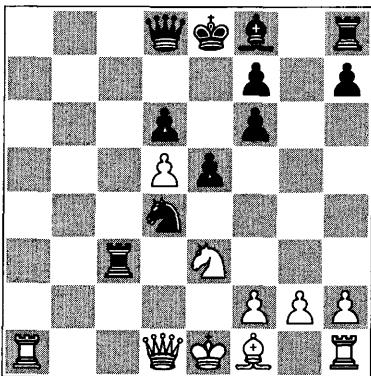
The e4 pawn proves to be the lynchpin of Black's position after the quiet forcing shot **1.h3! gxh3** Or **1...g3** **2.♝h1!** winning a crucial pawn. **2.g4!** **♛d7** A futile attempt to muddy the waters, since White gains material, and a huge positional pull, on **2...♝c8** **3.♝dxe4** **♝e7** **4.g5.** **3.gxf5** **♛xf5** **4.♝h2** **1-0**. White repels the attack and keeps an extra piece.



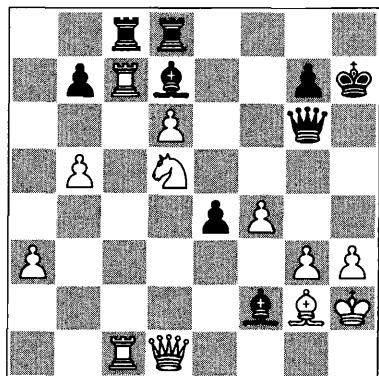
Ex 12.9 ■ Blow White's cover



Ex 12.10 □ A heavy burden

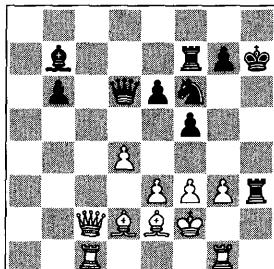


Ex 12.11 □ Force  
the breakthrough



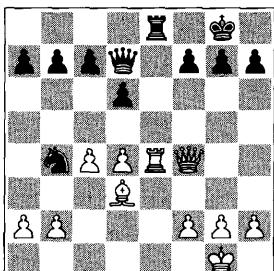
Ex 12.12 □ How to  
defend g3?

## Forcing Chess Moves



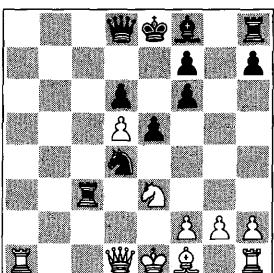
### Ex 12.9 Portisch-Hübner Bugojno 1978

The evidently solid pawn cover buffering the white king is blown to smithereens by the tour-de-brute-force 1... $\mathbb{Q}e4+!!$  2. $fxe4$   $fxe4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}xg3+!$  A beautiful double-rook mate ensues after 4. $\mathbb{R}xg3$   $\mathbb{E}h1+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{E}hxg1+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{E}7f2\#.$



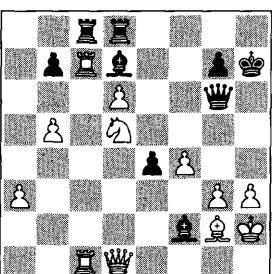
### Ex 12.10 Nunn-Plaskett London 1986

A melange of beautiful stock themes is unleashed by the impressive EST 1. $\mathbb{W}f5!$  A back-rank diversion theme forces a battery on the b1-h7 diagonal. 1... $\mathbb{W}d8$  Allows a tremendous refutation, but on 1... $\mathbb{Q}a4$  2.b3!  $\mathbb{E}xe4$  (2... $g6$  3. $bxa4$ ) 3. $bxa4$   $\mathbb{E}e1+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  wins. 2. $\mathbb{E}e7!!$  The double mate threat on h7/f7 culminates in the stock self-blocking mate 2... $\mathbb{W}xe7$  3. $\mathbb{W}xh7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}h8\#.$



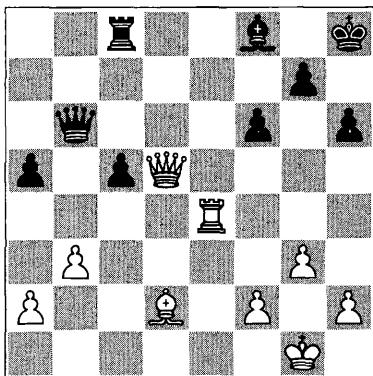
### Ex 12.11 Small-Morgan Philadelphia 1992

With Black precariously underdeveloped, COMPUTER EYES were hungry for the surprise forcing sequence 1. $\mathbb{W}xd4!!$   $exd4$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  2... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#.$  3. $\mathbb{E}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f5+!!$   $\mathbb{W}xf5$  5. $\mathbb{E}e8\#.$

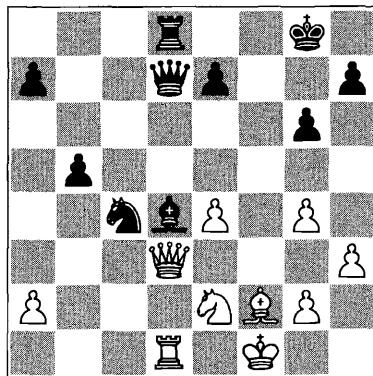


### Ex 12.12 Lautier-Bu Xiangzhi Taiyuan 2004

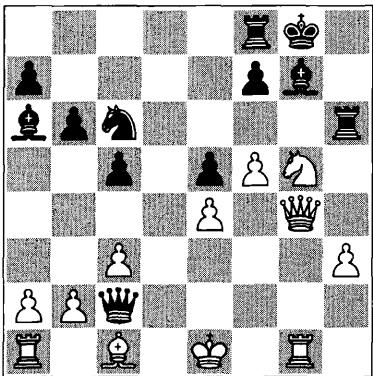
White has such faith in the power of his EST that he even FORCES Black to execute his threat: 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$   $\mathbb{W}xg3+$  There is not enough play in 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg3+$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4. $\mathbb{E}xd7+-.$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}h4$  3. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  was threatened, and on 3... $g6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  the d7 bishop is pinned by the  $\mathbb{E}c7$ . 3. $\mathbb{E}xd7!!$  The point! The threat ... $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  is defused, and now White can score big with a forced series of ZWISCHENZUGS: 3... $\mathbb{E}xc1$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe4+!!$   $g6$  4... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xh4+.$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  6. $\mathbb{E}h7+!. 1-0.$



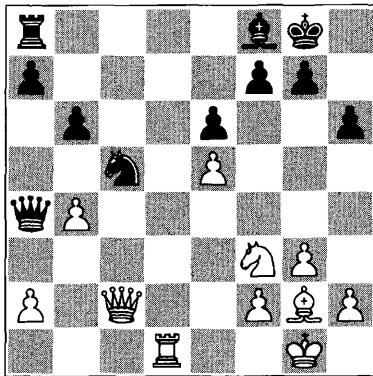
Ex 12.13 □ Blow Black's cover



Ex 12.14 ■ Lift the pin

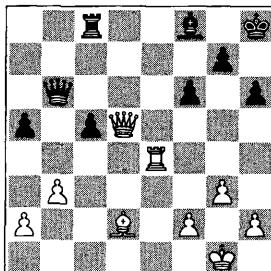


Ex 12.15 ■ Who comes first?



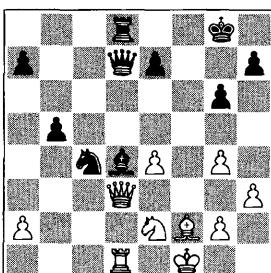
Ex 12.16 □ Defend or attack?

## Forcing Chess Moves



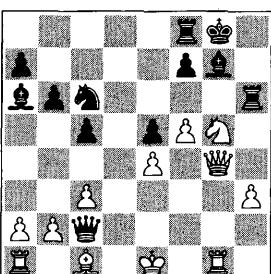
### Ex 12.13 Milos-Zarnicki Santos 2004

An interesting stock sac on h6 decides this simplified ending after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$   $\mathbb{g}xh6$  The zwischenzug 1... $\mathbb{H}d8$  jumps from the frying pan into the fire: 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  (2... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3. $\mathbb{W}h5+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{W}e7$ ) 3. $\mathbb{H}g4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  4. $\mathbb{W}f5!$  and mate. 2... $\mathbb{H}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  Not 2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  3. $\mathbb{W}f7$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  4. $\mathbb{W}xf6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  5. $\mathbb{W}g6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6. $\mathbb{W}xh6+$   $\mathbb{W}h7$  7. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ . 3. $\mathbb{H}xg7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4. $\mathbb{W}d7+$  1-0.



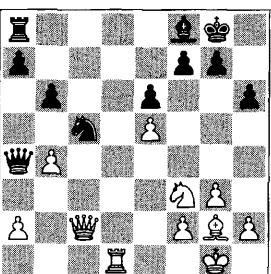
### Ex 12.14 Korzov-Blekhtsin Leningrad 1956

White's hopes were dashed by the IN-BETWEEN CHECKS 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$  2. $\mathbb{W}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}e3+!$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1+!$  0-1.



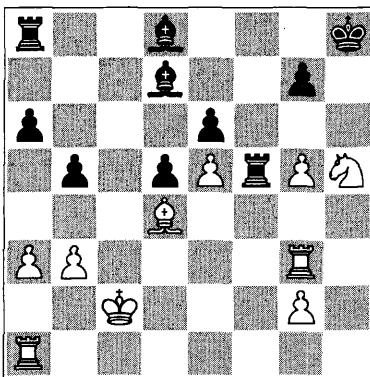
### Ex 12.15 Reinderman-Luther Venlo 2000

Black does not accept the apparent dominance of White's attack, but calculates the difficult counterattacking forcing sequence 1... $\mathbb{H}h4!$  A crucial blow forcing the white queen to accept a more humble post, to guard e2. 2. $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{H}d8!$  3. $\mathbb{f}6$  No time for half-measures, down a piece with ... $\mathbb{H}d3$  coming. 3... $\mathbb{H}d3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{H}f4!$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$  White's play is ingenious, but Black replies correctly: he sees through the threats without backing down. 5... $\mathbb{H}xf3$  Probably only Fritz would chance the merits of 5... $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$  6. $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  7. $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$ , 6. $\mathbb{H}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ , or 6. $\mathbb{fxg7}$   $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ , but Black's way also wins. 6... $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  Not 6... $\mathbb{Q}h7??$  7. $\mathbb{H}xg7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f7#!$  7. $\mathbb{fxg7+}$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8. $\mathbb{g}8\mathbb{W}$   $\mathbb{H}dx3#$ .

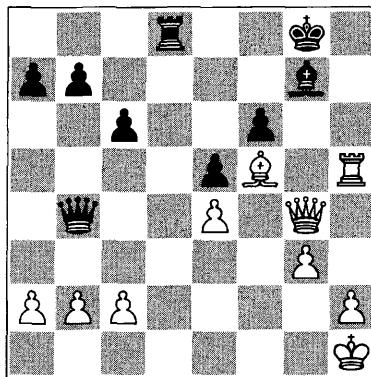


### Ex 12.16 Kortchnoi-Gipslis Tallinn 1967

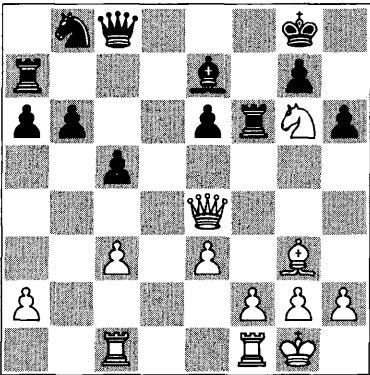
Black had prepared the clever antidote 1. $\mathbb{Q}d4?$   $\mathbb{H}d8!$  2. $\mathbb{bx}c5$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$ , but human bias blinded him to the strongest attacking move, the forcing retreat 1. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$  1-0.



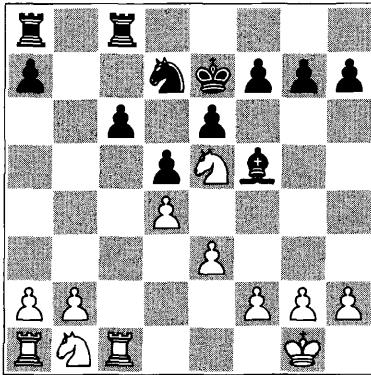
Ex 12.17  Find  
the mating pattern



Ex 12.18  Find the mate

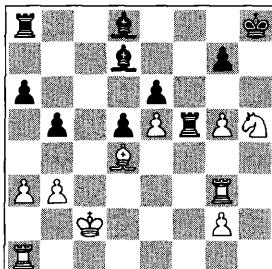


Ex 12.19  Trap  
some material

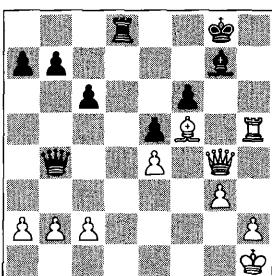


Ex 12.20  Find the soft spot

## Forcing Chess Moves

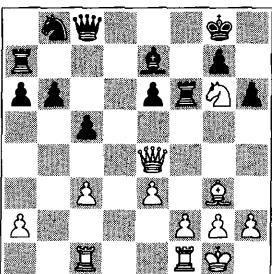


Ex 12.17 **Van der Wiel-Visser** Leeuwarden 2004  
White transformed the battle with the endgame mating idea 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6!! \mathbb{Q}c8+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}xf6$  2...  $gxf6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $gxf6$ +  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ . 3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $gxf6$   $g5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}gh3$  1-0 Incredibly, it's mate after 5...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ , or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ , threatening 7.  $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ .

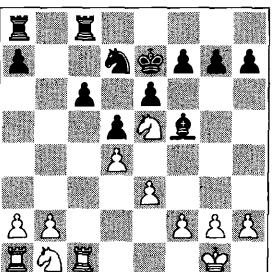


Ex 12.18 **Arshak Petrosian-Moldagaliev**  
Yerevan 1969

Another fine stock sac on h8 hits the mark: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ .

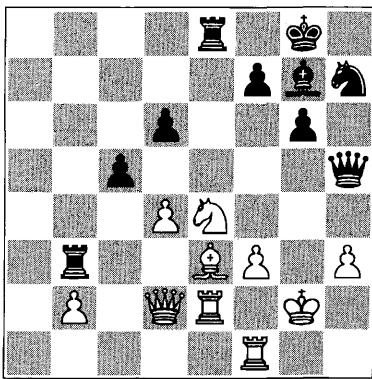


Ex 12.19 **Panczyk-Schurade** Zakopane 1978  
The stock fork trick 1.  $\mathbb{Q}a8!!$  snares the exchange and then some, 1-0.

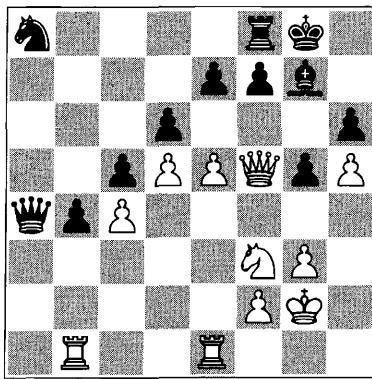


Ex 12.20 **Benjamin-Christiansen**  
Chandler 1997

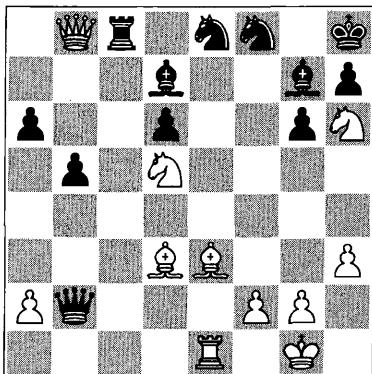
The quiet creeper 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}a3!$  won pawn and game (2...  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ ) 1-0.



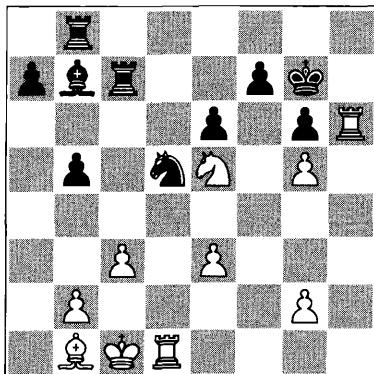
Ex 12.21 ■ Break up  
White's fortress



Ex 12.22 □ Find the mate

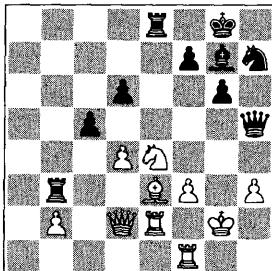


Ex 12.23 □ Find the EST



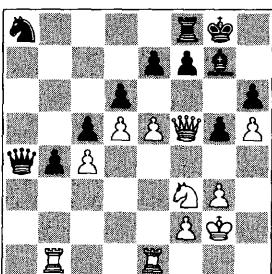
Ex 12.24 □ Find the mate

## Forcing Chess Moves



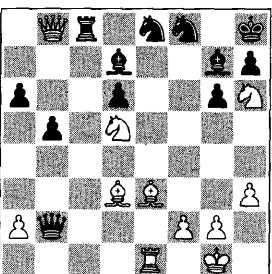
### Ex 12.21 Fridman-Nataf Istanbul 2003

COMPUTER EYES drew a laser path through the thicket of variations and scored a fine brute force attacking win: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  2. $fxe4$   $\mathbb{Q}g5!$  3. $\mathbb{W}c2$  Everything loses, i.e. 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{W}xh3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$  (4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}g3\#$ ) 4... $\mathbb{H}g3+$  5. $\mathbb{H}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$  forcing mate; 3. $\mathbb{H}h1$   $\mathbb{W}f3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$  (4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  5. $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ ) 4... $\mathbb{W}xh3+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}f3+$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}xh1$ . 3... $\mathbb{W}xh3+$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{W}h2+$  0-1.



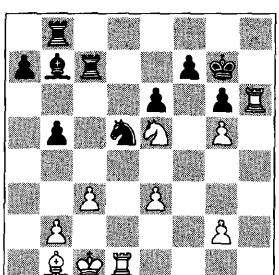
### Ex 12.22 Lputian-Gagunashvili Tripoli 2004

With Black's defenders far afield, the time is right for a stock h-file attack: 1. $\mathbb{Q}xg5!$   $hxg5$  2. $h6$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  Other duds: 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$   $dxe5$  4. $\mathbb{W}xg5+$ , and 2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $h7+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{W}xg5+$ . 3. $\mathbb{H}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ . 4. $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  5. $\mathbb{H}h1+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ .



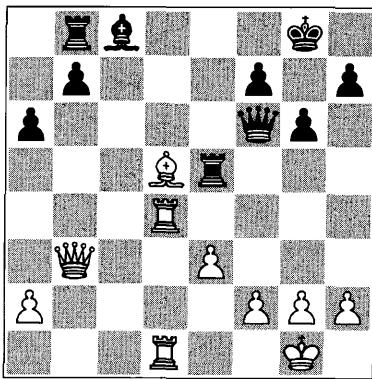
### Ex 12.23 Bartel-Urban Warsaw 2003

When the queen is *en prise*, what do COMPUTER EYES examine first? Naturally, equal or stronger threats such as 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  Threatening 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ . 1... $\mathbb{Q}xb8$  or 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$   $\mathbb{W}c3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{W}xd3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xh6+-$ . 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ .

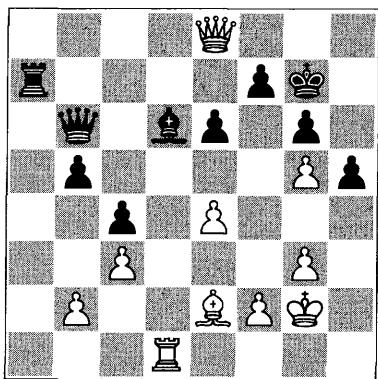


### Ex 12.24 Fritz-Adams Frankfurt 1999

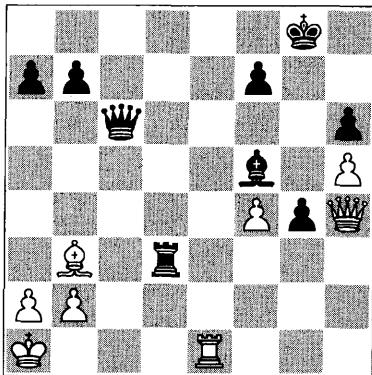
A decisive moment in the history of actual COMPUTER EYES was this dazzling combination by Fritz: 1. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!!$   $fxg6$  Or 1... $\mathbb{H}h8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}dh1!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f1!!$  It was this superb quiet forcing move, with the idea 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4. $\mathbb{H}h1+$   $\mathbb{H}h7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ , which really impressed the humans! 2... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}hh7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  A second quiet forcing retreat leads to mate on h6 or f6. 1-0. I'm guessing that he examined the MOST FORCING MOVES first!



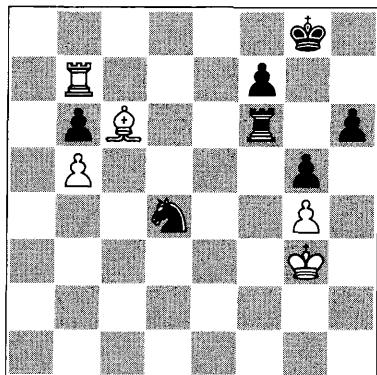
Ex 12.25 □ Lines and diagonals



Ex 12.26 ■ Attack or defend?

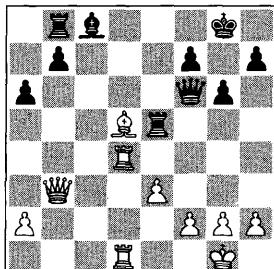


Ex 12.27 ■ Calculate to the end

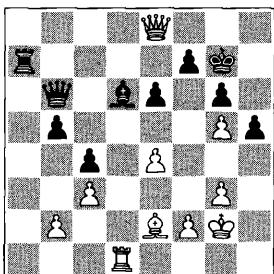


Ex 12.28 ■ Is the b-pawn doomed?

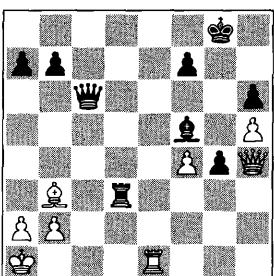
## Forcing Chess Moves



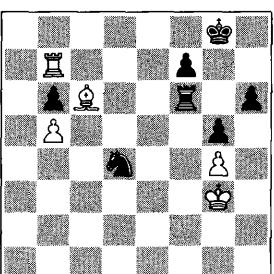
**Ex 12.25 Yudovich-Chekhover Leningrad 1934**  
White's impressive build-up culminates in the stock f7 sacrifice **1.♕xf7+! ♕xf7 2.♖d8+ ♔g7 3.♔c3! ♖f6**  
**3...♔f6 4.f4. 4.♖c7+ 1-0.**



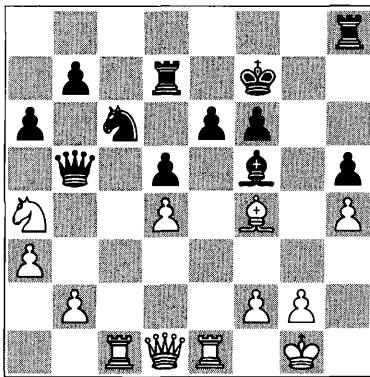
**Ex 12.26 Yusupov-Kasparov Riga 1995**  
The prescient forcing retreat **1...♔e7!** initiates White into a world of troubles. In the main line **2.f4 ♖e3! 3.♔f3 b4** (not **3...♗c5 4.♖d8!**), Black's initiative becomes too strong, aided by the familiar theme of opposite colored bishops favoring the attacker. So White tries to conjure up some active play with **2.♖h1**, clearly intending to meet **2...♗xg5** with the speculative **3.♔xh5?!**, but the more Black moves backwards, the stronger his threats become: **2...♗b7! 3.♔f3 ♖a8! 0-1.**



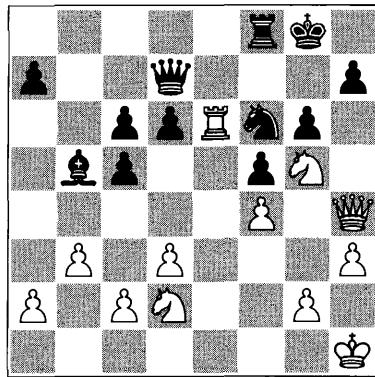
**Ex 12.27 Inarkiev-Kharlov Sochi 2004**  
Well-executed endgame mating themes figure in the decisive combination **1...♖xb3!** The stock corridor mate **2.axb3 ♖a6+** was routine, but COMPUTER EYES came into play in anticipating and refuting the forced defensive try **2.♖d8+ ♔h7** Or also **2...♗g7 3.♖d4+ ♖f6! 4.♖xf6+ ♖xf6 5.axb3 ♖e6** and bishop and pawns are stronger than White's rook! **3.♔e7!** With the twin ideas of **♖xf7+** or defending the a-file corridor with the interpolation **♖a3**, but Black has it all covered with **3...♖d5! 4.axb3 ♖a5+ 5.♖a3 ♖xe1+ 0-1.**



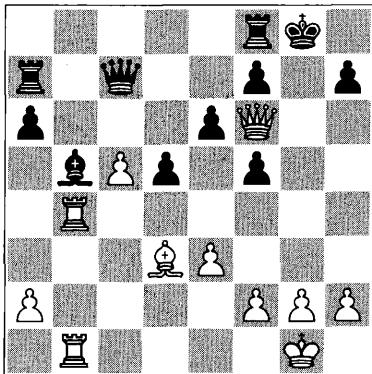
**Ex 12.28 Komarov-Shumilin Moscow 1939**  
White's counterplay is much too troublesome after **1...♗xc6?** **2.♖xb6!**, e.g. **2...♗f8 3.bxc6 ♔e7?? 4.c7!**. Only the quiet forcing move **1...♔g7!** wins convincingly, by denying the white rook a saving check to escape the pin after **2.♖xb6 ♗xb5! 0-1.**



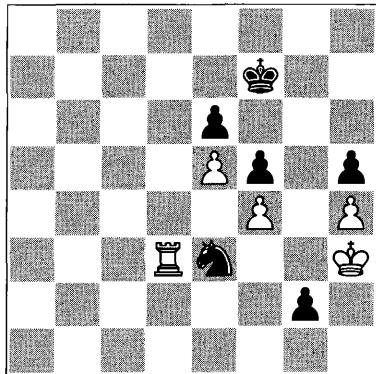
Ex 12.29  Win material by force



Ex 12.30  Force a winning endgame

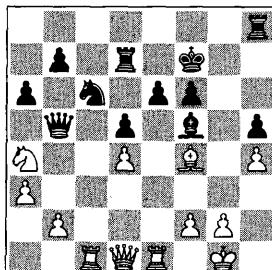


Ex 12.31  Time to retreat or to exchange?



Ex 12.32  A clever defense?

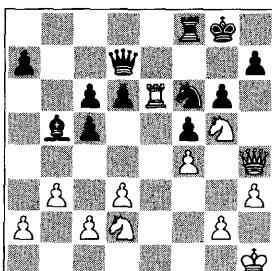
## Forcing Chess Moves



### Ex 12.29 Alexander Ivanov-Hertan

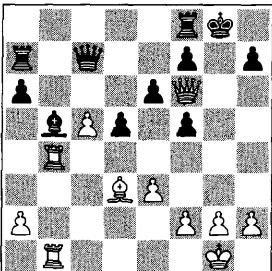
Newburgh 1997

White parleys his initiative into an elegant brute force win of material with 1.  $\mathbb{H}c5!$   $\mathbb{W}d3$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  3.  $\mathbb{H}xc6!$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  The last trick, since White's powerful two pieces and Black's weaknesses will eventually tell on 3... $bxc6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$ . 4.  $\mathbb{H}cxe6$   $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  5.  $\mathbb{H}xf6+!$  1-0 Gaining a decisive second  $\Delta$  after 5... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ .



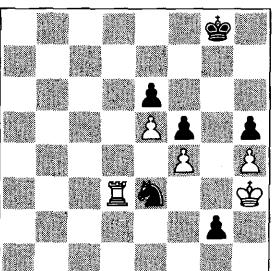
### Ex 12.30 Antonio-Ghorbani Calcutta 2001

A stock h7 blow powers through: 1.  $\mathbb{H}xf6!$   $\mathbb{H}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$   $\mathbb{H}e6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{H}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  1-0.



### Ex 12.31 Hort-Portisch Madrid 1973

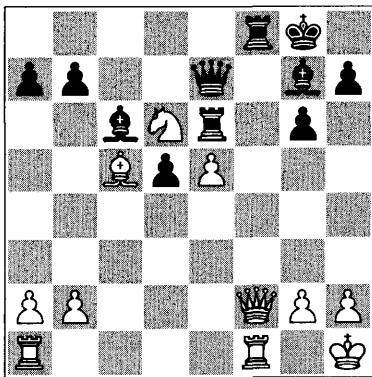
The surprise move 1.  $\mathbb{H}g4+!$   $\mathbb{fxg}4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h6$  leads to the vicious stock theme of twin h7-f8 mating threats. 1-0.



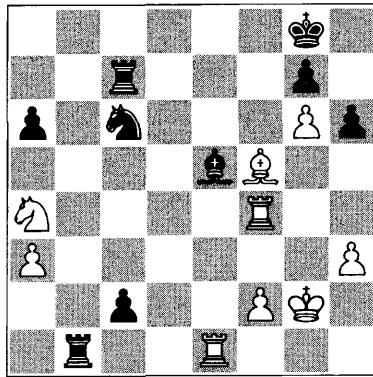
### Ex 12.32 Chan Peng Kong-Depasquale

Laoag 1985

White has readied the brilliant stalemate defense 1... $g1\mathbb{W}$  2.  $\mathbb{H}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{H}g7+!$ ; neither will 1... $g1\mathbb{H}$  2.  $\mathbb{H}xe3$  or 1... $g1\mathbb{Q}+?$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}f3+$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$  produce the desired result. But Black did not overlook the other possibility, 1... $g1\mathbb{Q}!!$  Producing a fresh dark-squared bishop to gobble up White's pawns after 2.  $\mathbb{H}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{H}h7$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  0-1.

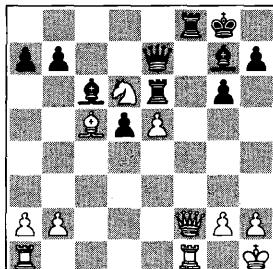


Ex 12.33 □ Find the EST

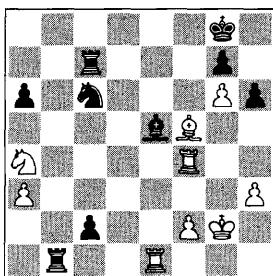


Ex 12.34 ■ Tricked into  
mate?

## Forcing Chess Moves



Ex 12.33 **Hertan-Kopec** Massachusetts 1996  
Black fell on his sword with the tempting ... $\mathbb{R}f8$ , succumbing to the zwischenzug **1.  $\mathbb{Q}c8!$   $\mathbb{R}xf2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$**  winning the exchange **1-0**.



Ex 12.34 **Nikolic-Shirov** Horgen 1994  
Black was stunned by the tricky **1.  $\mathbb{R}f4$**  when both rooks seem taboo due to **2.  $\mathbb{R}e6+$  or  $2. \mathbb{R}e8+$** ; but he focused his COMPUTER EYES in time to find the beautiful defensive forcing move **1...  $\mathbb{R}xe1!$  2.  $\mathbb{R}e6+$   $\mathbb{R}f7!!$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$**  Black also escapes and wins on **3.  $\mathbb{R}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}d8!$  or  $3. \mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b3+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ . 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c5!$**  White wants to make a queen with **5.  $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ , 4...  $\mathbb{Q}b8!$**  One more accurate forcing defensive retreat finishes him off; not **4...  $\mathbb{Q}d1?$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  c1 $\mathbb{Q}$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xb8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xb8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8.  $f8\mathbb{Q}+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  0-1.**

## Afterthought

Fifteen years ago, I noticed that all of my students, from beginners up to 2100 rated players, had a critical flaw in their calculation process. Most of them had already mastered the information taught in standard tactics books about pins, forks, skewers and other tactical devices, yet they continued to miss critical forcing moves in nearly every one of their games!

Over a series of lessons, I tried to program into their brains a new approach to analyzing positions, beginning with the question: 'OK, what are the most forcing options in this position?' Pretty quickly, I began to see encouraging results; a 1400 player would suddenly find a crisp 2-3 move forcing sequence and defeat a much stronger player.

I decided then on the concept of writing a different kind of tactics book, which focused on the MENTAL PROCESS involved in correct analysis. A few others had written important books on this subject, such as Kotov's classic *Think Like a Grandmaster*; but that book was in many respects too advanced for my students. I wanted my book to break down the calculations to a level accessible to everyone (with a little hard work), and to focus sharp attention on the task of analyzing forcing moves. I had a lot of fun collecting beautiful master combinations over the years, and amassed a fairly large library for my research.

Over time, I began to think about the different types of forcing moves which were hardest to find, and why some were harder than others. I noticed how often my students would describe a certain move with a negative label ('it's too passive', 'it ruins my pawn structure') before they had even analyzed it! I enjoyed correcting their prejudices: 'It may ruin your pawn structure, but it also wins by force!'. I realized that a computer never refuses to calculate a forcing move 'because it ruins my pawn structure!'; it calculates first, then draws conclusions. As I thought more about this idea, I hatched the concept of 'computer eyes' as a tool for overcoming human bias.

As I prepare to let this 'baby' enter the world, I find that I have developed a habit that is difficult to break after 15 years: the habit of collecting beautiful forcing moves from master games! Sometime during this process, I realized that I was writing not only for students and lovers of the beauty of chess; I was also completing my own education!

I had read many books during my own development as a player, but it turns out that there was a wealth of stock forcing moves that I had never fully absorbed. The legendary Soviet School of Chess, which completely dominated the chess world for decades and continues to be the strongest influence, considered stock master combi-

## **Forcing Chess Moves**

nations as part of the ‘ABC’s’ of chess. Students would be shown hundreds, thousands of forcing moves from master games, and critical endings, before they ever picked up an opening book. These lessons would be gathered into tactics manuals, but most of them were rather dry; just hundreds of diagrams, and perhaps only the first “key” move given as the answer. Such Soviet School books were ideal for working with a trainer, who could give the student a few exercises as “homework” and help him fill in all the details during the next lesson. Since every promising student was given a trainer, there was no need for tactics books that spelled out every analytical detail more clearly, or gave more wordy or interesting explanations: the teacher would take care of all that.

So, in the first two chapters of this book, I offered the reader a chance to begin your ‘Soviet School’ training. We have covered a wide variety of crucial stock forcing moves, and I have tried to take the place of your ‘trainer’ by explaining each position in depth and helping you work out all the variations.

In the subsequent chapters, we took an indepth look at human bias, and helped you understand the types of forcing moves which humans tend to miss, and how to remedy this problem in your own games with the use of COMPUTER EYES. Finally, in the chapter on Intuition and Creativity, we took a step beyond concrete analysis of forcing moves, and looked at some of the practical, psychological, and analytical tools which help masters create enduring works of chess artistry.

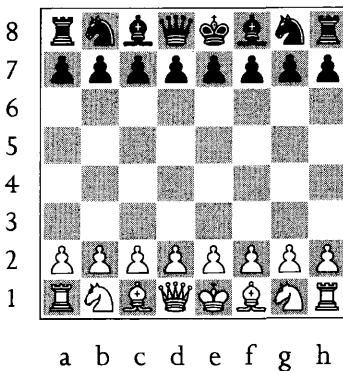
**In the end, I think I wrote the book which I needed to read at the beginning of my career;** a thorough coverage of the concept of forcing moves, which grounds the reader in stock master combinations and gives you the tools to start finding more FORCING CHESS MOVES in your own games. I hope that I have enhanced your appreciation for the incredible beauty and variety of forcing moves, and started you on a lifelong ‘education’ of your own, taking a special interest in looking for, and thoroughly understanding, as many master combinations as you can find. You can do it just for pleasure, but I have no doubt that it will also make you a much stronger player.

*Charles Hertan  
January 2008*

# Explanation of Symbols

- White to move
- Black to move
- # Checkmate
- ♔ King
- ♕ Queen
- ♖ Rook
- ♗ Bishop
- ♘ Knight
- ♙ Pawn

The chess board with its coordinates:



# Glossary of Terms

The symbol \* signifies an item which can be found elsewhere in this glossary.

## **Antipositional move**

Move which destroys its own pawn structure or traps its own pieces and therefore often looks 'ugly'.

## **Attack**

When a \*piece is threatened by \*capture or a king is threatened by \*checkmate.

## **Back rank**

The first \*rank (for White) or the eighth rank (for Black) on the board.

## **Battery**

When a piece on a line or \*file, \*rank or \*diagonal is standing before a piece of the same colour that commands that file, rank or diagonal. As soon as the former is removed, a threat is created by the latter.

## **Block/blockade**

When a \*piece occupies the \*square before an enemy piece or pawn, preventing the latter from moving in the desired direction.

## **Bolthole**

When a pawn is moved forward to create an escape possibility for its own king (see also \*Luft).

## **Blitz game**

Quick game in which each player gets five minutes (or less) for all his moves.

## **Board sight**

A clear, objective view of the entire board.

## **Bread-and-butter tactic**

Short combination forcing material gain.

## **Brute force (calculation)**

Accurate calculation of a series of \*forcing moves, like a computer.

## **Capture**

When a \*piece is removed by an enemy piece, which then takes the place of the captured piece.

## **Castling**

A move by king and rook that serves to bring the former into safety and to activate the latter. The king is moved sideways two \*squares from its original square.

At the same time, a rook moves from its original square to the adjacent square on the other side of the king.

Castling can take place either to the \*queenside or to the \*kingside. It is the only way in chess of moving two \*pieces in one turn. A player may only castle if both the king and rook in question have not moved before in the game, if his king is not in \*check, and if his king does not pass a square on which it would be in check.

## **Check**

When a king is under direct \*attack by an opposing \*piece. A check can be countered either by moving the king, or \*capturing the piece that gives the check, or by placing a piece between the king and the piece that gives check.

## **Checkmate**

When a king is under direct \*attack by an opposing \*piece and there is no way to deal with the threat.

## **Clearance**

When a \*square, \*rank, \*file or \*diagonal is vacated in such a way that another \*piece can occupy it.

## **Combination**

A clever and more or less forced sequence of moves which usually results in an advantage for the player who starts the sequence.

## **Computer eyes**

Chess vision combining two skills: \*brute force calculation and objectivity.

## **Corridor mate**

When a king is in check and cannot escape from its file; 'a \*back rank mate turned sideways'.

## **Cover**

When a \*piece or a \*square is \*protected from \*attacks; as soon as an enemy piece \*captures the covered piece or occupies the covered square, it is (re)captured by the covering piece.

Also: \*guard, \*protect.

## **Decoy**

When a \*piece is lured (e.g. by a sacrifice) towards a \*square on which it can be attacked or, in the case of a king, \*checked and/or \*mated.

## **Deflection/Diversion**

When a \*piece is lured away from an important \*square, \*file, \*rank or \*diagonal.

## **Diagonal**

A line of \*squares running from top left to bottom right or the other way round (e.g. 'the a1-h8 diagonal', 'the light-squared diagonal').

## **Discovered attack/check**

When a \*piece is removed in such a way that a piece of the same colour standing behind it, \*attacks an enemy piece or, in case of discovered check, gives check to the enemy king. See also \*Battery.

## **Diversion sacrifice**

Sacrifice that draws off a key defender by force, for example on the \*back rank.

## **Double attack**

When one \*piece is \*attacked by two enemy pieces at the same time, or when one piece attacks two enemy pieces at the same time (for the latter, see also \*fork).

## **Double check**

When a king is \*attacked by two enemy \*pieces at the same time (by means of a \*discovered check). A double check can only be countered by a king move.

### **Doubled (tripled) pawns**

Two (three) pawns of one colour on the same file.

### **Endgame/Ending**

The final phase of the game when few \*pieces are left on the board.

### **En passant**

When a pawn which has just moved forward two \*squares from its original square, is \*captured by an enemy pawn standing immediately beside it. This capturing pawn then occupies the square behind the captured pawn.

### **En prise**

When a \*piece is under \*attack and threatened with \*capture.

### **Equal or Stronger Threat (EST)**

Counter-threat that at least outbalances the threat a player is facing himself.

### **Exchange**

- 1) When both sides \*capture \*pieces that are of equal value. A synonym is 'trading' or 'swapping' pieces.
- 2) The surplus in value of a rook above a \*minor piece (bishop or knight). The player who possesses the rook is 'an exchange up', he has 'won the exchange'.

### **Exposed king**

King unprotected by its own \*pieces and, especially, its own pawns.

### **Fianchetto**

Development of a bishop to the second \*square of the knight \*file (to b2 or g2 for White, to b7 or g7 for Black).

### **File**

A line of \*squares from the top to the bottom of the board (e.g. 'the e-file').

### **Forcing move**

Move that limits the opponent's options by making a concrete threat, such as mate or gain of material.

### **Forcing retreat**

Retreating move that limits the opponent's options by creating a threat.

### **Fork**

\*Attacking two or more enemy \*pieces simultaneously by the same piece.

### **Fortress**

Defensive formation designed to prevent the opponent from breaking through.

### **Guard**

See \*cover.

### **Human bias**

Deficiencies of a human player by, for instance, 'blind spots' in thinking.

### **Hybrid combination**

A combination of mate threats with threats of material gain.

### **In-between check/move**

\*Check or move interrupting a logical sequence of moves (see \*zwischen-schach, \*zwischenzug).

### **Isolated pawn**

A pawn which does not have any fellow pawns on adjacent \*files and therefore cannot be protected by a fellow pawn.

**Key move**

Important/decisive move.

**Kingside**

The board half on the white player's right (i.e. the e-, f-, g- and h-\*files).

**Liquidation**

Entering the next phase of the game by the \*exchange of a number of \*pieces.

**Luft**

When a pawn is moved forward to create an escape possibility for its own king (see also \*Bolthole).

**Major piece**

A queen or a rook.

**Mate**

See \*Checkmate.

**Mating net**

A situation where a king is \*attacked by enemy \*pieces and eventually cannot escape the \*mate threat.

**Middlegame**

The phase of the game that follows immediately after the \*opening and precedes the \*endgame.

**Minor piece**

A bishop or a knight.

**Obstruction**

When a \*piece is placed on a \*rank, \*file or \*diagonal in such a way that it interrupts the range of an enemy piece.

**Open file/rank/diagonal**

A \*rank, \*file or \*diagonal whose \*squares are not occupied by \*pieces or pawns.

**Opening**

The initial phase of the game.

**Opposition**

A situation where two kings are facing each other with one \*square in between. The king that is forced to move 'loses' the opposition and has to make way for the opponent. When the distance between the two kings is larger, but one of the two cannot avoid 'losing' the opposition, the other is said to have the 'distant opposition'.

**Overburdening/Overcharge**

When a \*piece has to protect more than one fellow piece or \*square at the same time and is not able to maintain this situation satisfactorily.

**Passed pawn**

A pawn that has no enemy pawns on the same or an adjacent \*file. Its \*promotion can only be prevented by enemy \*pieces.

**Penetration**

The forceful entering of the enemy position.

**Perpetual (check)**

An unstoppable series of checks that neither player can avoid without risking a loss. This means that the game ends in a draw.

**Piece**

In general, all chessmen apart from the pawns. In this book, mostly queen, rook, bishop and knight are meant, since many tactical motifs (sacrifices, for instance) cannot be carried out by a king.

**Pin**

An \*attack on a \*piece that cannot move away without exposing a more valuable piece behind it. Pins can take place on a \*rank, \*file or \*diagonal.

**Promotion**

When a pawn reaches the \*back rank, it is turned into a more valuable \*piece (queen, rook, bishop or knight).

**Protect**

See \*cover.

**Queenside**

The board half on the white player's left (i.e. the a-, b-, c- and d-\*files).

**Quiet connector**

Tricky, decisive \*quiet move in the midst of an 'active' \*forcing sequence.

**Quiet move**

Move which does not capture material or give \*check.

**Racheschach**

A \*check 'out of spite', given by a player who is already lost, which does not alter the outcome.

**Rank**

A line of \*squares running from side to side (e.g. 'the third rank').

**Sacrifice**

When material is deliberately given up for other gains.

**Selection**

Finding the key options and choosing.

**Self-blocking (sacrifice)**

Forcing an enemy piece (e.g. by a \*sacrifice) to an escape square for its own king.

**Skewer**

When a \*piece \*attacks two enemy pieces that are standing on the same \*rank, \*file or \*diagonal.

**Smothered Mate**

When a king is mated in the corner, hemmed in by its own \*pieces and pawns.

**Square**

One of the 64 sections on the chess board that can be occupied by a pawn, \*piece or king.

**Spite check**

See \*Racheschach.

**Stalemate**

When a player who is not in \*check has no legal move and it is his turn. This means that the game ends in a draw.

**Stock**

Standard, basic.

**Swindle**

Trick in a (seemingly) hopeless position, generally not correct after the best reply.

**Tempo**

The duration of one move made by one side. A tempo can be won or deliberately lost by several methods.

**Underpromotion**

The promotion of a pawn to a \*piece of lesser value than the queen. This is quite rare.

**Wing**

Either the \*kingside or the \*queenside.

**Zugzwang**

When a player is to move and he cannot do anything without making an important concession.

**Zwischenschach**

\*Intermediate check, disrupting a logical sequence of moves.

**Zwischenzug**

\*Intermediate move with a point that disrupts a logical sequence of moves.

## Index of Names

Numbers refer to pages.

<b>A</b>					
Abente	18	Askelof	21	Beshukov	139
Abrahams	143	Asmundsson	81	Beyer	172
Abramovic	10	Atakisi	31	Bhat	88
Acevedo	309	Atalik	93, 122, 258	Bilek	248
Acs	231	Ataman	24	Birnboim	89
Adams	114, 116, 122, 164, 352, 360	Atlas	108, 254	Bischoff	136, 217
		Avrukh	158, 182	Bisguier	243, 273
		Azmaiparashvili	173, 290	Bjarnason	90
Adamski	120			Blackburne	332
Adianto	186			Blatny	168
Adorjan	46	Bacrot	46, 217, 231, 305,	Bledow	320
Agapov	64		314	Blekhtsin	356
Agrest	294	Balashov	188	Bluvshtein	68
Ahues	271	Bannik	28, 278	Bocharov	143
Ajanski	229	Banusz	12	Boden	158
Akimov	150	Baramidze	236	Bogoljubow	49, 324
Akopian	27, 113	Bareev	67, 84, 116, 262,	Boleslavsky	106
Alatortsev	106		294, 316	Bologan	21, 156, 164
Alburt	238	Barsov	308	Bondarevsky	300
Aldrete Lobo	262	Bartel	360	Böök	79
Alekhine	30, 244, 255, 272, 324, 338	Barus	74	Borik	210
		Basin	290	Bosboom	69
Alexeev	350	Battes	311	Botvinnik	86, 151, 258,
Allies	55	Bauer	92		344
Almasi	191, 195	Bauer, Christian	142, 243	Boxall	184
Anand	52, 195, 290, 352	Bayram	312	Bratanov	102
Anderson, James	175	Bednarski	120, 124	Braun	164
Andersson	51, 55, 311	Beliavsky	96	Bronstein	97, 260, 345
Annageldiev	121	Belikov	236	Browne	149, 311
Antonio	364	Belov	18	Brynell	70
Antunes	294	Benjamin	8-10, 128, 358	Brzozka	345
Apicella	142, 214, 234	Benko	40, 166, 198, 218,	Bu Xiangzhi	354
Arakhamia	60		234	Burger	268
Ardaman	178	Berelovich	202	Burrows	124
Ardiansyah	268	Berger	201	Byrne	248, 312, 315
Areschenko	85	Bergquist	76		
Aronian	110, 119	Berkes	88		<b>C</b>
Asadov	67	Berkovich	274	Cameron	226
Ashley	22	Bernstein	284	Capablanca	284

Cappallo	276	Dückstein	257	Franco Ocampos	22
Chan Peng Kong	364	Dunne	294	Franz	208
Charbonneau	107, 310	Duras	145	Fressinet	303
Chekhova	35	Dvoiris	240	Frey Beckman	352
Chekhover	362	Dzindzichashvili	149	Fridman	98, 360
Cherepkov	28			Friedman	9
Chernyshov	193, 234	E		Fritz (computer)	360
Chiburdanidze	114	Edelman	179	Ftacnik	43, 162
Chigorin	13, 210, 282	Efimenko	68	Fuller	46
Christiansen	216, 228, 240, 358	Ehlvest	105, 280	Furman	182
		Eingorn	242, 337		
Chukaev	123	Emelin	75, 300	<b>G</b>	
Chuprov	282	Emms	182	Gadjily	95
Cifuentes Parada	111, 199	Enders	192, 254	Gagunashvili	288, 360
Cobo Arteaga	196	Engels	55	Gallagher	34, 176, 350
Colle	30	Epp	295	Gama	274
Collier	160	Erenburg	12	Gaprindashvili, Valerian	68
Condie	236	Ermakov	334	Garcia, Gildardo	178
Conquest	256	Essen (city)	277	Gasharov	284
Crisovan	180	Estrin	73	Gausel	76
Csom	132, 290	Ewaldt	42	Geist	124
Curdo	329			Gelfand	114, 253, 320
Curran	34	<b>F</b>		Geller	132, 186, 245
Cvitanić	19, 82, 162	Fahrner	45	Georgiev	149
		Fang	259, 276	Gershman	283
<b>D</b>		Farago	87, 248	Gershon	39
Damjanovic	252	Fatin	44	Gerusel	350
Danner	45	Fedorov	212	Ghaem Maghami	203
Darga	223	Feher	276	Gheorghiu	25, 148, 247
De Firmian	260	Feimes	280	Ghorbani	364
De la Garza	226	Felmi	48	Gik	339
De la Riva Aguado	191	Fernandez	262	Gilea	93
Dean	197	Filguth	226	Giorgadze	124
Degraeve	192, 308	Filip	240	Gipslis	145, 356
Delva	166	Filippov	177	Gligoric	77, 244, 302
Dely	176	Fischer	40, 125, 138,	Gofshtein	128
Deng Kong Liang	168	146, 156, 162, 177, 186,		Goglidze	50, 299
Depasquale	364	198, 223, 236, 248, 260,		Goj	79
Despotovic	249	264, 270, 309, 324		Goldstein	219
Dizdarevic	258	Fishbein	160	Golod	105, 274, 322
Djuric	145	Flesch	290	Goloschapov	99
Donskikh	19	Flohr	167, 217	Golubovic	91
Dozsa	314	Forintos	175	Gonak	250
Dreev	111, 132, 230	Fox	92	Gostisa	109

Grabczewski	313	Hertneck	132	<b>K</b>
Graf	201	Herzog	71	Kabanov
Graf,Alexander	149, 288	Hever	225	Kachiani
Grants	214	Hillarp Persson	169	Kahn
Grigorian	256	Hirn	93	Kalantarian
Grigoriev	255	Hodges	298	Kalegin
Grigorov	102, 299	Holland	65	Kallio
Grischuk	307	Honfi	164	Kaluanasaram
Grosar	117, 170, 290	Horowitz	167, 220	Kamsky
Gudmundsson	77	Hort	364	Kan
Gulko	178, 236, 256	Houston	47	Karasev
Gunnarsson	33	Hoxha	292	Karatorossian
Gunsberg	282	Hracek	78, 256	Karjakin
Gurevich,Ilya	308	Hsu Li Yang	57	Karpov
Gurevich,Mikhail	245	Hübner	110, 197, 354	48, 102, 119,
Gusev	283	Hukel	251	147, 179, 216, 221,
Gutman	83, 292			230, 305, 339
Gutop	318	<b>I</b>		Karpov,Alexander
Gygli	26	Ibragimov	80	188
Gyimesi	292	Illescas Cordoba	162	Kashdan
		Ilyin	341	156, 310
<b>H</b>		Ilyin Zhenevsky	292	Kasparian
Hagesaether	94	Inarkiev	362	140, 299
Hakki	315	Ionov	72	Kasimdzhanov
Handoko	115	Iskov	202	106, 113, 137,
Hansen,Curt	169, 190, 272	Ivanchuk	113, 254,	164, 179, 190, 212,
Hansen,Lars Bo	116, 182,		281	222-223, 362
	264	Ivanov,A	299	Kengis
Har Zvi	264, 273	Ivanov,Alexander	8, 364	Keogh
Harikrishna	315	Ivanov,Igor	253	244
Hartston	55, 85	Ivanov,Sergey	134, 322	Keene
Hazai	87	Ivanovic	92, 304	Kelleher
Hebert	62	Ivanovsky	96	15
Hecht	350			Kengis
Hector	196	<b>J</b>		184
Heinrich	42	Janowski	210	Keogh
Hellsten	290	Jansa	301	200
Henneberger	26	Jarnuczak	182	Kavalek
Herbert	48	Jauregui Andrade	264	20
Hermann	164	Jimenez Zerquera	324	Khalifman
Hertan	15, 52, 109, 130,	Jobava	130	22, 362
194, 259, 295, 301, 308,	Johanson		215	Kharlov
311, 320, 329, 341, 343,	Johnston		134, 160, 234, 290, 334	212
364, 366	Jones		Khasin	38
			Kholmov	212
			Kinnmark	83
			Kirilenko	25
			Klaman	38
			Kmoch	20
			Knaak	215
			Kobalia	192
			Koblents	203
			Kogan,Artur	123
			Kogan,Boris	90
			Kolarov	52
				208

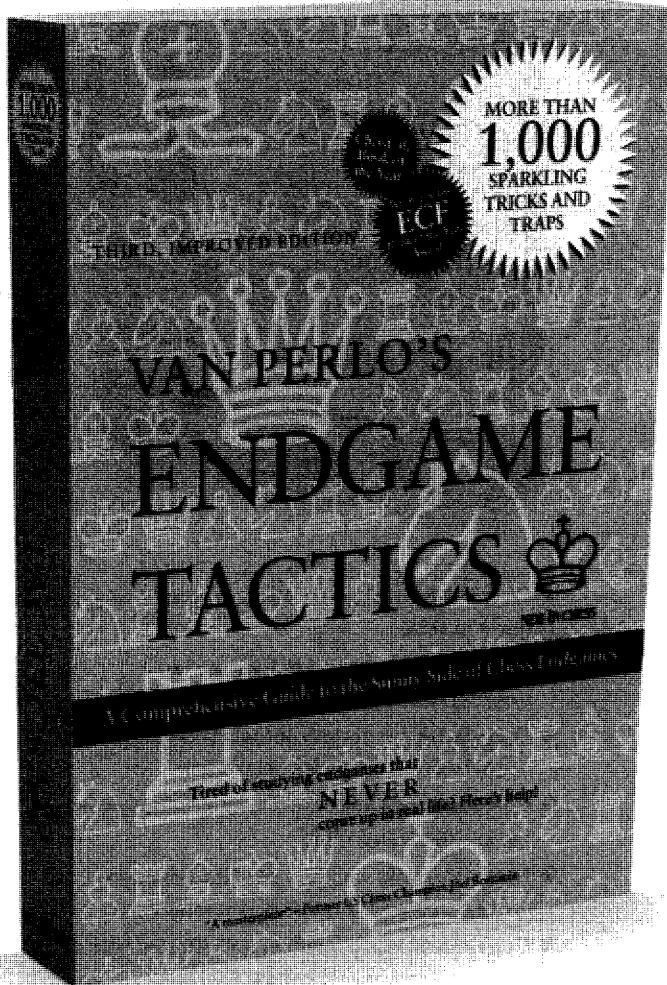
Kolisch	304	Larsen	23, 25, 51, 335	Maiorov	277
Kolitzki	273	Lasker,Edward	160, 208	Makarichev	238
Komarov	362	Lasker,Emanuel	208, 346	Malakhatko	91
Komliakov	95	Lastin	134, 173, 208	Maldonado	98
König	50	Lau	64	Malisov	89
Kopec	236, 366	Lauhe	288	Malysheva	188
Kopriva	240	Lautier	354	Maninang	194
Kopylov	72	Lebedev	250	Mansurov	128
Korchmar	148	Lehmann	252	Marache	36
Korelov	40	Leko	119, 206, 210, 223	Marinello	326
Korn	278	Lendwai	247	Maroczy	221
Kornfilt	251	Lengyel	262	Marshall	28, 246, 298,
Korobov	302, 322	Leon Hoyos	139		324, 346
Korotylev	146	Letelier Martner	156	Martens	313
Kortchnoi	22, 117, 240,	Leveille	31	Martin Gonzalez	115
	356	Levenfish	64, 307	Martiushov	158
Korzov	356	Levitina	326	Martorelli	294
Kostal	23	Levtchouk	166	Mastrovasilis	312
Kotov	41, 121, 238, 306	Lin Ta	252	Mathe	147
Kramnik	27, 110, 119,	Lisitsin	41	Matov	177
	326	Liss	271	Mattick	95
Krasenkow	266, 279, 298	Littlewood	171	Maur de Fosses (city)	277
Kretchmer	288	Liu Wenzhe	352	McDonnell	199
Krivonosov	214	Liublinsky	268	Meijers	91
Krogius	158	Ljubojevic	23, 184, 208	Miagmarsuren	170, 243
Kruger	202	Lobron	168, 246	Mieses	13, 24
Kubanek	240	Loginov	350	Mihailidis	39
Kuchta	164	Lommer	262	Mikhailchishin	184
Kuh	37	Lorscheid	95	Mikhalevski	73
Kulchinsky	148	Lputian	360	Miladinovic	196, 297
Kunte	310	Luther	70, 83, 206, 250,	Miles	168
Kurajica	206		356	Miller	316
Kuzminikh	128	Lutz	115, 320	Millstone	226
Kveinis	352	Lynch	66	Milos	356
Kwilecki	198			Milov	206
<b>M</b>					
<b>L</b>		MacDonald,R	130	Mingrelia	38
L'Ami	322	Macieja	266	Mohr	108, 112
Lahno	130	MacKenzie	97	Moiseenko	85
Lalic	118, 142	Maderna	66	Mokry	108
Lampe	118	Maeda	47	Moldagaliев	358
Landa	225	Maevskaya	38	Momeni	49
Lanka	32, 188, 212	Magem Badals	156	Monticelli	220
Laria	206	Magerramov	228	Moor	66
				Morgan	354

Morovic Fernandez	52,	Oliff	200	Platonov	264
	111	Oll	19, 210	Platz	118
Morozevich	20-21, 122,	Olson	310	Plesset	294
	320	Omholt Jensen	316	Polgar,Istvan	33
Morphy	36	Onescus	274	Polgar,Judit	48, 86, 88,
Mortensen	194	Onischuk	132, 186, 294		110, 120, 180
Movsesian	75, 167, 314	Oral	60	Polgar,Zsuzsa	114
Muchnik	73	Oratovsky	297	Polugaevsky	43, 99, 212,
Muffang	255	Ortega	206		224, 327
Murdzia	151	Osachuk	18	Ponomariov	191, 254
Murshed	77	Ostenstad	60	Popov	229
		Ostropolsky	96	Popovic	304
N		Ovetchkin	188	Portisch	64, 81, 201, 208,
Naef	180				230, 354, 364
Naer	72, 143	P		Potkin	72
Nakamura	249, 279	Padevsky	284	Prandstetter	123
Nataf	360	Pähtz,Thomas	343	Prathamesh	80
Neelotpal	285	Panchenko	123, 228	Pridorozhni	150
Neiksans	54	Panczyk	358	Priehoda	276
Nepomniashy	64, 75	Panfilov	156	Prins	50
Netto	18	Panikovsky	255	Psakhis	264, 268
Neumann	304	Panno	173	Puljek Salai	186
Nevednichy	184	Papaioannou	352	Puschmann	262
Nezhmetdinov	140, 327	Paramonov	121		
Ni Hua	130, 172	Parma	162	R	
Nielsen,Peter Heine	306	Paschall	222	Rabinovich,Arkady	73
Niesslbeck	37	Patience	125	Rabinovich,Ilya	50
Nievergelt	25	Pedzich	151	Rada	23
Nijboer	69, 243, 264	Pelikan	280	Radevich	19
Nikolenko	152	Pelletier	66, 320, 322	Radjabov	191
Nikolic	78, 366	Penrose	85	Radulov	212
Nilsson	49	Peptan	285	Radulski	24
NN	30, 38, 62, 97, 141,	Perez Perez	196	Rashkovsky	322
	174, 266, 271	Perlis	317	Rauzer	140, 344
Nogueiras	136	Petersons	40	Ree	301
Novosibirsk (city)	186	Petrosian,Arshak	44, 250,	Reinderman	245, 356
Novotelnov	132		358	Reis	82
Novozhenin	156	Petrosian,Tigran	34, 169	Reissmann	333
Nunn	44, 57, 77, 105,	Petursson	259	Rellstab	71
	184, 190, 228, 331, 354	Pilaj	247	Reshevsky	24, 92, 312
		Pirc	315	Reshko	257
O		Pitschak	278	Richter	150
O'Kelly de Galway	56, 79	Planinc	158	Riumin	64, 140
Olafsson,Fridrik	102, 162	Plaskett	354	Robatsch	109

Rodrigues	82	Seirawan	128, 174	Speelman	60, 134, 166,
Rodriguez Vargas	102	Serper	102		342
Rodriguez,Andres	139	Shabalov	88, 98, 138,	Spielmann	145
Rodshtein	322		153, 171, 197, 350	Spiridonov	227
Rogers	253	Shabanov	69	Spraggett	60
Rogozenko	306	Shaw	65	Stahlberg	302
Rohde	109, 301	Sherbakov	74	Stanec	186
Roiter	199	Sherwin	138	Stean	96
Romih	221	Sherzer	147, 160	Stefanova	285
Roos	281	Shipman	194	Stefansson	54, 313
Roslinski	198	Shirov	122, 134, 232,	Stein	160
Rossolimo	174, 333		253, 262, 337, 366	Stier	182
Roth	171	Shneider	350	Stocek	108
Rozentalis	83	Short	104, 106, 115, 193,	Stoltz	217
Rubinetti	281		195, 219, 275, 280,	Stuhl	93
Rublevsky	107, 111, 238		285, 288, 313, 342	Sturua	152
Ruck	31	Shulman	234	Suba	64
Rustemov	69	Shumilin	362	Sunye Neto	190
Ryrakovsky	222	Siegmund	71	Suta	35
		Siklaj	225	Sutey	35
<b>S</b>		Silman	8	Sutovsky	62, 128, 167,
Sadler	60, 227	Simagin	34		170, 303
Sadvakasov	146, 272	Simutowe	188	Svensson	21
Sahu	242	Singh	242	Sveshnikov	74, 324
Sakaev	68, 84, 206	Sliwa	112	Svidler	107, 113, 130,
Salov	102	Slobodjan	33		193, 206, 230, 266,
Samaritani	90	Smagin	62		282, 292, 298
Sammour Hasboun	144	Small	354	Szabo,Gergely	234
Sanchez	32	Smeets	70	Szabo,Laszlo	33, 314
Sandipan	288	Smelev	45	Szelag	32
Sangla	147	Smirin	62, 137, 271	Szigeti	27
Saratov (city)	186	Smirnov	220	Szilagyi	224
Sarov	151	Smyslov	160, 210, 234,		
Sasikiran	303		268	<b>T</b>	
Saunina	35	Soderborg	212	Taimanov	99, 128, 144,
Sax	176	Sokolov,Andrei	214, 324,		221
Schekachev	142		331	Tal	137, 141, 162, 218,
Schlechter	317	Sokolov,Ivan	84, 120,		229, 240, 245, 264,
Schlosser	44		180, 188, 195, 212	266, 273, 335	
Schmaltz	87	Soppe	317	Tallaksen	76
Schonbauer	249	Souleidis	288	Tarasov	67
Schulder	158	Spengenberg	317	Tartakower	62, 244, 266
Schurade	358	Spassky	125, 146, 169,	Terrie	320
Schweber	260		197, 257	Thipsay	80

Thomas	28	Van Scheltinga	215	Wirthensohn	148, 252
Thynne	143	Van Wely	144, 164, 174,	Witkowski	182
Tikhanov	45		177, 231, 242, 259,	Wohl	275
Tilson	125		283, 294, 326, 352	Wojtkiewicz	117
Timman	193, 246, 279, 283, 305, 307	Varga	81	Wurm	201
Timofeev	130	Vasiukov	144		
Timoschenko	318	Vaulin	322	X	
Tischbierek	75, 158	Veizhap	292	Xie Jun	105
Tisdall	60	Velimirovic	132	Xu Jun	152
Tiviakov	139	Verlinsky	272, 307		
Tkach	175	Vescovi	84	Y	
Tkachiev	74, 218	Vetemaa	138	Yandemirov	350
Tolush	238	Videki	128	Yasevich	200
Tomilin	219	Vidmar	86	Yates	62
Tomilin	219	Vigodchikov	338	Ye Jiangchuan	86, 218,
Tomovic	175	Vigorito	98		236, 266, 305
Topalov	20, 134, 222, 232, 279, 281, 316	Vilela	227	Yedidia	179
Topalovic	184	Virtanen	76	Yermolinsky	162
Toran Albero	56	Visser	358	Yezersky	224
Torre Repetto	160	Vistanetskis	278	Yu Shaoteng	130
Toth	27	Vitolins	292	Yudasin	268
Totic	99	Vogt	46	Yudovich	121, 258,
Tringov	270	Voitsekhevsky	225		362
Tukmakov	134, 173	Vokarev	81, 153	Yukhtman	200
Tyomkin	107, 224	Volokitin	91	Yuldashev	94
		Von Bardeleben	332	Yusupov	202, 362
		Von der Lasa	320		
<b>U</b>					
Ufimtsev	300	Von Gottschall	62	Z	
Uhlmann	176, 236, 247, 268, 309	Von Scheve	324	Zagorskis	227
		Vorobiov	238	Zagrebelsky	104
Ujturnen	170	Vouldis	87	Zaitsev	300
Unzicker	32, 229, 268	Vydeslaver	182	Zakharevich	277
Urban	360	Vyzhmanavin	152	Zakharstov	208, 220
				Zapata	309
<b>W</b>					
<b>V</b>					
Vaganian	126, 158, 219	Wach	112	Zhang Zhong	132
Vaisser	156, 192, 231	Wade	172, 184	Zhao Jun	172
Valdes	118	Wahls	90	Zhilgalko	79
Vallejo Pons	238	Wang Yue	94	Zhou Jianchao	188
Vallin	303	Wang Zili	275	Zhu Chen	240, 288
Van der Sterren	178	Weissgerber	71	Ziatdinov	171
Van der Wiel	116, 352, 358	Werle	70	Zilber	137
		Westerinen	126	Zollbrecht	82
		Winter	266	Zviagintsev	117, 199

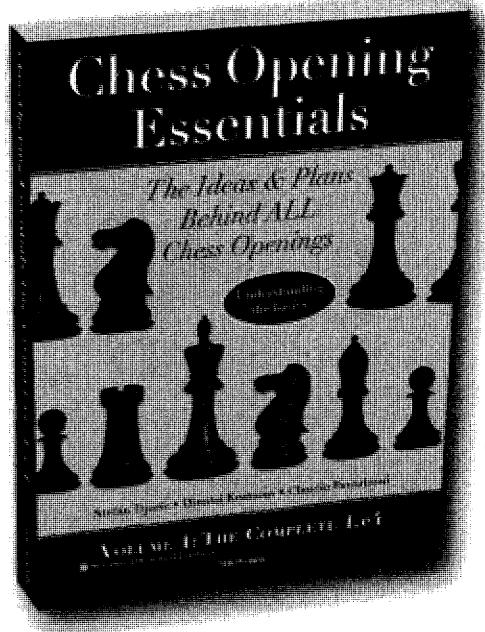
# DID YOU KNOW ENDGAMES ARE ACTUALLY FUN?



€ 27.95  
\$ 29.95  
£ 18.95  
paperback  
479 pages

AVAILABLE WITH YOUR BOOKSTORE OR AT [WWW.NEWINCHESS.COM](http://WWW.NEWINCHESS.COM)

**Are you a club player and is your rating < 1950 ?**



- **Comprehensive:** covers all main variations likely to arise
- **Easy-to-use:** important moves and key positions are highlighted in colour
- **Long-lasting:** it doesn't outdate because it is about basics – not the latest fashions
- **Complete:** explains the plans and counterplans for *both* Black and White
- **Down-to-earth:** simple, verbal introductions (not a database dump full of dead trees)
- **Convenient:** every opening is illustrated with a number of instructive games
- **Prize-winning:** received the Golden Award of the Italian Chess Federation

**... then get this before you buy ANY other opening book!**

# **Why is it that the human brain so often refuses to consider winning chess tactics?**

Every chess fan marvels at the wonderful combinations with which famous masters win games. How do they find those fantastic moves? Do they have a special vision? And why do computers outwit us tactically?

This rich book on chess tactics proposes a revolutionary method for finding winning moves. Charles Hertan has made an astonishing discovery: the failure to consider key moves is often due to human bias. Your brain tends to disregard many winning moves because they are counter-intuitive or look unnatural.

We can no longer deny it, computers outdo us humans when it comes to tactical vision and brute force calculation. So why not learn from them? Charles Hertan's radically different approach is: use COMPUTER EYES and always look for the most forcing sequence first!

By studying forcing moves according to Hertan's method you will:

- develop analytical precision
- improve your tactical vision
- overcome human bias and staleness
- enjoy the calculation of difficult positions

Charles Hertan is a FIDE master from Massachusetts with several decades of experience as a chess coach. Instead of rehashing the usual classic examples he has unearthed hundreds of instructive combinations which appear here for the first time in print.

## **Win more games by recognizing moves that matter!**

With a foreword by three-time US chess champion Joel Benjamin, a member of the Deep Blue Computer team that defeated world champion Garry Kasparov in 1997.

ISBN 9789056912437



**Games / Chess**

**\$ 28.95**

**€ 24.95**

**NEW IN CHESS**